

**RAIL PUBLIC REGISTER COPY**

**REDACTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH FOIA 2000**

Dated 19 September 2020

**THE SECRETARY OF STATE FOR TRANSPORT**

and

**ABELLIO EAST ANGLIA LIMITED**

**EMERGENCY RECOVERY MEASURES AGREEMENT ("ERMA")**

## Table of Contents

Contents	Page
1 Interpretation and Construction .....	3
2 Purpose of this ERMA and survival of EMA provisions.....	5
3 Commencement and Term .....	6
4 Termination of the Franchise Agreement .....	8
5 Amendments to the Franchise Agreement.....	8
6 Co-operation .....	8
7 Additional Services .....	9
8 Meetings.....	9
9 Remedial Plans.....	9
10 Fares.....	11
11 Funding Deed .....	12
12 Change .....	12
13 Early ERMA Termination.....	13
14 Committed Obligations.....	13
15 Covid-19 Related Support .....	14
16 State Aid and Procurement .....	14
17 Warranties .....	15
18 Long Term Arrangements.....	15
19 Confidentiality and Disclosure .....	16
20 Entire Agreement .....	16
21 Counterparts.....	16
22 Costs .....	17
23 Governing Law .....	17
24 Rights of Third Parties.....	17
Schedule 1 Amendments to the Franchise Agreement .....	18
Schedule 2 Termination of the Franchise Agreement .....	376
1 Definitions.....	376

2	Default termination .....	377
3	Calculation of the Termination Sum .....	378
4	Rolling Stock .....	379
5	Network Rail.....	380
6	Third Party Contracts .....	380
7	Net Assets .....	381
8	Miscellaneous.....	384
1	Definitions and Interpretation .....	385
2	Termination Sum .....	386
3	Modelling Assumptions.....	386
	Schedule 3 Early ERMA Termination.....	391
	Schedule 4 Funding Deed, Bond and Performance Bond .....	404
1	General .....	404
2	Funding Deed .....	404
3	Bonds .....	405
4	Performance Bonds .....	405

**This Agreement** is made on the 19 September 2020 **between:**

- (1) **SECRETARY OF STATE FOR TRANSPORT**, whose principal place of business is at Great Minster House, 33 Horseferry Road, London SW1P 4DR (the "**Secretary of State**"); and
  - (2) **ABELLIO EAST ANGLIA LIMITED**, (company number 07861414), whose registered office is at 2nd Floor, St Andrews House, 18-20 St Andrew Street, London, EC4A 3AG (the "**Franchisee**"),
- each a "**Party**" and, together, the "**Parties**".

**Recitals:**

- (A) The Secretary of State and the Franchisee entered into a franchise agreement dated 23 August 2016 in respect of certain railway passenger services designated by the Secretary of State as eligible for provision under franchise agreements (the "**Franchise Agreement**").
- (B) On 11 March 2020 the World Health Organisation declared the coronavirus disease 2019 ("**COVID-19**") a pandemic. COVID-19 has had (and it is anticipated that COVID-19 will continue to have) a significant impact on the operation of rail services in the United Kingdom.
- (C) The Secretary of State and the Franchisee amended the Franchise Agreement to address the impact of the COVID-19 outbreak on Train Operators by suspending or amending the operation of specific provisions, and introducing additional requirements, under the terms of the Franchise Agreement in accordance with the terms of, and for the duration of the term of, an emergency measures agreement which was entered into on 31 March 2020 and took effect on 1 April 2020 (the "**EMA Start Date**") between the Secretary of State and the Franchisee (the "**EMA**").
- (D) The Parties now wish to record their agreement regarding further amendments to the Franchise Agreement by further suspending, supplementing and/or amending certain provisions of the Franchise Agreement (including certain amendments to protect taxpayers' interests and to reflect the ongoing reduction in rail travel as a result of COVID-19) to address the ongoing direct and indirect impacts of COVID-19 during the term of this Agreement by entering into this Emergency Recovery Measures Agreement (the "**ERMA**") to replace the EMA following its expiry at 01:59 on 20 September 2020.
- (E) The Franchisee acknowledges that this ERMA is entered into pursuant to article 5(5) of Regulation (EC) 1370/2007.

**The parties agree** as follows:

## **1 Interpretation and Construction**

### **1.1 Interpretation**

In this ERMA (unless the context otherwise requires):

- 1.1.1 words and expressions defined under the Franchise Agreement and the Act shall have the same meanings when used in this ERMA provided that, except to the extent expressly stated, "railway" shall not have the wider meaning attributed to it by section 81(2) of the Act;
- 1.1.2 words and expressions defined in the Interpretation Act 1978 shall have the same meanings when used in this ERMA;
- 1.1.3 the words "including", "include" and "in particular" are to be construed without limitation;

- 1.1.4 references to a person include its successors, transferees and assignees;
- 1.1.5 references in this ERMA to Clauses and Schedules are to Clauses and Schedules of this ERMA unless expressly specified to the contrary;
- 1.1.6 headings and references to headings shall be disregarded in construing this ERMA;
- 1.1.7 references to an agreement or other document shall be construed as referring to that agreement or document as from time to time supplemented, varied, replaced, amended, assigned or novated;
- 1.1.8 words importing the masculine gender include the feminine gender and vice versa and words in singular include the plural and vice versa;
- 1.1.9 wherever provision is made for the giving or issuing of any notice, endorsement, consent, approval, waiver, certificate, direction, guidance or determination by any person, unless otherwise specified, such notice, endorsement, consent, approval, waiver, certificate or determination shall be in writing and the words "**notify**", "**endorse**", "**consent**", "**approve**", "**waive**", "**certify**", "**direct**", "**guide**" or "**determine**" and other cognate expressions shall be construed accordingly;
- 1.1.10 references to sums of money being expended by the Franchisee shall be to such sums exclusive of Value Added Tax; and
- 1.1.11 wherever provision is made for the Franchisee to "**procure**" or "**ensure**" the delivery of an obligation under the Franchise Agreement, unless otherwise specified, that provision shall be construed as a primary obligation on the Franchisee to deliver that obligation.

## 1.2 Construction

- 1.2.1 This ERMA shall succeed the EMA immediately upon the expiry of the EMA in accordance with its terms on 20 September 2020.
- 1.2.2 This ERMA is supplemental to and shall be read and construed together with the Franchise Agreement and this ERMA and the Franchise Agreement shall together constitute one and the same document.
- 1.2.3 In the event of conflict between:
  - (i) the terms of this ERMA and the terms of the Franchise Agreement, subject to Clause 2.1.2, the terms of this ERMA shall prevail; and
  - (ii) the terms of the Passenger Survey Methodology and the terms of the Franchise Agreement as amended pursuant to the terms of this ERMA, the terms of the Franchise Agreement (as amended pursuant to the terms of this ERMA) shall prevail.
- 1.2.4 Save as expressly provided for in this ERMA, the Franchise Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.
- 1.2.5 Any reference to the "term" or "duration" of this ERMA shall mean the ERMA Term and any Extended Term (if applicable) in accordance with Clause 3 (*Commencement and Term*) of this ERMA.

## 2 Purpose of this ERMA and survival of EMA provisions

### 2.1 The Parties acknowledge that:

#### 2.1.1 this ERMA is based on the following overriding principles:

- (i) the Parties recognising the circumstances presented by COVID-19 and the ongoing direct and indirect impacts of COVID-19 on, among other things, rail passenger numbers and public finances;
- (ii) the Parties seeking to ensure that, as far as possible, operational performance and the provision of Passenger Services continues to be maintained and (if applicable) improved;
- (iii) the Parties seeking to ensure the Franchisee is incentivised to maintain or improve performance standards, financial performance and co-operation with Network Rail and other relevant third parties through a performance-based fee structure in connection with the re-allocation of cost and revenue risk as between the Parties, including the removal of and imposition of certain other obligations from or on the Franchisee; and
- (iv) the Parties co-operating with an overall goal of acting in the national interest; and

#### 2.1.2 this ERMA has been prepared as an emergency measure in response to the ongoing direct and indirect impacts of COVID-19 following the expiry of the EMA. If and to the extent that there are any anomalies or inconsistencies within this ERMA or with the terms of the Franchise Agreement, as a result of the variations imposed by this ERMA, the Parties shall discuss such matters in good faith and work towards a practical and sensible solution and/or to further amend the Franchise Agreement to reflect the overriding principles of this ERMA as set out in Clause 2.1.1. If the Parties cannot agree such solution and/or amendments within one (1) month of one Party notifying the other Party of the relevant anomaly or inconsistency, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine (having regard to the overriding principles of this ERMA as set out in Clause 2.1.1) the solution and/or amendment to the Franchise Agreement that shall apply and the Franchisee shall act in accordance with such determination.

### 2.2 The Parties agree that, notwithstanding the provisions of the EMA, the following provisions of the EMA and any other provisions of the EMA reasonably required for the purpose of giving such provisions full effect shall survive the termination or expiry of the EMA and the ERMA and continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms except as otherwise specified in this ERMA:

#### 2.2.1 clause 10 (*Treatment of Revenue and Profit Share Mechanisms*);

#### 2.2.2 schedule 8.A (*Franchise Payments*) and schedule 8.B (*Performance Payment*) insofar as is necessary to determine the Franchise Payments that relate to the term of the EMA or to give effect to the provisions of this ERMA; and

#### 2.2.3 the amendments to schedule 10.2 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*) and schedule 10.3 (*Force Majeure and Business Continuity*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to the EMA.

### 3 Commencement and Term

- 3.1** This ERMA shall take effect from 2.00 a.m. on 20 September 2020 (the "**ERMA Start Date**") and shall, subject to Clauses 3.2 and 3.3, continue until 1.59 a.m. on 19 September 2021 (the "**ERMA Term**").
- 3.2** <sup>1 2</sup>**The Secretary of State may, at the Secretary of State's sole discretion and by written notice to the Franchisee given no later than 14 April 2021, terminate this ERMA with effect from 01:59 on 2 May 2021 (the "Early ERMA Termination Date") if:**
- 3.2.1** the Franchisee informs the Secretary of State that it does not accept the Termination Sum (as defined in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*)) pursuant to paragraph 3.6 of Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) or is deemed not to have accepted the Termination Sum pursuant to paragraph 3.7 of Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*);
  - 3.2.2** the waiver letters referred to in paragraph 4 (*Rolling Stock*) and paragraph 5 (*Network Rail*) of Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) have not been procured;
  - 3.2.3** the Franchisee fails to procure the amendments to the Funding Deed, Bond and Performance Bond specified in Schedule 4 (*Funding Deed, Bond and Performance Bond*); or
  - 3.2.4** any legal action or other challenge brought by a third party or any investigation by a competent authority under UK or EU Law is commenced in respect of this ERMA or any part of it on or before the date of any notice given under this Clause 3.2.
- 3.3** The Secretary of State may, at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, on one or more occasions and in each case with at least one (1) Reporting Period's written notice (or any shorter period as agreed between the Parties) extend this ERMA and the variations to the Franchise Agreement effected by this ERMA by such further period as shall be specified by the Secretary of State at the Secretary of State's sole discretion (such extension, or as the case may be all such extensions taken together, being the "**Extended Term**"), but provided that the Extended Term may not extend beyond 01 April 2022.
- 3.4** The Secretary of State shall have an unfettered discretion in proposing any extensions to the ERMA Term pursuant to Clause 3.3 (save as provided therein).
- 3.5** Subject to Clause 3.6 and as otherwise provided in this Agreement, the amendments to the Franchise Agreement pursuant to this ERMA shall, unless otherwise required by the Secretary of State or pursuant to this ERMA, cease to have effect on the later of the expiry of the ERMA Term or the relevant Extended Term (as applicable).
- 3.6** The following provisions and any other provisions of this ERMA and/or the Franchise Agreement (as applicable) reasonably required for the purpose of giving full effect to such provisions or the overriding principles of this ERMA shall survive the termination or expiry of this ERMA and the Franchise Term (however arising) and continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms and the continued operation of such provisions following the termination or expiry of this ERMA and the Franchise Term shall not constitute a Change for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement:

---

<sup>1</sup> 18 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

<sup>2</sup> 20 January 2021 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

- 3.6.1 Clause 3.10;
  - 3.6.2 Clause 4 (*Termination*);
  - 3.6.3 Clause 8 (*Meetings*);
  - 3.6.4 Clause 10.2;
  - 3.6.5 Clause 12.2;
  - 3.6.6 Clause 16.1;
  - 3.6.7 Clause 18.2;
  - 3.6.8 the amendments to clause 11.3 (*Disputes under Schedule 8 (Payments) of this Agreement*) of the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*);
  - 3.6.9 the amendments to schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*) and schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to the extent necessary for the purpose of giving effect to any surviving provisions of schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) of the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to the terms of this ERMA, subject to paragraphs 4.1.10 to 4.1.12 of Schedule 3 (*Early ERMA Termination*) if the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2;
  - 3.6.10 schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to the terms of this ERMA, but only insofar as is necessary to determine the Franchise Payments that relate to the ERMA Term and/or the relevant Extended Term (as applicable);
  - 3.6.11 schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to the terms of this ERMA, but only insofar as is necessary to determine the Franchise Payments that relate to the ERMA Term and/or the relevant Extended Term (as applicable);
  - 3.6.12 paragraph 9 (*Financial Information*) of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement as amended pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) subject to paragraph 4.1.16 of Schedule 3 (*Early ERMA Termination*) if the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2; and
  - 3.6.13 Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*).
- 3.7** Subject to Clause 3.8, the Franchise Agreement shall terminate concurrently with the expiry of this ERMA.
- 3.8** Subject to Schedule 3 (*Early ERMA Termination*), if this ERMA expires on the Early ERMA Termination Date, the Franchise Agreement shall not terminate and the terms of the Franchise Agreement that prevailed immediately prior to the ERMA Start Date (save as amended pursuant to any Variation agreed between the Parties during the period from the ERMA Start Date until the Early ERMA Termination Date other than the Variation constituted by the ERMA or this ERMA) shall apply from the Early ERMA Termination Date.



**3.9** The Parties agree that the Recalibration Items (as defined in the EMA) shall not be required following the expiry of the EMA and neither Party shall be under any obligation in relation thereto.

**3.10** The Franchisee:

**3.10.1** acknowledges that the decisions by the Secretary of State:

- (i) not to extend the EMA beyond 20 September 2020; and/or
- (ii) to enter into this ERMA; and/or
- (iii) to offer this ERMA on the terms set out herein and conditional on the termination of the underlying Franchise Agreement,

including the policy and procedure adopted by the Secretary of State to reach and implement these decisions (together, the "**Decisions**") are reasonable; and

**3.10.2** covenants that it will not, and will procure that none of its Related Parties will, make, maintain, support, assist or encourage any Claim of any kind against the Secretary of State or any other party in connection with or arising out of the Decisions.

**3.11** For the purposes of Clause 3.10:

**3.11.1** "**Claim**" means any action, suit or other proceeding of any kind whatsoever, in or by way of legal proceedings or otherwise, in England and Wales or any other jurisdiction; and

**3.11.2** "**Related Parties**" means the Franchisee's Affiliates and Guarantors and their respective assigns, transferees, representatives, principals, agents, officers or directors.

## **4 Termination of the Franchise Agreement**

The Parties acknowledge and agree that, unless the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2, the provisions of Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) shall have effect between them and each Party shall comply with its respective obligations thereunder.

## **5 Amendments to the Franchise Agreement**

Subject to Clause 3.6, with effect from the ERMA Start Date until the expiry of the ERMA Term or the Extended Term (as applicable), the Franchise Agreement shall be varied as set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA and by Clauses 6 (*Co-operation*) to 18 (*Long Term Arrangements*) below.

## **6 Co-operation**

**6.1** The Franchisee agrees to co-ordinate and co-operate with other Train Operators, Network Rail and other rail industry bodies, to ensure the continuation of Passenger Services across the network in a co-ordinated manner, and in line with the priorities and directions, as may be set out by the Secretary of State from time to time, including:

**6.1.1** co-ordinating with other Train Operators to ensure consistency of coverage to all communities across the national network, including changes to Franchise Services to

assist where other Train Operators are unable to fully perform their own Franchise Services;

- 6.1.2 assisting altered or additional freight services to operate on the national rail network and, where appropriate, enabling certain essential goods (such as medical equipment or other urgent items) to be carried on Passenger Services; and
  - 6.1.3 continuing where possible and appropriate to enforce any agreements with third parties to deliver quality and value for money.
- 6.2 The Franchisee agrees to co-operate with the Secretary of State in an open and transparent manner, which shall include an obligation on the Franchisee to disclose to the Secretary of State anything which the Secretary of State would reasonably expect notice of in connection with the matters arising under this ERMA or the Franchise Agreement.

## 7 Additional Services

- 7.1 The Franchisee acknowledges that the Secretary of State may require special measures, in the form of increased co-operation or additional services, to be implemented during the ERMA Term and/or the Extended Term and the Franchisee shall use its best endeavours to accommodate such requests and act in the national interests.
- 7.2 The Franchisee, if requested by the Secretary of State, shall use its best endeavours to provide additional services, such as enhanced cleaning regimes to a standard reasonably proposed by the Secretary of State.
- 7.3 The reasonable and proper costs incurred by the Franchisee in performing its obligations under this Clause 7 shall be recoverable from the Secretary of State as part of the Actual Costs, subject to the provisions of schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) to the Franchise Agreement.

## 8 Meetings

Where the Franchise Agreement or this ERMA refers to a "meeting" of the Parties or the Parties and other third parties, such meetings may be conducted by conference call or other remote link as mutually agreed between the Parties or the Parties and any relevant third parties (as applicable).

## 9 Remedial Plans

### 9.1 Definitions

In this Clause 9:

"**EMA Remedial Plan**" means any Remedial Plan or Remedial Agreement that was put in place during the term of the EMA;

"**ERMA Improvement Plan**" means any Improvement Plan in relation to:

- (i) any matter that arises during the term of this ERMA; and/or
- (ii) any matter that arose prior to the ERMA Start Date and is continuing during the term of this ERMA,

in each case that is put in place during the term of this ERMA;

**"ERMA Remedial Plan"** means any Remedial Plan or Remedial Agreement in relation to:

- (i) any matter that arises during the term of this ERMA; and/or
- (ii) any matter that arose prior to the ERMA Start Date and is continuing during the term of this ERMA,

in each case that is put in place during the term of this ERMA; and

**"Pre-EMA Remedial Plan"** means any Remedial Plan or Remedial Agreement that was in place prior to the EMA Start Date and continues to be in place as at the ERMA Start Date.

## 9.2 Pre-EMA Remedial Plans

9.2.1 The Secretary of State may review and determine (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion) whether any Pre-EMA Remedial Plan shall be:

- (i) implemented or continued in its original form;
- (ii) implemented or continued in accordance with such amended scope and application as may have been determined during the EMA;
- (iii) implemented or continued in accordance with such amended scope and application as the Secretary of State may determine in light of the Secretary of State's latest review;
- (iv) delayed (or further delayed);
- (v) suspended (in whole or in part); or
- (vi) actioned in accordance with such other instructions as the Secretary of State may direct.

9.2.2 Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, the costs of implementing a Pre-EMA Remedial Plan shall be a Disallowable Cost for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement.

9.2.3 The Secretary of State shall, act in accordance with clause 6.4 of the Franchise Agreement in making the determinations contemplated in this Clause 9.

## 9.3 EMA Remedial Plans

9.3.1 The Secretary of State may review and determine (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion) whether any EMA Remedial Plan shall be:

- (i) implemented or continued in its original form;
- (ii) implemented or continued in accordance with such amended scope and application as the Secretary of State may determine in light of the Secretary of State's latest review;
- (iii) delayed (or further delayed);
- (iv) suspended (in whole or in part); or
- (v) actioned in accordance with such other instructions as the Secretary of State may direct.

**9.3.2** Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, the costs of implementing an ERMA Remedial Plan (the “**Implementation Costs**”) shall be as agreed in respect of that Remedial Plan pursuant to the ERMA, provided that:

- (a) the Secretary of State’s liability pursuant to this Clause 9.3.2 shall be limited to costs that would have been incurred by a Good and Efficient Operator; and
- (b) if and to the extent that the Implementation Costs are greater than the cost that the Franchisee would have incurred in performing the obligation which is the subject of the relevant ERMA Remedial Plan (the “**Original Cost**”) as a result of the Franchisee having failed to comply with such obligation or otherwise having failed to act as a Good and Efficient Operator prior to the implementation of the ERMA Remedial Plan then the Franchisee shall be liable for the difference between Implementation Costs and the Original Cost.

#### **9.4 ERMA Remedial Plans and ERMA Improvement Plans**

**9.4.1** Save to the extent the Secretary of State otherwise directs from time to time, any ERMA Remedial Plan shall be treated in accordance with the provisions of schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for Remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*) to the Franchise Agreement.

**9.4.2** Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State:

- (i) the costs of developing an ERMA Remedial Plan shall be a Disallowable Cost for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement; and
- (ii) the costs of implementing an ERMA Remedial Plan (the “**Implementation Costs**”) shall be for the account of the Secretary of State, provided that:
  - (a) the Secretary of State’s liability pursuant to this Clause 9.4.2(ii) shall be limited to costs that would have been incurred by a Good and Efficient Operator; and
  - (b) if and to the extent that the Implementation Costs are greater than the cost that the Franchisee would have incurred in performing the obligation which is the subject of the relevant Remedial Plan (the “**Original Cost**”) as a result of the Franchisee having failed to comply with such obligation or otherwise having failed to act as a Good and Efficient Operator prior to the implementation of the Remedial Plan then the Franchisee shall be liable for the difference between the Implementation Costs and the Original Cost.

## **10 Fares**

**10.1** The Franchisee shall remain responsible for the collection of fare revenue and in doing so shall act as a Good and Efficient Operator, whilst giving consideration to appropriate customer service in light of the prevailing circumstances and any guidance from the Secretary of State, Public Health England (or any replacement body or organisation) or other relevant authority in relation to public interaction.

**10.2** If and to the extent that a ticket is sold which relates:

- 10.2.1 partially to the period when the EMA subsisted and partially to the period before the EMA subsisted; and/or
- 10.2.2 partially to the period when the EMA subsisted and partially to the ERMA Term or, if extended, the Extended Term; and/or
- 10.2.3 partially to the ERMA Term or, if extended, the Extended Term and partially to the period after the expiry of the ERMA Term or, if extended, the Extended Term,  
  
(the "**Cross-Term Fares**"), the Franchisee shall account for the Cross-Term Fares on a consistent basis such that:
- 10.2.4 the principles applied to account for the Cross-Term Fares at the EMA Start Date shall continue to apply to the Cross-Term Fares at the ERMA Start Date; and
- 10.2.5 the principles applied to account for the Cross-Term Fares at the ERMA Start Date shall continue to apply to the Cross-Term Fares for the duration of the term of this ERMA up to and including the date on which this ERMA and the Franchise Agreement are terminated in accordance with the terms of this ERMA.

## 11 Funding Deed

- 11.1 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the provisions of Schedule 4 (*Funding Deed, Bond and Performance Bond*) shall have effect between them and each Party shall comply with its respective obligations thereunder.
- 11.2 The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that, during the term of this ERMA, it shall not:
  - 11.2.1 pay any interest accruing in relation to any loans provided under the Funding Deed during the term of this ERMA. Such interest shall remain due at the expiry of this ERMA;
  - 11.2.2 repay any part of any PCS Advances and Agreed Funding Commitments (each as defined in the Funding Deed) that has been advanced pursuant to the Funding Deed.

## 12 Change

- 12.1 Save as specified in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*), the provisions of schedule 9.1 (*Financial and Other Consequences of Change*) to the Franchise Agreement shall be suspended for the duration of this ERMA.
- 12.2 If the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2 then any impact of COVID-19 will only constitute a Change if and to extent that such impact falls within the scope of any of the limbs of the definition of "Change" and the Parties agree that the occurrence of the COVID-19 pandemic will not of itself constitute a Change. The Parties acknowledge that the provisions of schedule 9.1 (*Financial and Other Consequences of Change*) to the Franchise Agreement were suspended during the term of the EMA pursuant to schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to the EMA and remain suspended during the term of this ERMA pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*).
- 12.3 In relation to Change events which occurred prior to the EMA Start Date ("**Pre-EMA Changes**"):
  - 12.3.1 the processing of the Pre-EMA Change shall continue and be treated on the terms of the Franchise Agreement that existed before the Parties entered into the EMA;

- 12.3.2 any payments in respect of the relevant Pre-EMA Change that are agreed or determined in accordance with that process shall be made as and when determined; and
- 12.3.3 notwithstanding Clauses 12.3.1 and 12.3.2, any Estimated Revisions shall not be payable until the termination or expiry of the term of this ERMA.
- 12.4** In relation to Change events which occurred during the term of the EMA ("**EMA Changes**"), the Parties acknowledge and agree that:
- 12.4.1 notwithstanding the provisions of the EMA, clause 12.3 of the EMA shall not apply following the expiry of the EMA;
- 12.4.2 save as specified in schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to the EMA, the provisions of schedule 9 (*Changes and Variations*) to the Franchise Agreement were suspended for the duration of the EMA pursuant to the terms of the EMA;
- 12.4.3 except as otherwise provided in this Clause 12.4, there shall be no processing of any EMA Changes at any time during the term of the ERMA or upon the termination of the ERMA and the Franchise Agreement in accordance with the terms of this ERMA; and
- 12.4.4 if the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2, any EMA Change shall, after the Early ERMA Termination Date, be evaluated in accordance with the provisions of schedule 9 (*Changes and Variations*) to the Franchise Agreement.
- 12.5** In relation to Change events that occur during the term of this ERMA ("**ERMA Changes**"), the Parties acknowledge and agree that:
- 12.5.1 except as otherwise provided in this Clause 12.5, there shall be no processing of any ERMA Changes at any time during the term of the ERMA or upon the termination of the ERMA and the Franchise Agreement in accordance with the terms of this ERMA; and
- 12.5.2 if the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2, any ERMA Change shall, after the Early ERMA Termination Date, be evaluated in accordance with the provisions of schedule 9 (*Changes and Variations*) to the Franchise Agreement.
- 12.6** The Parties agree that nothing in the EMA or this ERMA shall constitute a Change for the purpose of any of the limbs of the definition of "Change" unless explicitly stated in this ERMA.

### **13 Early ERMA Termination**

If the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2, the provisions of Schedule 3 (*Early ERMA Termination*) shall apply.

### **14 Committed Obligations**

- 14.1** The Parties acknowledge and agree that the terms of the Committed Obligations, and Franchise Specific Obligations were reviewed and, where relevant either delayed, suspended or reduced in scope or application in accordance with the EMA.
- 14.2** For the purposes of this Clause 14, "**EMA Review Agreement**" means the EMA Review Agreement of Amendment to the Franchise Agreement which may be entered into by the Parties on or after the date of this ERMA. The Parties agree that:

14.2.1 the entry into this ERMA shall not cause any of the EMA Review Variations (as defined in the EMA Review Agreement) to expire; and

14.2.2 any references to the "EMA Period" contained in the EMA Review Variations shall be defined as "the period commencing on 1 March 2020 and ending upon the expiry of the term of the ERMA".

14.3 For the duration of this ERMA, the Secretary of State may in accordance with schedule 9.3 (*Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes*) to the Franchise Agreement vary any Committed Obligations or Franchise Specific Obligations (as applicable) (including for the avoidance of doubt, any EMA Review Variations).

## 15 Covid-19 Related Support

15.1 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to avail itself of, including applying for, any governmental support or support from any local authority or other such body that is offered in relation to the impact of and/or recovery from the impacts of COVID-19 from time to time.

15.2 If and to the extent the Franchisee is successful in receiving such support, this shall be taken into account in relation to the application of the mechanisms in schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) to the Franchise Agreement, such that the Franchisee does not benefit from double recovery.

## 16 State Aid and Procurement

16.1 The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that the EMA and this ERMA must not result in any financial advantage being granted to Franchisee that is incompatible with the EU rules on State aid and, in particular, Articles 107 and 108 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union. In that regard, it is noted in particular that the replacement schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) to the Franchise Agreement defines the parameters on the basis of which the compensation payment for discharging the public service obligations is to be calculated. In accordance with Articles 4(1) and 6(1) of Regulation (EC) N° 1370/2007 of 23 October 2007 on public passenger transport services by rail and by road, these parameters have been determined in such a way that no compensation payment may exceed the amount required to cover the net financial effect on costs incurred and revenues generated in discharging the public service obligations, taking account of revenue relating thereto kept by the Train Operator and a reasonable profit. At the end of the term of this ERMA, the Secretary of State will carry out an ex-post check to ensure that there has been no overcompensation for the discharge of the public service obligations over the duration of the EMA and this ERMA. The Secretary of State will recover, in accordance with the EU State aid rules, any overcompensation in relation to the provision of the management role over the duration of the EMA and/or this ERMA or any other financial advantage that is identified as having been granted as a result of the EMA and/or this ERMA in violation of the EU State aid rules, whether such overcompensation or other advantage has been identified by the Secretary of State or by the European Commission and the Franchisee agrees to repay such monies promptly.

16.2 The Franchisee shall maintain and comply with a procurement policy that is consistent with all requirements (including all publication or notification requirements that apply from time to time) of the Utilities Contracts Regulations 2016 ("**Procurement Policy**"). The Franchisee shall act in accordance with such Procurement Policy in relation to all processes to procure



goods and services that are commenced during the ERMA Term or, if extended, the Extended Term.

## 17 Warranties

The Franchisee shall, within ten (10) days of the execution of this ERMA, provide a warranty in writing, from a statutory director of the Franchisee to the Secretary of State confirming that:

- (i) the information relating to claims and endogenous factors provided by the Franchisee in response to the Secretary of State's request for information for the purposes of the non-COVID trajectory model made on 3 September 2020 was true and accurate and not misleading in all material respects as at the date it was provided;
- (ii) the budget submitted by the Franchisee prior to the ERMA Start Date was prepared on the basis of recent historical financial information and reasonable assumptions, was arrived at after careful consideration and was a true and valid reflection of the Franchisee's actual and forecast financial position; and
- (iii) in the preparation of such budget, no measures have been undertaken to:
  - (a) suppress revenue and/or increase costs during the term of the EMA and/or this ERMA;
  - (b) reallocate costs to, or revenues from, the period when the EMA and/or this ERMA was or is in place; or
  - (c) act in a way that is contrary to the principles of the EMA and/or this ERMA by using the existence or cessation of the EMA and/or this ERMA to increase profitability.

## 18 Long Term Arrangements

**18.1** The Franchisee shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, enter into or extend the duration or scope of any agreements with third parties (including Affiliates), where the termination date for such agreement is later than the end of the ERMA Term or, if applicable, the Extended Term, as applicable.

**18.2** If:

- 18.2.1** the Franchisee enters into or extends the duration or scope of an agreement with a third party during the ERMA Term or the Extended Term; and
- 18.2.2** such agreement requires the Franchisee to pay a fee in relation to the termination of such agreement or the Franchisee incurs or will incur any other sum or cost in relation to the early termination of such agreement in connection with the termination of the Franchise Agreement in accordance with this ERMA or the termination of this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2,

such fee shall be for the account of the Franchisee and shall be a Disallowable Cost for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement.



## **19 Confidentiality and Disclosure**

- 19.1** Schedule 17 (*Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection*) to the Franchise Agreement shall apply to this ERMA *mutatis mutandis*.
- 19.2** Subject to Clauses 19.3 and 19.4 below the Franchisee agrees to provide to the Secretary of State in advance for approval the detail of any announcement disclosing the existence or terms of this ERMA that it considers it is required to make by law or pursuant to an order of any court of competent jurisdiction or the rules of a recognised stock exchange or a formal or informal request of any Taxation authority and the Secretary of State agrees to act reasonably and promptly in terms of providing that approval and/or in relation to any amendments the Secretary of State proposes to make to the form provided.
- 19.3** The Secretary of State may make disclosure in relation to the existence and subject matter of this ERMA to:
- 19.3.1** any United Kingdom government body for any proper purpose of the Secretary of State or of the relevant United Kingdom government body;
  - 19.3.2** parliament and parliamentary committees or if required by any parliamentary reporting requirement; and
  - 19.3.3** the extent that the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) deems disclosure necessary or appropriate in the course of carrying out the Secretary of State's public functions.
- 19.4** Each Party may make disclosure in relation to the existence and subject matter of this ERMA to any outside consultants or advisers engaged by or on behalf of such Party and acting in that capacity subject to any such consultant or advisers being subject to an undertaking of confidentiality.

## **20 Entire Agreement**

- 20.1** This ERMA contains all the terms which the Parties have agreed in relation to the subject matter of this ERMA and supersedes any prior written or oral agreements, representations or understandings between the Parties in relation to such subject matter.
- 20.2** The Franchisee acknowledges that this ERMA has not been entered into wholly or partly in reliance on, nor has the Franchisee been given any warranty, statement, promise or representation other than as expressly set out in this ERMA. If any such warranties, statements, promises or representations have been given the Franchisee unconditionally and irrevocably waives any claims, rights or remedies which it might otherwise have had in relation to them.
- 20.3** Nothing in this Clause 20 shall exclude any liability which one Party would otherwise have to the other Party in respect of any statements made fraudulently.

## **21 Counterparts**

This ERMA may be executed in any number of counterparts all of which when taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

**22 Costs**

Each Party shall bear its own legal, accountancy and other costs and expenses incurred in connection with the preparation, execution and implementation of this ERMA and all documents ancillary to it.

**23 Governing Law**

This ERMA (and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with it) shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of England and Wales and the Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales are to have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any disputes which may arise out of or in connection with this ERMA except as specified to the contrary.

**24 Rights of Third Parties**

No person who is not a Party to this ERMA shall have any right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce any of its terms.

SIGNED FOR ON BEHALF OF THE <b>SECRETARY OF STATE</b> FOR TRANSPORT:	) ) )	[REDACTED <sup>3</sup> ]
Print name of Authorised Signatory		[REDACTED]
Position		[REDACTED]

**This Agreement** has been entered into on the date stated at the beginning of this Agreement.

SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF **ABELLIO EAST ANGLIA LIMITED:** ) [REDACTED<sup>4</sup>]

.....

...[REDACTED] .....

Print name of authorised signatory:

Position: ...[REDACTED] .....

<sup>3</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>4</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

**Schedule 1**  
**Amendments to the Franchise Agreement**

The Franchise Agreement shall be amended as set out in the table below.

For the avoidance of doubt:

- any reference to "N/A" in the table below shall mean that the version of the schedule that prevailed immediately prior to the EMA Start Date (save as amended pursuant to any Variation agreed between the Parties following the EMA Start Date other than the Variation constituted by the EMA or this ERMA) remains unamended and continues to apply;
- any text that appears in blue and is underlined shall be added to existing clauses, paragraphs or schedules (as applicable) of the Franchise Agreement; and
- any text that appears in blue and is struck-out shall be deleted from existing clauses, paragraphs/schedules of the Franchise Agreement.

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
<b>Main Body</b>	
1.1 – Interpretation	<p>The following new subclauses shall be inserted into Clause 1.1 after sub-clause (aa):</p> <p><u><i>"(ab) a reference to a sum being calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1 or Schedule 8.2 (including references to RPI having the meaning given in Schedule 8.1 or Schedule 8.2, or references to amounts or costs being varied or indexed as amounts or costs are indexed in Schedule 8.1 or Schedule 8.2) shall be interpreted as a reference to Schedule 8.1 or Schedule 8.2 in the form which applied immediately prior to the EMA Start Date; and</i></u></p> <p><u><i>(ac) the Parties acknowledge and agree that any reference to the "last twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months of the Franchise Period" or the "last twelve (12) months of the Franchise Period" shall be deemed to be replaced with a reference to the duration of the ERMA Term or, where applicable, the Extended Term."</i></u></p> <p>The full stop at the end of Clause 1.1(aa) shall be deleted and replaced with "₁"</p> <p>The word "and" at the end of Clause 1.1(z) shall be deleted.</p>
3 – Definitions	The following new definitions shall be inserted into paragraph 3.1:

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
	<u>"Accessibility Panel"</u>	<u>means the regular forum of disabled passengers, including users of assisted travel, which the Franchisee must operate and consult on accessibility issues by virtue of section B5 of the Accessible Travel Policy Guidance and which the Franchisee will establish by no later than 31 January 2021;</u>
	<u>"Accessible Travel Policy"</u>	<u>means the Franchisee's policy for accessible travel which the Franchisee is required to establish and review from time to time in accordance with the conditions of its Licences in respect of the operation of railway passenger services and/or stations;</u>
	<u>"Accessible Travel Policy Guidance"</u>	<u>means the "Accessible Travel Policy: Guidance for Train and Station Operators", published by the ORR in July 2019 as amended and/or replaced from time to time;</u>
	<u>"Accrued Revenue Foregone"</u>	<u>has the meaning given in paragraph 9.10 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</u>
	<u>"Actual Capex"</u>	<u>means the actual Capital Expenditure of the Franchisee in the relevant period;</u>
	<u>"Actual Costs"</u>	<u>means the actual Costs of the Franchisee in the relevant period;</u>
	<u>"Actual Revenue"</u>	<u>means the actual Revenue of the Franchisee in the relevant period;</u>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>"Actual All Cancellations Performance Level"</u> means, in respect of a Reporting Period, the All Cancellations as most recently published by Network Rail for that Reporting Period in relation to the Franchisee;</p>
	<p><u>"Actual T-3 Performance Level"</u> means, in respect of a Reporting Period, Time to 3 Minutes as most recently published by Network Rail for that Reporting Period in relation to the Franchisee;</p>
	<p><u>"Actual T-15 Performance Level"</u> means, in respect of a Reporting Period, Time to 15 Minutes as most recently published by Network Rail for that Reporting Period in relation to the Franchisee;</p>
	<p><u>"All Cancellations"</u> means the sum of Cancellations, Partial Cancellations, Network Rail Cancellations and Network Rail Partial Cancellations relating to the Franchise as produced and/or published by Network Rail;</p>
	<p><u>"Approved D&amp;I Strategy"</u> means such D&amp;I Strategy as agreed by the Parties in accordance with paragraph 9A3.1(b) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives) or as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 9A3.1(c) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives).</p>
	<p><u>"Audited Accounts Reconciliation"</u> has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 9.4(b)(ii) (Annual Financial</p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Information) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information);</u></p>
	<p><u>"Budget"</u></p> <p><u>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1A (Definitions) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</u></p>
	<p><u>"Budgeted Capex"</u></p> <p><u>means the Capital Expenditure budgeted to be incurred by the Franchisee in a Reporting Period and specified in the Budget, as such Budget may be updated and/or extended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 8 (Revisions to the Budget) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</u></p>
	<p><u>"Budgeted Costs"</u></p> <p><u>means the Costs budgeted to be incurred by the Franchisee in each Reporting Period and specified in the Budget, as such Budget may be updated and/or extended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 8 (Revisions to the Budget) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</u></p>
	<p><u>"Cash Balance"</u></p> <p><u>means in respect to any Weekday during the Franchise Term, the Franchisee's actual cash balance excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities as at the end of business hours on the previous Weekday;</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>“Control Centres”</u></p> <p><i>means each integrated control centre, signalling centre, rail operating centre and other equivalent operational locations;</i></p>
	<p><u>"Costs"</u></p> <p><i>means costs and expenses properly incurred during the term of the ERMA and relating to the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement and stated in the Franchisee's profit and loss account (including accruals and prepayments recognised in the Reporting Period in which the related costs are incurred) but excluding:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <i>Franchise Payments (which shall include the value of any Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee);</i></li> <li>(b) <i>corporation tax and any deferred tax charge in the Franchisee's profit and loss account;</i></li> <li>(c) <i>any accounting transaction which does not require the Franchisee to make a cash payment, including notional pensions accounting adjustments and the accounting impact of financial instrument revaluations, other than depreciation and amortisation; and</i></li> <li>(d) <i>Capital Expenditure;</i></li> </ul> <p><i>provided that:</i></p>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(i) <u>if the Franchisee's relevant profit and loss account includes any cost(s) in respect of right of use assets treated in accordance with IFRS16 (the "<b>IFRS16 Cost</b>"), then, for the purpose of this definition, the amount for each IFRS16 Cost shall be deemed to be replaced (for the purposes of this definition and all related consequential purposes under this Agreement) with the amount which would have applied if the cost had been treated on a cash basis, as such cost is incurred in accordance with the relevant contractual arrangements, rather than in accordance with IFRS16; and</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>any liability of the Franchisee to the Secretary of State arising under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement prior to 1 March 2020 shall not be treated as or give rise to a cost or expense for the purpose of the Franchisee's profit and loss account;</u></p> <p><u>"COVID-19"</u> <u>means the coronavirus disease 2019;</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>"Customer Experience Fee" or "CE"</u> <i>means the element of the Performance Based Fee, the purpose of which is to measure the Franchisee's effectiveness in delivering:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <i>high levels of satisfaction and positive sentiment amongst users of the Passenger Services; and/or</i></li> <li>(b) <i>high-quality provision of facilities, services, customer care and other outputs that affect passengers' satisfaction and sentiment;</i></li> </ul>
	<p><u>"D&amp;I Annual Report"</u> <i>means a report produced by the Franchisee developed in accordance with paragraph 9A3.3(e) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives) in respect of the previous twelve (12) months or, if shorter, ERMA Start Date;</i></p>
	<p><u>"D&amp;I Annual Reporting Date"</u> <i>means the date on which the Franchisee must provide the D&amp;I Annual Report to the Secretary of State as stated in the D&amp;I Strategy, provided that if this date, in any Franchisee Year, occurs after the expiry of the term of the ERMA then the D&amp;I Annual Reporting Date shall be one (1) month before the expiry of the term of the ERMA;</i></p>
	<p><u>"D&amp;I Champion"</u> <i>means the director or senior executive that is accountable and responsible for implementing the D&amp;I Strategy and ensuring</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>that the Franchisee complies with its obligations relating to diversity and inclusion (excluding the obligations in paragraph 9A3.4);</u></p>
	<p><u>“D&amp;I Characteristics KPIs”</u></p> <p><u>means the KPIs set out in the Franchisee’s D&amp;I Strategy used to assess the impact of the Franchisee’s initiatives on diversity at different levels of the workforce and in connection with different characteristics (including gender, age, ethnicity and disability) compared to the region and/or nationally;</u></p>
	<p><u>“D&amp;I Improvement Plan”</u></p> <p><u>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9A3.7 (Improvement and Remedial Plans) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives);</u></p>
	<p><u>“D&amp;I Initiatives KPIs”</u></p> <p><u>means the KPIs set out in the Franchisee’s D&amp;I Strategy used to measure its performance against diversity initiatives and policies, which may include KPIs along the following lines:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <u>the number of positive action initiatives implemented and maintained by the Franchisee;</u></li> <li>(b) <u>the number of adverts in targeted publications;</u></li> <li>(c) <u>membership of diversity and inclusion networks and forums;</u></li> </ul>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(d) <u>the percentage of staff trained annually in diversity and inclusion;</u></p> <p>(e) <u>the number of line managers completing diversity and inclusion training;</u></p> <p>(f) <u>the number of members of the board of directors completing diversity and inclusion training; and</u></p> <p>(g) <u>the number of diversity and inclusion training sessions.</u></p>
	<p><u>"D&amp;I Strategy"</u></p> <p><u>means the Franchisee's diversity and inclusion strategy developed in accordance with paragraph 9A3.1 of Schedule 13.1(Rail Industry Initiatives) (substantially in the form set out in Appendix 2 (D&amp;I Strategy) to Schedule 13.1(Rail Industry Initiatives)) and references to the D&amp;I Strategy shall include the Approved D&amp;I Strategy;</u></p>
	<p><u>"Delay Attribution Principles and Rules"</u></p> <p><u>means the version of the document known as the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules referenced in the Network Code;</u></p>
	<p><u>"Devolved Transport Body"</u></p> <p><u>means, any public sector body which has been given responsibility for public passenger transport in the United Kingdom including Transport for London, Transport for Wales, Transport Scotland, Rail North, any Passenger Transport Executive or Combined</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
		<i>Authority and any other public body with relevant public passenger transport responsibilities;</i>
	<u><b>"Disallowable Costs"</b></u>	<i>means any Costs or Capital Expenditure which are described within Appendix 1 (Disallowable Costs) to Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) and may include amounts stated in the Budget, Financial Model and/or Record of Assumptions (as applicable) which have been Placed in Escrow;</i>
	<u><b>"EMA"</b></u>	<i>means the Emergency Measures Agreement entered into by the Parties on or around 1 April 2020 to deal with the impacts of COVID-19;</i>
	<u><b>"EMA FWCA"</b></u>	<i>has the meaning given to "FWCA" in schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA, (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "FWCA" in schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA. <b>"Final Working Capital Adjustment"</b> shall have the meaning given to that term in paragraph 10.3 of schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA and all definitions related to "Final</i>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
		<i>Working Capital Adjustment" shall have the meanings given to them in schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA);</i>
	<u>"EMA Review"</u>	<i>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of schedule 8.B (Performance Payment) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA;</i>
	<u>"EMA Review Scorecard"</u>	<i>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of schedule 8.B (Performance Payment) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA;</i>
	<u>"EMA Scorecard Criterion"</u>	<i>has the meaning given to "EMA Criterion" in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of schedule 8. B (Performance Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA;</i>
	<u>"EMA SoS Claims"</u>	<i>has the meaning given to "SoS Claims" in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA;</i>
	<u>"EMA Start Date"</u>	<i>means 1 April 2020;</i>
	<u>"Enforcement Benchmark"</u>	<i>means the:</i> (a) <i><u>Enforcement Cancellations Benchmark for each Reporting</u></i>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i><u>Period during a PBF Assessment Period;</u></i></p> <p>(b) <i><u>Enforcement Short Formation Benchmark for each Reporting Period during a PBF Assessment Period; and</u></i></p> <p>(c) <i><u>Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmark for each Reporting Period during a PBF Assessment Period;</u></i></p>
	<p><i><u>"Enforcement Cancellations Benchmark"</u></i></p> <p><i><u>means the benchmark that applies to Cancellations in relation to a Reporting Period during the PBF Assessment Period, as agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</u></i></p>
	<p><i><u>"Enforcement Short Formation Benchmark"</u></i></p> <p><i><u>means the benchmark that applies to Short Formations in relation to a Reporting Period during the PBF Assessment Period as agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</u></i></p>
	<p><i><u>"Enforcement TOC Minutes Delay Benchmark"</u></i></p> <p><i><u>means the benchmark that applies to TOC Minutes Delay in relation to a Reporting Period during the PBF Assessment Period, as agreed or determined in accordance with</u></i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
		<i><u>paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</u></i>
	<i><u>"Enhanced Disability Awareness Training"</u></i>	<i><u>means training compliant with the requirements set out in section 4, paragraph B6 of the Accessible Travel Policy Guidance;</u></i>
	<i><u>"ERMA"</u></i>	<i><u>means the Emergency Recovery Measures Agreement entered into by the Parties on or around the ERMA Start Date to deal with the impacts of COVID-19;</u></i>
	<i><u>"ERMA Start Date"</u></i>	<i><u>means 20 September 2020;</u></i>
	<i><u>"ERMA Stub Reporting Period"</u></i>	<i><u>means the period comprising the Reporting Periods following the period covered by the most recently delivered Annual Audited Accounts to the end of the ERMA Term or Extended Term, as applicable;</u></i>
	<i><u>"ERMA Term"</u></i>	<i><u>has the meaning given to that term in the ERMA;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Estimated Revenue"</u></i>	<i><u>means the Revenue reasonably estimated by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the estimation;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Extended Term"</u></i>	<i><u>has the meaning given to that term in the ERMA;</u></i>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
	<u>"Final Accounts"</u>	<u>means the set of financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP and delivered to the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements set out in paragraph 9.4A(m) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information) which comprise as a minimum, a profit and loss account, balance sheet and a cashflow statement containing only transactions properly accounted for which relate to the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods, to a level of disaggregation which the Secretary of State may reasonably require;</u>
	<u>"Final Adjustment"</u>	<u>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1A (Definitions) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</u>
	<u>"Final PBF Assessment Period"</u>	<u>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</u>
	<u>"Final Working Capital Adjustment" or "FWCA"</u>	<u>means the adjustment determined in accordance with paragraph 14.3 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payment);</u>
	<u>"Floor Cash Position"</u>	<u>means [REDACTED<sup>5</sup>] (excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) or</u>

<sup>5</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i>such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 12.8 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</i></p> <p><b><u>"Forecast Closing Cash Position"</u></b></p> <p><i>means, with respect to a Reporting Period, the Franchisee's forecast working capital position, excluding:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <i>the Franchise Payment to be made in the following Reporting Period and</i></li> <li>(b) <i>the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense account liabilities,</i></li> </ul> <p><i>as at the last day of that Reporting Period and taking into account the Franchisee's latest Management Accounts;</i></p>
	<p><b><u>"Franchise Payment Component"</u></b></p> <p><i>means:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <i>each of the components of "FP" as described in paragraph 1.3 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payment); and</i></li> <li>(b) <i>any component or element, described in the relevant provisions of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payment) and Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee), as the case may be, which is used in determining or calculating the value</i></li> </ul>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

*of those components described in paragraph (a) above;*

**"Good and Efficient Operator"**

*means in the context of all other relevant provisions of this Franchise Agreement, a notional train operator, having the same commercial, regulatory and operational arrangements as the Franchisee and being subject to the same operational circumstances (which shall recognise the extraordinary impact of COVID-19, the existence of the EMA and the ERMA and the requirement for operators to act in the national interest in response to COVID-19), which is a party to a franchise agreement on equivalent terms to the Franchise Agreement, with performance targets and standards equivalent to those set out in Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee) which complies with its obligations under such franchise agreement and the Licences in a timely, efficient and economical manner and with the degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which can be expected from a skilled and experienced train operator so that in this context costs and revenues are optimised in combination to the greatest extent reasonably practicable, adopting a reasonable balance in respect of*

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
		<i><u>short, medium and longer term consequences for the relevant franchise;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Improvement Plan Level"</u></i>	<i><u>means a NRPS Improvement Plan Level;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Initial PBF Assessment Period"</u></i>	<i><u>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</u></i>
	<i><u>"Integrated Control Centres Implementation Plan"</u></i>	<i><u>means a detailed plan jointly produced between the Franchisee, Network Rail and any other Train Operators setting out how and when they will implement the Integrated Control Centres Initiative;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Integrated Control Centres Initiative"</u></i>	<i><u>means measures and initiatives to improve performance outcomes between Network Rail and the Franchisee through collaboration, co-location and unified policies such that an integrated and cost-efficient approach to operations is adopted at specified Control Centres;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Management Fee and Performance Payment" or "MFPP"</u></i>	<i><u>has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 1A (Definitions) of schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as effected by the EMA;</u></i>
	<i><u>"Modernising Retail"</u></i>	<i><u>means the work in relation to modernising the retail of train tickets that is being</u></i>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i>developed pursuant to and in accordance with the 'Memorandum of Understanding for Modernising Retail' between the Secretary of State and the RDG dated 29 July 2020;</i></p>
	<p><b><u>"Non-Recoverable Costs"</u></b></p> <p><i>means any costs and expenses incurred by the Franchisee during a Reporting Period (as stated in the Franchisee's profit and loss account for that Reporting Period) which are inconsistent with the definitions of Costs, EMA Costs, Capital Expenditure and EMA Capital Expenditure;</i></p>
	<p><b><u>"NRPS Improvement Plan Level"</u></b></p> <p><i>means, in relation to a NRPS Measure applicable to a NRPS Service Group, the target (expressed as a specific value) which the Franchisee's performance is expected to equal or exceed during each PBF Assessment Period, as agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee) (and "<b>NRPS Improvement Plan Levels</b>" shall be construed accordingly);</i></p>
	<p><b><u>"NRPS Target"</u></b></p> <p><i>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</i></p>
	<p><b><u>"OP Target"</u></b></p> <p><i>means the target, expressed as a range within which the Franchisee's performance is expected to fall, which applies to an</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Operational Performance Component in relation to a Reporting Period during the relevant PBF Assessment Period, as agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</u></p>
	<p><u>“Operational Performance Components”</u></p> <p><u>means each of the matters in relation to which the Operational Performance Fee is assessed using the Quantified Target Methodology, being:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>(a) Cancellations;</u></li> <li><u>(b) TOC Minutes Delay;</u></li> <li><u>(c) Short Formations;</u></li> <li><u>(d) T-3;</u></li> <li><u>(e) T-15; and</u></li> <li><u>(f) All Cancellations;</u></li> </ul>
	<p><u>“Operational Performance Fee” or “OP”</u> <u>means the element of the Performance Based Fee, the purpose of which is to measure the Franchisee's effectiveness in delivering punctual and reliable journeys and in providing an appropriate amount of passenger-carrying capacity;</u></p>
	<p><u>“Outturn Cost” or “OTC”</u> <u>means, in relation to the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the aggregate of all Costs (excluding Disallowable Costs, Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs and Capital Expenditure) expressed as a positive number, as set out in the Audited Accounts</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Reconciliation provided pursuant to paragraph 9.4 (Annual Financial Information) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information);</u></p>
	<p><u>"Outturn Profit" or "OTP"</u></p> <p><u>means, in relation to the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the aggregate of all Revenue (expressed as a positive number) and all Costs (excluding Disallowable Costs and Capital Expenditure and expressed as a negative number), as set out in the Audited Accounts Reconciliation provided pursuant to paragraph 9.4 (Annual Financial Information) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information);</u></p> <p><u>"PBF Assessment Period"</u></p> <p><u>means each of the following periods:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <u>the Initial PBF Assessment Period;</u></li> <li>(b) <u>the Final PBF Assessment Period;</u> <u>and</u></li> <li>(c) <u>each period in the intervening period comprising:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) <u>the first to the sixth Reporting Period (inclusive) to fall in the relevant Reporting Year;</u> <u>and/or</u></li> <li>(ii) <u>the seventh to the thirteenth Reporting Period (inclusive) to fall in the relevant Reporting Year.</u></li> </ul> </li> </ul>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<i>as the case may be;</i>
	<u><i>"Performance Based Fee"</i></u> <i>means the performance-based element of the Franchise Payments as calculated pursuant to Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</i>
	<u><i>"Quantified Target Methodology"</i></u> <i>means, in relation to a QTM PBF Component, the methodology set out in Appendix 5 (Quantified Target Methodology) of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);</i>
	<u><i>"Quarterly Forecast"</i></u> <i>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.3(a) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information);</i>
	<u><i>"Recognised Accreditation Scheme"</i></u> <i>means any of the following diversity accreditation schemes:</i>
	(a) <i><u>Investors in Diversity;</u></i>
	(b) <i><u>Clear Assured;</u></i>
	(c) <i><u>National Equality Standards;</u></i>
	(d) <i><u>Diversity Development Standard;</u></i>
	(e) <i><u>Inclusive Employers; and/or</u></i>
	(f) <i><u>such other scheme as the Secretary of State may designate as a Recognised Accreditation Scheme from time to time;</u></i>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u><i>“Request for Data”</i></u></p> <p><i>has the meaning given to it in paragraph 12.4(a) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information);</i></p>
	<p><u><i>“Revenue Foregone”</i></u></p> <p><i>means an amount equal to the amount of Revenue or other value which was not received or receivable by the Franchisee, including:</i></p> <p>(a) <i>the:</i></p> <p>(i) <i>debts or other receivables waived, not collected or written off; and/or</i></p> <p>(ii) <i>value of any other asset not realised in whole or in part, but which would have been receivable and received or otherwise realised by the Franchisee if it had acted as a Good and Efficient Operator; and</i></p> <p>(b) <i>subject always to paragraph 6.1 (No Double Recovery) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments), the amount by which the Purchase Price (as defined in clause 2.1 of the Supplemental Agreement) receivable by the Franchisee is lower than it</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i>would have been but for the Franchisee:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>(i) incurring Disallowable Costs; and/or</i></li> <li><i>(ii) otherwise acting other than as Good and Efficient Operator;</i></li> </ul> <p><i>save where, in respect of both paragraphs (a) and (b) above, such Revenue or other value is not received or receivable as a result of the Franchisee acting in accordance with the instructions of the Secretary of State;</i></p>
	<p><b><u>"Short Formations"</u></b></p>
	<p><i>means Passenger Services in any Reporting Period formed with less Passenger Carrying Capacity than specified in the Train Plan;</i></p> <p><b><u>"Smart Media"</u></b></p> <p><i>means any of the following which can be used as part of a Smart Ticketing Scheme:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>(a) digital barcodes;</i></li> <li><i>(b) a barcode printed on paper either by customers (e.g. at home, office) or by</i></li> </ul>

Franchisee staff at Stations or on board trains;

- (c) ITSO Certified Smart Media;
- (d) contactless payment media (cEMVs);
- (e) Oyster (TfL's smartcard); and
- (f) any of the above formats stored and presented on a portable electronic device;

“SoS Claim”

means all losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that the Secretary of State does or will incur or suffer (including any such losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that are unliquidated or which are contingent):

- (a) as a consequence of any breach, negligence or other default of the Franchisee under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement and/or any agreement ancillary to this Franchise Agreement, the ERMA and/or the EMA, including the Supplemental Agreement; and/or
- (b) in respect of any matter for which the Franchisee is to indemnify the Secretary of State pursuant to this Franchise Agreement, the ERMA and/or the EMA or any agreement ancillary to this Franchise Agreement, the ERMA and/or the

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
		<u>EMA, including the Supplemental Agreement;</u>
	<u>"T-3"</u>	<u>means the percentage of recorded station stops called at within three (3) minutes of the planned time relating to the Franchise as produced and/or published by Network Rail;</u>
	<u>"T-15"</u>	<u>means the percentage of recorded station stops called at within fifteen (15) minutes of the planned time relating to the Franchise as produced and/or published by Network Rail;</u>
	<u>"Target Cost" or "TC"</u>	<p><u>means, in relation to:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <u>any PBF Assessment Period beginning on 1 April in any year, the aggregate of all forecast Costs falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period (excluding any Capital Expenditure, forecast Non-Recoverable Costs or forecast Disallowable Costs) set out in the profit and loss accounts included in the Annual Business Plan, expressed as a positive number; or</u></li> <li>(b) <u>any Subsequent PBF Assessment Period beginning on any date other than 1 April in any year, the aggregate of all forecast Costs falling</u></li> </ul>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

*within the relevant PBF Assessment Period (excluding any Capital Expenditure, forecast Non-Recoverable Costs or forecast Disallowable Costs) set out in the profit and loss accounts included in the most recent Quarterly Financial Information provided prior to the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, expressed as a positive number;*

**"Target Cost Record of Assumptions"** *means a record of assumptions setting out:*

- (a) *the non-trivial assumptions, methodologies and data sources used to prepare the Target Cost Template in sufficient detail to document a line-by-line understanding of the contents of the Target Cost Template;*
- (b) *an explanation in relation to any deviations from preceding cost trends; and*
- (c) *any updates to the Budget Supporting Materials;*

**"Target Cost Template"** *has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1(a) of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);*

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

"Target Profit" or "TP"

means, in relation to:

- (a) any PBF Assessment Period beginning on 1 April of any year, the aggregate of:
  - (i) all forecast items of Revenue falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period set out in the profit and loss accounts included in the Annual Business Plan, expressed as a positive number; and
  - (ii) all forecast items of Cost falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period (excluding any Capital Expenditure, forecast Non-Recoverable Costs or forecast Disallowable Costs) included in the Annual Business Plan, expressed as a negative number; and
- (b) any PBF Assessment Period beginning on any date other than 1 April of any year, the aggregate of:
  - (i) all forecast items of Revenue falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period set out in

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

*the profit and loss accounts included in the Quarterly Financial Information, expressed as a positive number; and*

- (ii) *all forecast items of Cost falling within the relevant PBF Assessment Period (excluding any Capital Expenditure, forecast Non-Recoverable Costs or forecast Disallowable Costs) included in the Quarterly Financial Information, expressed as a negative number;*

**"Target Profit Record of Assumptions"** *means a record of assumptions setting out:*

- (a) *the non-trivial assumptions, methodologies and data sources used to prepare the Target Profit Template in sufficient detail to document a line-by-line understanding of the contents of the Target Profit Template;*
- (b) *an explanation in relation to any deviations from preceding cost and/or revenue trends; and*

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

(c) any updates to the Budget Supporting Materials;

"Target Profit Template"

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.2(a) of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);

"TOC Minutes Delay"

means the minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are attributed to the Franchisee pursuant to the Track Access Agreement and disregarding any minutes of delay that are imputed to Passenger Services that were cancelled;

"Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs"

has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.16 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);

"Wavelength Survey"

means the weekly survey relating to the Passenger Services (in such form as may be agreed from time to time), which is undertaken as part of the Wavelength Programme to monitor, amongst other things, the Franchisee's performance against certain journey touchpoints (as specified in the Wavelength Survey) and certain key commitments based on core passenger priorities;



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT	
	<u>"Workforce Diversity Data"</u>	<p><u>means data on the diversity of the Franchisee's workforce including statistics showing:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <u>the gender, race, disability, sexual orientation and working pattern breakdown for specified jobs, categories and levels;</u></li> <li>(b) <u>religion and gender reassignment across the whole workforce;</u></li> <li>(c) <u>the promotion of the Franchisee's workforce that fall into the following groups: marriage and civil partnership; pregnancy and maternity; social mobility; and parental leave and caring responsibilities; and</u></li> </ul> <p><u>such other data as the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 9A3.6(b)(ii) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives);</u></p>
	<u>"Working Capital Payment"</u>	<p><u>means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 12.3 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments);</u></p>
	<u>"Working Capital Repayment"</u>	<p><u>means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

13.2 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments).

The following existing definitions shall be amended or replaced as follows:

**"Action Plan"**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph ~~26.2(a)~~ 9.1(e) of Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance);

**"Breach Performance Level"**

~~has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance) means, in relation to an Enforcement Benchmark for any Reporting Period, the number agreed or determined as such in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);~~

**"Capital Expenditure"**

~~has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.4 of Schedule 9.3 (Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes);~~ means:

- (a) the costs of creating non-current or fixed assets which are not Costs and which are properly accrued during the term of the ERMA and relating to the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement; or
- (b) for the purposes of Schedule 9.3 (Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes)

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>only, the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.4 of Schedule 9.3 (Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes);</u></p> <p><b><u>"Central Government Body"</u></b></p> <p>means a body listed in one of the following sub-categories of the Central Government classification of the Public Sector Classification Guide, as published and amended from time to time by the Office for National Statistics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Government Department;</li> <li>(b) Non-Departmental Public Body or Assembly Sponsored Public Body (advisory, executive, or tribunal);</li> <li>(c) Non-Ministerial Department; <del>or</del></li> <li>(d) Executive Agency; <u>or</u></li> <li>(e) <u>any other body that is a limited company and is controlled directly or indirectly by a Government Department;</u></li> </ul>
	<p><b><u>"Default Performance Level"</u></b></p> <p>means, in relation to an <u>Enforcement Benchmark</u> for any Reporting Period, the <del>numbers set out in the relevant Column of the Benchmark Table to Schedule 7.1 (Performance Benchmarks) relating to that Benchmark and in the row of that table for that Reporting Period</del> <u>agreed or determined</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

pursuant to paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee);

**"Expiry Date"**

means ~~the later of:~~

- (a) 1:59 a.m. on ~~12 October 2025~~<sup>19</sup> September 2021, unless the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate the ERMA pursuant to clause 3.2 of the ERMA, in which case the Expiry Date shall be 01:59 a.m. on 12 October 2025; or
- (b) ~~[Not used] any such later date that is specified by the Secretary of State pursuant to clause 5.3 (Duration of the Franchise Agreement); or~~
- (c) any such later date to which the Franchise Agreement is continued in accordance with clause 3.3 of the ERMA; 5.2 (Additional Reporting Periods);

**"Franchise Documents"**

means:

- (a) *this Agreement;*
- (b) *the Conditions Precedent Agreement;*
- (c) *the Funding Deed;*

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(d) <i>the Train Service Requirement; <a href="#">and</a></i></p> <p>(e) <i>any other agreement signed by the Franchisee at the time of the award of the Franchise which is in the possession of the Secretary of State and which is notified by the Secretary of State to the Franchisee as being required for publication; <a href="#">and</a></i></p> <p>(f) <i><a href="#">the ERMA;</a></i></p>
<p><b>"Franchise Payment"</b></p>	<p><i>means, in relation to any Reporting Period, the amount determined in accordance with <a href="#">paragraph 1.1 of</a> Schedule 8.1A1 (Franchise Payments);</i></p>
<p><b><a href="#">"Overall Performance Score"</a></b></p>	<p><i><a href="#">means, in respect of an NRPS Measure, the average of the scores achieved by the Franchisee (in each case as recorded in the relevant National Rail Passenger Survey(s)) in respect of that NRPS Measure across each of the NRPS Service Groups;</a></i></p>
<p><b>"Payment Date"</b></p>	<p><i>means the date for the payment of Franchise Payments in accordance with <a href="#">paragraph 3.3 2.3</a> of schedule 8.1A1 (Franchise Payments);</i></p>
<p><b>"Reporting Period"</b></p>	<p><i>means:</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(a) <i>for the purposes of the Season Ticket Bond, any consecutive seven (7) day period or any other period, each within a Reporting Period (as defined in paragraph (b)) agreed in accordance with paragraph 5.10 of Schedule 12 (Financial Covenants and Bonds); or</i></p> <p>(b) <i>for all other purposes, a period of twenty eight (28) days, provided that:</i></p> <p>(i) <i>the first such period during the Franchise Period shall exclude any days up to but not including the Start Date;</i></p> <p>(ii) <i>the first and last such period in any Reporting Year may be varied by up to seven (7) days by notice from the Secretary of State to the Franchisee;</i></p> <p>(iii) <i>each such period shall start on the day following the last day of the preceding such period; and</i></p> <p>(iv) <i>the last such period during the Franchise Period shall end at the end of the Franchise Period, <u>except for</u></i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
--	-----------

*the purpose of giving effect to any provision which survives the end of the Franchise Period including those provisions in Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) which anticipate Franchise Payments being made after the end of the Franchise Period;*

**“Required Performance Improvement”** *has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance) means an improvement in the Franchisee's performance against:*

- a) *the OP Target for Cancellations so that such performance is within or better than the OP Target for Cancellations; and/or*
- b) *the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay so that such performance is within or better than the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay; and/or*
- c) *the OP Target for T-3 so that such performance is within or better than the OP Target for T-3; and/or*
- d) *the OP Target for T-15 so that such performance is within or better than the OP Target for T-15; and/or*

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>"Smart Ticketing Scheme"</u></p>
	<p>e) <u>the OP Target for All Cancellations so that such performance is within or better than the OP Target for All Cancellations;</u></p> <p>f) <u>the OP Target for Short Formations so that such performance is within or better than the OP Target for Short Formations;</u></p> <p><u>means a scheme that uses Smart Media that can be fulfilled electronically. It must:</u></p> <p>a) <u>either provide passengers with an electronic way of buying (including at home, on the move or at stations), receiving or collecting and using their ticket; or identify that a passenger has entered and left the rail network at particular stations, and deducts the cost of the journey from their debit/credit card, pre-pay account or other permissible funding mechanism;</u></p> <p>b) <u>evidence the purchase of a single or multiple Fare(s) for a passenger; and</u></p> <p>c) <u>provide management information that a journey is being/has been made to the relevant back office;</u></p>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
11.3 – Disputes under Schedule 8 ( <i>Payments</i> ) of this Agreement	<p>Clause 11.3 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><b>"11.3 Disputes under Schedule 8 (<i>Payments</i>) of this Agreement</b></p> <p><i>The Parties shall comply with the terms of paragraph 4 (<i>Disputes under Schedule 8</i>) of Schedule 8. <u>1A4</u> (<i>Franchise Payments</i>) of this Agreement".</i></p>
15 – Competition	N/A
16 – Entire Agreement	<p>Clause 15.1 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"This Agreement, the Conditions Precedent Agreement, the Rolling Stock Substitution Side Letter and the Multiplicative Modelling Side Letter contains the entire agreement between the Parties, <u>except as amended</u>, in relation to the subject matter of the Franchise Agreement and supersedes all prior agreements and arrangements between the Parties other than any confidentiality agreements or undertakings which the Franchisee may have entered into with the Secretary of State in connection with his proposal to secure the provision of the Passenger Services under the Franchise Agreement".</i></p>
<b>Schedule 1: Passenger Service Obligations</b>	
1.1 – Franchisee Services and Service Development	Schedule 1 shall be replaced with the new Schedule 1 attached at Appendix 1 ( <i>Schedule 1 (Passenger Service Obligations)</i> ).
1.2 – Operating Obligations	
1.3 – NOT USED	
1.4 – Passenger Facing Obligations	
1.5 – Information about Passengers	
1.6 – The Rolling Stock	
1.7 – Stations	
<b>Schedule 2: Assets, Leases, Other Franchisees and Schemes</b>	

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
2.1 – Asset Vesting and Transfer	N/A
2.2 – Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases	<p>Paragraph 3.1 shall be deleted up to the end of limb (b) and replaced with the following new paragraph:</p> <p><u>"3.1 Without limiting paragraph 2.1 (Rolling Stock Related Contracts and Insurance Arrangements):</u></p> <p><u>(a) each Rolling Stock Lease entered into on or after the ERMA Start Date must allow the Secretary of State to make a direction under paragraph 3.2(b) below, including allowing Cascaded Rolling Stock to be sub-leased to the Prior Train Operator; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) if a Relevant Delay occurs, the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's sole discretion direct the Franchisee to make the Cascaded Rolling Stock available for use by the Prior Train Operator during such period as the Secretary of State may require, and the Franchisee shall comply with such direction. Any such direction may include the Secretary of State requiring the Franchisee to sublease the Cascaded Rolling Stock back to the Prior Train Operator and/or to delay the date on which the Cascaded Rolling Stock is required to be delivered to the Franchisee under such Rolling Stock Lease".</u></p> <p>A new paragraph 4A shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>"4A Where the Department requires the Franchisee to sub-let some of its Train Fleet to another Train Operator under the terms of paragraph 3.5 of Schedule 1.6 (The Rolling Stock), then the Franchisee shall:</u></p> <p><u>(a) provide the sub-lessee with access to any applicable maintenance and mileage records;</u></p> <p><u>(b) give the sub-lessee reasonable access to the relevant rolling stock vehicles prior to the handover of such rolling stock vehicles to assist with the relevant handover in relation to both operation and maintenance;</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(c) use reasonable endeavours to offer the sub-lessee "knowledge transfer" sessions (including technical and operation support) to enable recipient engineers and operational personnel to learn from informed peers;</u></p> <p><u>(d) provide the sub-lessee all relevant information in relation to property arrangements at any Depot relevant to the sub-leased rolling stock vehicles (a "Relevant Depot"), including any stabling arrangements; and</u></p> <p><u>(e) procure such access to each Relevant Depot as the sub-lessee may reasonably require.</u></p>
2.3 – Other Franchisees	N/A
2.4 – Not Used	N/A
2.5 – Transport, Travel and Other Schemes	N/A
<b>Schedule 3: Not Used</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 4: Accessibility and Inclusivity</b>	
	<p>A new paragraph 1.3 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>“(a) Subject to paragraph 1.3(c) below, it is acknowledged that the Franchisee is subject to obligations regarding accessibility under the terms of its Licences (including under the form of its Accessible Travel Policy as approved from time to time by the ORR in connection with the requirements of its Licences) (the "Licence Accessibility Obligations").</u></p> <p><u>(b) Where any matter included in this Schedule 4 is the subject of a Licence Accessibility Obligation, it is agreed that compliance with the Licence Accessibility Obligation shall take precedence over this Schedule 4 such that compliance with the Licence Accessibility Obligation shall be deemed to fulfil the obligation of the Franchisee in respect of that matter under this Schedule 4 and</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i>any failure by the Franchisee in respect of that matter shall be addressed under that Licence and not under this Franchise Agreement.</i></p> <p><i>(c) Paragraph 1.3(a) shall have no application to paragraph 3 (Dealing with Claims relating to Stations)."</i></p>
	<p>Paragraph 2.7(b) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"2.7</p> <p>(b) as soon as reasonably practicable (and in any event within four (4) months) after the Start Date and thereafter before the start of each Franchisee Year:</p> <p>(i) develop a Minor Works' Programme and consult with the <del>Disabled Persons Transport Advisory Committee</del> <i>Accessibility Panel</i> and relevant Passengers' Council in relation thereto;</p> <p>(ii) in conjunction with its activities in paragraph 3A.3(b)(i), and, consistent with its obligations under paragraph 3A.3(b), liaise with Network Rail and other Train Operators as necessary with regard to the determination and implementation of each Minor Works' Programme; and</p> <p>(iii) following the consultation and liaison described in paragraphs 3A.3(b)(i) and 3A.3(b)(ii), obtain the Secretary of State's prior approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld) of each Minor Works' Programme."</p>
	<p>A new paragraph 4 shall be inserted as follows, replacing the existing provisions:</p> <p><b><u>"4. Specific Additional Obligations relating to Persons with Disabilities</u></b></p> <p><b><u>4.1 To the extent the Franchisee did so prior to the ERMA Start Date, it shall continue to implement procedures necessary to:</u></b></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(a) record the making of reservations for seating accommodation and for spaces for wheelchairs for and/or the provision of assistance to, persons with disabilities which are made through the Passenger Assistance (or whatever service may replace it from time to time for the purposes of ORR's most recent guidance on the Accessible Travel Policies);</u></p> <p><u>(b) record whether such seating accommodation and/or assistance is actually provided, whether there has been a delay in providing such assistance at either departing, arrival or any interchange stations, and whether the journeys planned using Passenger Assistance have been completed successfully (e.g. by surveying a representative sample of users); and</u></p> <p><u>(c) provide the results of such records to the Secretary of State, and publish a summary of the data in its Customer Report(s) and on the relevant section of the Franchisee's website.</u></p>
4.2	<p><u>By no later than 30 November 2020, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State of:</u></p> <p><u>a) the extent to which it recorded the matters described in paragraphs 4.1(a) and 4.1(b) above (collectively referred to as the "<b>Seating and Assistance Provisions</b>"), as at the date of the notification; and</u></p> <p><u>b) if and to the extent to which it did not previously record the Seating and Assistance Provisions, its assessment of the costs, practicalities and timescales involved in putting in place the necessary systems and processes to enable them to do so.</u></p>
4.3	<p><u>Following the notifications referred to in paragraph 4.2:</u></p> <p><u>(a) if the Franchisee already records the Seating and Assistance Provisions, it shall continue to do so and shall provide the results of such records to the Secretary of State, and publish a summary of the data in its Customer Report(s) and on the relevant section of the Franchisee's website; and</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(b) if the Franchisee does not record the Seating and Assistance Provisions, then the Secretary of State may require them to establish and implement the necessary systems and processes by such date as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify (having regard to any assessment provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 4.1 above), and with effect from such date, it shall record Seating and Assistance Provisions and shall provide the results of such records to the Secretary of State and publish a summary of the data in its Customer Report(s) and on the relevant section of the Franchisee's website.</u></p>
	<p><u>4.4 The Franchisee shall promptly send to the Secretary of State a copy of:</u></p> <p><u>(a) each set of results of the surveys of Passenger Assistance users that the Franchisee undertakes pursuant to its Accessible Travel Policy; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) any reports that the Franchisee submits to ORR in connection with the effectiveness of, and satisfaction with, the Passenger Assistance service".</u></p>
	<p><u>4.5 The Franchisee shall comply with the requirements set out in Appendix 2 (Accessible Transport Arrangements) to this Schedule 4 in respect of the provision of accessible transport arrangements for persons with disabilities".</u></p>

A new paragraph 5 shall be inserted as follows:

**"5. Annual Accessibility Update**

- 5.1 The Parties acknowledge that the Franchisee, pursuant to its Licence Accessibility Obligations, is required to submit reports from time to time to ORR in respect of accessibility matters, including, in relation to:
- (a) the activities undertaken by the Franchisee to improve accessibility to the Franchise Services; and
- (b) the approach that the Franchisee has taken to assessing the accessibility requirements of passengers pursuant to the requirements of the EA for example when making decisions about operations, design and service improvements; and

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(c) the action(s) taken by the Franchisee to remedy any failure (whether identified by the Franchisee or ORR) to comply with the Franchisee's Accessible Travel Policy or any other accessibility related obligation arising by pursuant to its Licence Accessibility Obligations.</u></p> <p><u>5.2 The Franchisee shall provide a copy of any report submitted to ORR pursuant to paragraph 5.1 to the Secretary of State within seven (7) days of it being submitted to ORR".</u></p> <p>A new paragraph 6 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b><u>"6. Accessibility Director and Accessibility Manager</u></b></p> <p><u>6.1 As soon as reasonably practicable and by no later than 31 January 2021, the Franchisee shall nominate (to the extent that the Franchisee has not already done so):</u></p> <p><u>(a) a director to the board of directors of the Franchisee; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) an operational manager,</u></p> <p><u>each with specific responsibility of ensuring the Franchisee complies with its obligations in connection with accessibility, including pursuant to its Accessible Travel Policy requirements.</u></p> <p><u>6.2 The Franchisee shall ensure that such roles referred to in paragraph 6.1 are filled as soon as reasonably practicable after such roles become vacant throughout the Franchise Term".</u></p> <p>A new paragraph 7 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b><u>"7. Accessibility Panel</u></b></p> <p><u>7.1 The Franchisee shall:</u></p> <p><u>(a) consult the Accessibility Panel on operational and policy decisions that may have an impact on the needs of passengers with accessibility requirements;</u></p> <p><u>(b) develop the design of the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training referred to in paragraph 9 below, and the co-design of physical assets, electronic services and</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>applications, and other services and facilities relating to accessibility as appropriate, in each case, actively engaging with the Accessibility Panel as may be appropriate; and</u></p> <p><u>(c) provide the Accessibility Panel the opportunity to report to the board of directors of the Franchisee on a quarterly basis".</u></p> <p>A new paragraph 8 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b><u>"8. Enhanced Disability Awareness Training</u></b></p> <p><u>8.1 By no later than 31 July 2021 (or such later date as may be agreed by the Secretary of State and the Franchisee), the Franchisee shall deliver Enhanced Disability Awareness Training to all Franchise Employees. The Franchisee shall also ensure it delivers the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training to any Franchise Employees appointed following 31 July 2021 (excluding Franchise Employees appointed less than two months prior to the Expiry Date (as extended pursuant to clause 3.3 of the ERMA, if applicable) if it is not reasonably practicable to deliver Enhanced Disability Awareness Training to such Franchise Employees) as soon as reasonably practicable after their appointment.</u></p> <p><u>8.2 In developing the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training, the Franchisee shall:</u></p> <p><u>(a) take into account of a wide range of disabilities (including non-visible disabilities);</u> <u>and</u></p> <p><u>(b) ensure the content complies with the requirements of the ORR's Accessible Travel Policy guidance.</u></p> <p><u>8.3 The Franchisee shall involve people with disabilities and/or groups representing people with disabilities (which may include the Accessibility Panel) in the delivery of the Enhanced Disability Awareness Training."</u></p> <p>A new paragraph 9 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b><u>"9. Social Media Engagement with Passengers with Disabilities</u></b></p>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>9.1 By no later than 31 January 2021, (or such later date as may be agreed by the Secretary of State and the Franchisee) the Franchisee shall develop and share with the Secretary of State a twelve (12) month plan describing how it shall (or if the Franchise Term expires earlier than 20 January 2022, its Successor Operator may) increase its use of social media for the purpose of:</u></p> <p><u>(a) advising passengers with disabilities on matters, including:</u></p> <p><u>(i) planned and/or unplanned disruptions to Passenger Services;</u></p> <p><u>(ii) changes to Passenger Services in operation; and</u></p> <p><u>(iii) rail replacement bus services;</u></p> <p><u>(b) responding to queries and questions from passengers with disabilities and in a timely manner;</u></p> <p><u>(c) receiving feedback and comments from passengers with disabilities; and</u></p> <p><u>(d) promoting the Franchisee's additional services for passengers with disabilities, including Passenger Assistance.</u></p>
	<p><u>9.2 Subject to the Secretary of State's consent to the plan shared pursuant to paragraph 9.1 (such consent not unreasonably withheld or delayed), the Franchisee shall implement this plan (the "<b>Social Media Plan</b>").</u></p>
	<p><u>9.3 By no later than one (1) month prior to the expiry of the Franchise Term, or if earlier by 31 January 2022, the Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with a report detailing the extent to which the Social Media Plan is achieving the purposes referred to in paragraph 9.1 and any proposed revisions to the Social Media Plan to help achieve those purposes.</u></p>
	<p><u>9.4 Any revision to the Social Media Plan proposed by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 9.3 shall be subject to the consent of the Secretary of State before implementation (such consent not unreasonably withheld or delayed)".</u></p>

A new paragraph 10 shall be inserted as follows:

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><b><u>"10. Accessible Formats of Passenger Facing Information"</u></b></p> <p><b><u>10.1</u></b> <i>By no later than 31 January 2021 the Franchisee shall ensure (and continue to ensure throughout the Franchise Term) that, if and to the extent reasonably practicable, passenger facing information (in whatever form or media) is presented in a range of accessible formats, taking into account the requirements of Disabled People in relation to communication (such as passengers who use British Sign Language or "easy read").</i></p> <p><b><u>10.2</u></b> <i>The Parties acknowledge that:</i></p> <p><i>(a) the ORR licensing regime requires the publication of certain documents (the "<b><u>Relevant Documents</u></b>") in accessible formats; and</i></p> <p><i>(b) insofar as the obligation in paragraph 10.1 above applies to the Relevant Documents, enforcement action is within the remit of the ORR and accordingly a failure to comply with paragraph 10.1 in respect of the Relevant Documents shall not be treated as a contravention of the Franchise Agreement (but the Franchisee nevertheless acknowledges that it will remedy any such failure, as soon as practicable and in accordance with any directions as may be given by the ORR)".</i></p>
	<p>A new paragraph 11 shall be inserted as follows:</p>
	<p><b><u>"11. Diversity Impact Assessments"</u></b></p> <p><b><u>11.1</u></b> <i>The Franchisee shall, from the ERMA Start Date and throughout the Franchise Term, ensure that it conducts a diversity impact assessment on all projects that will or may affect the interests of persons with protected characteristics (as defined under the Equalities Act) carried out by the Franchisee (except where in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, the project is sufficiently completed such that a diversity impact assessment is not reasonably expected to materially influence the outcome of the project, in which case the requirement to conduct a diversity impact assessment in respect of that particular project shall not apply). The Franchisee shall take such steps as it considers appropriate (acting reasonably) in light of the conclusions of the diversity impact assessment to ensure that</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>issues affecting people with protected characteristics (as defined under the Equalities Act 2010) are properly addressed in compliance with applicable Laws".</u></p> <p>A new paragraph 12 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>"12. The Franchisee shall comply with any reasonable request by the Secretary of State in connection with the development and implementation of a station accessibility data collection plan which may include (but shall not be limited to):</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>a. supporting the Secretary of State in developing and designing the methodology for data collection;</u></li> <li><u>b. completing questionnaires and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner completes the relevant questionnaire;</u></li> <li><u>c. providing information in relation to Station accessibility and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner provides such information; and</u></li> <li><u>d. providing access to Stations to facilitate accessibility data collection and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner provides such access,</u></li> </ul> <p><u>in each case, in a timely manner."</u></p>

<b>Schedule 5: Fares and Smart Ticketing</b>	
5.1 – Purpose, Structure and Construction	N/A
5.2 – Franchisee's Obligations to Create Fares	N/A
5.3 – Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets	N/A
5.4 – Regulation of Fares Basket Values	N/A
5.5 – Regulation of Individual Fares	N/A

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
5.6 – Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price	N/A
5.7 – Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation	N/A
5.8 – Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring	N/A
5.9 – Smart Ticketing	<p>A new paragraph 1.9 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>1.9 The Franchisee shall ensure that all Weekly Season Tickets, Monthly Season Tickets and Annual Season Tickets which are ordered through the Franchisee's online retail channels or at ticket offices are, as the default option offered to the customer on Smart Media.</u></p>
5.10 – Fares, Ticketing and Retail Reform	<p>A new Schedule 5.10 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>"1 Fares, Ticketing and Retail Reform</u></p> <p><u>1.1 The Franchisee shall:</u></p> <p><u>(a) co-operate with the Secretary of State as may be required from time to time in respect of the planning and/or development (as applicable) of industry reform with respect to Fares, ticketing and the retailing of tickets, including:</u></p> <p><u>(i) co-operating and collaborating with other Train Operators and rail industry parties and other organisations in respect of such reforms; and</u></p> <p><u>(ii) developing pilot schemes in respect of such reforms, in each case, as directed by the Secretary of State; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) co-operate and collaborate with the RDG, other Train Operators and other organisations as directed by the Secretary of State to develop Modernising Retail proposals to accelerate and facilitate a transition to online and pay-as-you-go</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>retailing of tickets and the changes to industry retail operations enabled by such changes, including the ultimate withdrawal of "magstripe" paper tickets; and</u></p> <p>(c) <u>[REDACTED<sup>6</sup>]</u></p> <p><u>each a "FTR Co-operation Requirement".</u></p>
1.2	<p><u>If requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall also bring forward specific and suitable proposals to implement any plans and/or proposals developed pursuant to a FTR Co-operation Requirement (a "Proposed Reform Activity") which may be contracted pursuant to and in accordance with Schedule 9.3 (Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes).</u></p>
1.3	<p><u>When requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State its assessment of:</u></p> <p>(a) <u>any capital investment required to implement a Proposed Reform Activity;</u></p> <p>(b) <u>the cost of implementing a Proposed Reform Activity;</u></p> <p>(c) <u>any revenue impact associated with or caused by implementing a Proposed Reform Activity;</u></p> <p>(d) <u>estimates of significant change to passenger demand and/or patterns of travel that could be caused by a Proposed Reform Activity; and</u></p> <p>(e) <u>any material change to the Franchisee's assessment of any of the matters outlined in paragraphs (a) to (d) above,</u></p> <p><u>in each case promptly and in any event within seven (7) Weekdays of having calculated the same (unless the Secretary of State directs otherwise) and accompanied by all supporting evidence to substantiate each such calculation or change.</u></p>
1.4	<p><u>The Franchisee shall:</u></p>

<sup>6</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(a) continue undertaking any reform work related to a FTR Co-operation Requirement or other reform work requested or directed by the Secretary of State prior to the ERMA Start Date in accordance with any programme schedule agreed between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State (or in the absence of any such schedule, within such timescales as the Secretary of State may direct); and</u></p> <p><u>(b) commence undertaking and continue to undertake any FTR Co-operation Requirement requested or directed by the Secretary of State after the ERMA Start Date promptly and in any event in accordance with any schedule agreed between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State (or in the absence of any such schedule, within such timescales as the Secretary of State may direct).</u></p>
1.5	<p><u>The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to:</u></p> <p><u>(a) bring forward new proposals for implementing; and/or</u></p> <p><u>(b) introduce and implement,</u></p> <p><u>such amendments to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, the Pay As You Go Agreement, the CPAY Agreement and any other applicable industry agreements (including any successor arrangements or any other agreement between the Franchisee and one or more other Train Operators, rail industry parties and other relevant organisations (including Transport for London) relating to ticketing, fares, fares settlement, the operation of discount schemes or any related matter) as may be directed by the Secretary of State from time to time.</u></p>
1.6	<p><u>During the term of the ERMA, the Franchisee shall not enter into any new arrangements or material amendments to existing arrangements for the delivery of Fares, ticketing or the retailing of tickets without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.</u></p>
1.7	<p><u>The Franchisee shall promptly (and in any event within any timeframes specified by the Secretary of State) provide to the Secretary of State such information and data in relation</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<u><i>to Fares, ticketing and the retail of tickets as the Secretary of State may require from time to time.</i></u>
<b>Schedule 6: Franchise Specific Obligations and Committed Obligations</b>	
6.1 – Franchise Specific Obligations	A new paragraph 9 shall be inserted:
	<u><b>9. Infrastructure Projects</b></u>
	<u>9.1 For the purposes of this paragraph 9:</u>
	<u><b>“Infrastructure Project” shall mean any of:</b></u>
	(i) <u>Meridian Water;</u>
	(ii) <u>Cambridge resignalling; and</u>
	<u>such other projects as the Secretary of State may designate as an Infrastructure Project from time to time.</u>
	<u>9.2 The Franchisee shall from the Start Date until completion of each Infrastructure Project engage constructively with all relevant parties responsible for the delivery of such Infrastructure Project with the intention of assisting its timely, efficient and effective completion.</u>
	<u>9.3 To the extent that any Infrastructure Project leads to the Franchisee having rights under railway industry procedures (including Network Change and Station Change) the Franchisee shall not act in a way designed to directly or indirectly prevent, prejudice or frustrate the delivery of such Infrastructure Project and the Franchisee shall not unreasonably raise any objection under any railway industry procedure (including Network Change or Station Change) and any reasonable objections shall be raised by the Franchisee in accordance with the relevant railway industry procedures. It is acknowledged that the Franchisee may make reasonable objections with a view to mitigating the impact of the Infrastructure Projects and their implementation on passengers and the Franchise Services, while recognising the need for the Infrastructure Projects to be able to be undertaken in a reasonable manner.</u>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>9.4 The Franchisee shall throughout the Franchise Term allocate such appropriate Franchise Employees and other relevant resource as is reasonably required for the purposes of complying with its obligations in relation to all of the Infrastructure Projects pursuant to both the Franchise Agreement and the Access Agreements to which it is a party.</u></p>
	<p><u>9.5 The Franchisee shall provide within ten (10) Weekdays of the end of each Reporting Period a detailed report complying with the reasonable requirements of the Secretary of State describing progress in relation to matters relating to each Infrastructure Project and identifying and quantifying so far as the Franchisee is reasonably able the emerging risk position in relation to each such Infrastructure Project as it affects passengers and the Franchise Services. The Franchisee shall provide such additional information as the Secretary of State shall reasonably request and if requested by the Secretary of State it shall develop such alternative and contingency plans as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purpose of mitigating relevant risk and ensuring that the adverse impacts on passengers and the Franchise Services of any relevant risk arising is mitigated to the greatest extent reasonably practicable.”</u></p>

6.2 – Committed Obligations, Part 2

Paragraph 2.4 and 2.5 of Part 2 of Schedule 6.2 shall be deleted in its entirety and replaced as follows:

**“3 Underspent Amounts**

- (a) The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 7A of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information) where, in relation to any Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) that is expressed in terms of a requirement to spend not less than a specified sum in fulfilling its stated objective, the Franchisee is able to achieve that stated objective without incurring the full amount referred to in that Committed Obligation, whether because of cost savings or otherwise (an "Underspend").
- (b) Having due regard to the statement provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 7A of Schedule 11.2 (Management information), and where applicable, the findings of any audit conducted pursuant to paragraph 9.9 of Schedule 11.2 (Management information) together with any other relevant information available to the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State shall determine, for the period up to 1 March 2020, in relation to each



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) any Underspend and/or any other expenditure the Franchisee was obliged or otherwise projected to incur but which was not so incurred by the Franchisee, provided that the following amounts shall be excluded:</u></p> <p>(i) <u>any expenditure incurred by the Franchisee which was inconsistent with acting in accordance with its obligations under the terms of the Franchise Agreement (as in effect at the time the relevant expenditure was incurred); and</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>where a Termination Sum is payable by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 3 of schedule 2 (Termination of the Franchise Agreement) to the ERMA, any Underspend which has been assumed to be incurred as a cost for the purposes of the Non-COVID Trajectory Model,</u></p> <p><u>(the “Underspent Amount”).</u></p> <p>(c) <u>For the purposes of this paragraph 3, references to amounts the Franchisee was projected to incur in delivery of any Committed Obligations or Franchise Specific Obligations shall be determined by assuming that the amount the Franchisee was budgeted to spend in each Reporting Year in accordance with the Record of Assumptions and, where applicable, the Financial Model is incurred in equal amounts across each of the thirteen (13) Reporting Periods, unless otherwise determined by the Secretary of State, in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion, based on information available to it, including pursuant to any audit conducted pursuant to paragraph 9.9 of Schedule 11.2 (Management information).</u></p> <p>(d) <u>In respect of any Underspent Amount, which has not been directed to be repaid by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State or otherwise agreed to be applied towards an alternative scheme as at the date of this ERMA), the Secretary of State may, in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion:</u></p> <p>(i) <u>seek to agree with the Franchisee, an alternative scheme or schemes which shall be funded (in whole or in part) using the Underspent Amount and, once agreed,</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>the Franchisee shall apply such relevant Underspent Amount in the delivery of the agreed scheme(s):</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>require the Franchisee to undertake an alternative scheme or schemes (chosen in the Secretary of State's sole discretion), which shall be funded (in whole or in part) using any Underspent Amount(s) and the Franchisee shall apply such relevant Underspent Amount(s) in the delivery of the required scheme(s); and/or</u></p> <p>(iii) <u>require the Franchisee to repay the aggregate amount of any Underspent Amount which has not been applied to an alternative scheme in accordance with paragraph (e)(i) or (ii) to the Secretary of State, as soon as reasonably practicable. The Secretary of State shall have the right to implement such payment, without any double counting, by way of an adjustment to Franchise Payments and any such repayment shall not constitute Costs or Capital Expenditure."</u></p>

In Paragraph 10 (*Designation of Assets comprised in COs as Primary Franchise Assets*) of Part 2 of Schedule 6.2, the words "or a Franchise Specific Obligation" shall be inserted after the words "Committed Obligation".

In Paragraph 10 (*Designation of Assets comprised in COs as Primary Franchise Assets*) of Part 2 of Schedule 6.2, the words "~~shall (unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State) be nil~~" shall be deleted and replaced by "shall (unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State) be equivalent to the capital cost of the asset included in the Financial Model and Record of Assumptions after deducting the aggregate funding of such asset by way of Franchise Payments included in the Financial Model and Record of Assumptions during the Franchise Period immediately prior to the date of termination of the Franchise Agreement, except where, the Franchise Agreement terminates following service of a Termination Notice by the Secretary of State pursuant to Schedule 10.2 (Events of Default and Termination Events), in which case the transfer value shall (unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State) be nil".

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
6.3 – ERMA Specific Obligations	A new Schedule 6.3, attached at Appendix 2 ( <i>Schedule 6.3 (ERMA Specific Obligations)</i> ), shall be inserted.
<b>Schedule 7: Performance Benchmarks</b>	
7.1 – Operational Performance	Schedule 7.1 shall be replaced with the new Schedule 7.1 attached at Appendix 3 ( <i>Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance)</i> ).
7.2 – Customer Experience and Engagement	Schedule 7.2 shall be replaced with the new Schedule 7.2 attached at Appendix 7 ( <i>Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement)</i> ).
<p>Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State the following paragraphs shall not apply for the duration of the ERMA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) paragraph 2.3 (<i>Conduct of National Rail Passenger Surveys</i>);</li> <li>(b) paragraph 2.5 (<i>Conduct of National Rail Passenger Surveys</i>);</li> <li>(c) paragraph 3 (<i>NRPS Targets and NRPS Improvement Plan Levels</i>);</li> <li>(d) paragraph 4 (<i>Performance Review</i>);</li> <li>(e) paragraph 5 (<i>NRPS Improvement Proposals</i>);</li> <li>(f) paragraph 7 (<i>Payments on Termination or Expiry</i>).</li> </ul>	
7.3 – Customer Experience Performance	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 7.3 shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the ERMA.
<b>Schedule 8: Payments</b>	
8.1 – Franchise Payments	Schedule 8.1 shall be replaced with (together):

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	(a) the new Schedule 8.1A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) attached at Appendix 4 (Schedule 8.1A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> )) to this Schedule 1; and (b) the new Schedule 8.1B attached at Appendix 5 (Schedule 8.1B ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> )) to this Schedule 1.
8.2 – Profit Share Mechanism	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.2 shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the ERMA.
8.3 – Track Access Adjustments and Station Charge Adjustments	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.3 shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the ERMA.
8.4 – GDP & CLE Adjustment Payments	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.4 shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the ERMA.

**Schedule 9: Changes and Variations**

9.1 – Financial and Other Consequences of Change	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 9.1 shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the ERMA.
9.2 – Identity of the Financial Model (Escrow Documents )	N/A
9.3 – Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes	Paragraph 1.1 shall be amended as follows: <i>"The terms of the Franchise Agreement may be varied as follows but not otherwise:</i> (a) <i>by the Secretary of State <del>(as contemplated where relevant in the [Invitation to Tender/Request for Proposal])</del> in relation to:</i> (v) <i>any aspect of the Franchise Services; and/or</i> (vi) <i>any provision of the Franchise Agreement other than those provisions specified in paragraph 1.2,</i>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i>by service of a notice on the Franchisee referring to this paragraph 1.1(a) and setting out the variation to the terms of the Franchise Agreement; and</i></p> <p>(b) <i>in relation to any other provision of the Franchise Agreement, by agreement in writing between the Parties to that effect,</i></p> <p><i>(each a "Variation")."</i></p> <p>Paragraph 2 shall be deleted and replaced with "<a href="#">Not used</a>".</p>
9.4 – Secretary of State Risk Assumptions	N/A

**Schedule 10: Remedies, Events of Default and Termination Events**

10.1 – Procedure for Remediating a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement	<p>Paragraph 2 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"2. <b>Remedies for Contraventions of the Franchise Agreement</b></p> <p><i>If:</i></p> <p><u>(a) the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is contravening or is likely to contravene any term of the Franchise Agreement; and/or</u></p> <p><u>(b) the:</u></p> <p><u>(i) Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored "1"; or</u></p> <p><u>(ii) Franchisee has received a score of "1",</u></p> <p><u>in relation to any of the Scorecard Criteria for a particular PBF Assessment Period, in accordance with the PBF Assessment Period Review process set out in Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee); and/or</u></p> <p><u>(c) the Franchisee has received a score of "1" in relation to any EMA Scorecard Criterion in accordance with the EMA Review process set out in appendix 1 (EMA Review) of</u></p>
---	--

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Schedule 8.B (Performance Payment) of the Franchise Agreement as amended by the EMA:</u></p> <p>the Secretary of State may serve a notice on the Franchisee requiring it to:</p> <p><u>(d) propose such steps as the Franchisee considers appropriate for the purpose of securing or facilitating compliance with the term in question; and/or</u></p> <p><u>(e) address and overcome the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion or EMA Scorecard Criterion (as applicable),</u></p> <p>as applicable, (each a "<b>Remedial Plan Notice</b>")."</p>
	<p>Paragraph 3 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"3. <b>Remedial Plan Notices</b></p> <p>3.1. Each Remedial Plan Notice shall specify the following:</p> <p>(a) the:</p> <p><u>(i) term or terms of the Franchise Agreement that the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is contravening or is likely to contravene (each a "<b>Relevant Term</b>"); and/or</u></p> <p><u>(ii) specific Scorecard Criterion under the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard that the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is likely to score, or has scored, "1" in; and/or</u></p> <p><u>(iii) specific EMA Scorecard Criterion under the EMA Review Scorecard in respect of which the Franchisee has scored "1",</u></p> <p><u>as applicable; and</u></p> <p>(b) the time period ("<b>Remedial Plan Period</b>") within which the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to provide an appropriate plan for the purpose of facilitating or securing compliance with such Relevant Term <u>and/or addressing and overcoming the shortfalls or</u></p>

**REFERENCE  
(CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)**
**AMENDMENT**

failures that have led to the Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion or EMA Scorecard Criterion, as applicable (a "Remedial Plan")."

Paragraph 4.2 shall be amended as follows:

**"4.2 Each Remedial Plan shall set out:**

- (a) *the:*
  - (i) Relevant Term which has caused such Remedial Plan to be required; and/or
  - (ii) the Scorecard Criterion in respect of which the Franchisee has received, or is likely to receive, a score of "1"; and/or
  - (iii) the EMA Scorecard Criterion in respect of which the Franchisee has received a score of "1".

as applicable;
- (b) *an explanation of the reasons for:*
  - (i) the contravention or likely contravention of the Relevant Term; and/or
  - (ii) the Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion; and/or
  - (iii) the Franchisee receiving a score of "1" with respect to the relevant EMA Scorecard Criterion,

as applicable;
- (c) *the steps proposed for the purposes of:*
  - (i) securing or facilitating compliance with the Relevant Term; and/or
  - (ii) addressing and overcoming the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to the relevant Scorecard Criterion and/or EMA Criterion (as applicable).

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p style="text-align: center;"><u>as applicable; and</u></p> <p>(d) <i>the time period within which the Franchisee proposes to implement those steps."</i></p>
	<p>Paragraph 7 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><b>"7. Enhanced Monitoring by the Secretary of State</b></p> <p>7.1</p> <p><u>(i) Following the occurrence of a contravention of the Franchise Agreement; and/or</u></p> <p><u>(ii) where the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored "1" or the Franchisee has received a score of "1" in relation to any of the Scorecard Criteria for a particular PBF Assessment Period, in accordance with the PBF Assessment Period Review process set out in Schedule 8.1B (Performance Based Fee); and/or</u></p> <p><u>(iii) where the Franchisee has received a score of "1" in relation to any of the EMA Scorecard Criteria in accordance with the EMA Review process set out in appendix 1 (EMA Review) of Schedule 8.B (Performance Payment) of the Franchise Agreement as amended by the EMA,</u></p> <p><i>the Secretary of State may at the Secretary of State's option (but shall not be obliged to) commence or increase the level and/or frequency of monitoring (whether by inspection, audit or otherwise) of the Franchisee's performance of any relevant obligations until such time as the Franchisee demonstrates, to the Secretary of State's reasonable satisfaction, that it is capable of performing and will perform such obligations as required by the Franchise Agreement.</i></p> <p>7.2 <i>The Franchisee shall co-operate fully with the Secretary of State in relation to the monitoring referred to in paragraph 7.1.</i></p> <p>7.3 <i>The results of such monitoring will be reviewed at each Franchise Performance Meeting held pursuant to Schedule 11.1 (Franchise Performance Meetings).</i></p>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
10.2 – Events of Default and Termination Events	<p>7.4 <i>The Franchisee shall compensate the Secretary of State for all reasonable costs incurred by the Secretary of State in carrying out such monitoring. <a href="#">Any such compensation shall be a Disallowable Cost pursuant to Appendix 1 (Disallowable Costs) to Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments).</a></i></p> <p>Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, in paragraph 1.6 shall <b>not</b> apply during the term of the ERMA, provided that the Parties agree that paragraph 1.6 shall automatically apply if the Parties agree (or the Secretary of State determines, as applicable) that the Quantified Target Methodology shall apply to the Operational Performance Fee pursuant to and in accordance with the terms of Schedule 8.1B (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>).</p> <p>The text in paragraph 1.8 shall be deleted and replaced with "<a href="#">Not used</a>".</p> <p>A new paragraph 1.17 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b><a href="#">"1.17 Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities</a></b>  <a href="#">The Franchisee's Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities exceed the maximum value for Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities as specified in paragraph 9.12 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) to this Agreement."</a></p>
10.3 – Force Majeure and Business Continuity	<p>Paragraph 1(e)(iii) shall be amended by replacing the word "and" with "or".</p> <p>Paragraph 1(e) shall be amended by inserting a new paragraph as follows:</p> <p><b><a href="#">"(iv) for the duration of the ERMA, the occurrence and impact, whether direct or indirect, of COVID-19; and"</a></b></p> <p>Paragraph 1 shall be amended by inserting the following text at the end of the paragraph:</p> <p><b><a href="#">"The definition of "Force Majeure Event" shall for the duration of the ERMA exclude the occurrence and impact, whether direct or indirect, of COVID-19."</a></b></p> <p>Paragraph 3 shall be amended by inserting the following new paragraph:</p> <p><b><a href="#">"3.3 Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, and without prejudice to the Parties' positions as to whether the Force Majeure provisions would otherwise be engaged, the Franchisee agrees that it shall not for the duration of the ERMA be entitled</a></b></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
10.4 – Liability	N/A
<b>Schedule 11: Franchise Performance Meetings and Management Information</b>	
11.1 – Franchise Performance Meetings	N/A
11.2 – Management Information	Schedule 11.2 shall be replaced with the new Schedule 11.2 attached at Appendix 6 ( <i>Schedule 11.2 (Management Information)</i> ) to this Schedule 1.
<b>Schedule 12: Financial Covenants and Bonds</b>	
Financial Covenants and Bonds	<p>Paragraph 1 shall be amended by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>deleting the word "or" at the end of paragraph (c)</li> <li>amending subparagraph (d) as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"(d) <i>create or acquire any subsidiary or make or have any investment in any other entity, except for the deposit of cash with a Bank; <u>or</u></i>"</li> </ul> </li> <li>inserting a new subparagraph (e) as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>"(e) borrow any sum, or enter into any loan or lending agreement for the purpose of borrowing from any person."</u></li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Paragraph 2 shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>Not used</u>".</p> <p>Paragraph 3.1 shall be amended as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"3.1 <i>The Franchisee shall not during any Lock-up Period, do any of the following without the Secretary of State's consent:</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) <i>declare or pay any dividend (equity or preference) or make any other distribution, including surrendering any taxable losses to any of its Affiliates or pay any of its Affiliates in respect of taxable losses that they wish to surrender to the Franchisee,</i></li> </ul> </li> </ul> </p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i>without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State <u>(in relation to a Permitted Dividend, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed and subject to paragraph 3.4)</u>;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>pay management charges to any of its Affiliates in excess of those specified in the Initial Business Plan <u>without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State</u>; or</i></p> <p>(c) <i>make payment under any intra-group borrowings,</i></p> <p><i>provided that, during the Lock-up Period, the Franchisee may repay any borrowing and/or make any payment in respect of interest accrued on such borrowing, in each case relating to the Agreed Funding Commitment in accordance with the AFC Plan (each as defined in the Funding Deed)."</i></p>
	<p>Paragraph 3.2 shall be deleted and replaced with the following:</p> <p><u>"3.2 "Lock-up Period" means the period commencing on the ERMA Start Date and expiring on the date which the Secretary of State confirms by notice in writing to the Franchisee that:</u></p> <p><u>(a) the Secretary of State considers that all the obligations of the Parties to account to each other pursuant to Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) have been fully performed and discharged (such confirmation not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed); and</u></p> <p><u>(b) by virtue of such notice, the Lock-Up Period has expired.</u></p> <p><u>No such notice shall constitute a waiver of any rights which the Secretary of State may have under or in respect of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)."</u></p>
	<p>Paragraph 3.3 shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>Not used</u>".</p>
	<p>A new paragraph 3.4 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>"3.4 Subject to the Franchisee fully performing and discharging all its obligations under Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) and paragraph 9 (Financial Information) of</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Schedule 11.2 (Management Information) in relation to that Franchisee Year to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State, the consent of the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 3.1(a) and/or 3.1(b) may be sought annually or, in relation to a Franchisee Year of less than 13 Reporting Periods, on the expiry or termination of the relevant Franchisee Year. Any such consent shall be subject to the Parent or such other person acceptable to the Secretary of State entering into an agreement (in form and substance acceptable to the Secretary of State) to pay to the Franchisee, at the Secretary of State's request, the amount (if any) recoverable by the Secretary of State in respect of:</u></p> <p><u>(a) a fully liquidated Contingent SoS Claim; and/or</u></p> <p><u>(b) in respect of an adjustment to the Performance Based Fee and/or the Fixed Fee in accordance with paragraphs 9.13(a) and 15 (Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments),</u></p> <p><u>provided in each case that such amount to be paid to the Franchisee by the Parent or other person acceptable to the Secretary of State shall be reduced by a percentage equivalent to the percentage rate of NTR which applied to the corresponding Permitted Dividend payment made in respect of the Performance Based Fee and/or the Fixed Fee."</u></p>
A new paragraph 3.5 shall be inserted as follows:	
	<p><u>"3.5 For the purposes of this paragraph 3, <b>"Permitted Dividend"</b> means:</u></p>
	<p><u>(a) in relation to the Franchisee Year ending on 31 March 2021:</u></p>
	<p><u>(i) in respect of the period from 1 April 2020 to 01:59 on 20 September 2020,</u></p>
	<p><u>an amount in respect of any Management Fee and Performance Payment</u></p>
	<p><u>paid to the Franchise pursuant to schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to</u></p>
	<p><u>the Franchise Agreement as such schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments)</u></p>
	<p><u>applied during the term of the EMA pursuant to the terms of the EMA; and</u></p>
	<p><u>(ii) in respect of the period from the ERMA Start Date to 31 March 2021, an</u></p>
	<p><u>amount in respect of the Fixed Fee and/or a Performance Based Fee (if</u></p>

**REFERENCE  
(CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)**
**AMENDMENT**

and to the extent that a Performance Based Fee has been included in a Franchise Payment paid in accordance with Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)); and

(b) in relation to any subsequent Franchisee Year, an amount in respect of the Fixed Fee and/or a Performance Based Fee (if and to the extent that a Performance Based Fee has been included in a Franchise Payment paid in accordance with Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)),

in each case calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$\underline{\pounds PD} = \underline{FFPBF} - (\underline{FFPBF} \times \underline{NTR})$$

where:

**£PD** means the Permitted Dividend;

**FFPBF** means for the purposes of this paragraph 3.5 only:

- (a) in relation to the Franchisee Year ending on 31 March 2021, an amount equal to the sum of:
- (i) the aggregate of any Management Fee and Performance Payment paid to the Franchisee pursuant to schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as such schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) applied during the term of the EMA pursuant to the terms of the EMA; and
  - (ii) in respect of the period from the ERMA Start Date to 31 March 2021, the aggregate amount of the Fixed Fee and the Performance Based Fee (if any) that has been included in any Franchise Payment(s) paid in accordance with Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments); and

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(b) <u>in relation to any subsequent Franchisee Year, the aggregate amount of the Fixed Fee and the Performance Based Fee (if any) that has been included in any Franchise Payment(s) paid in accordance with Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)</u></p> <p><b><u>NTR</u></b> <u>means the rate of corporation tax (expressed as a percentage) applicable at the time at which the Secretary of State determines the value of the applicable Performance Based Fee (if any) and the Fixed Fee in accordance with Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments), provided that:</u></p> <p>(a) <u>NTR shall not be adjusted, revalued or otherwise affected by the application of tax losses or any other reliefs to which the Franchisee may be entitled; and</u></p> <p>(b) <u>if a Permitted Dividend has been made in accordance with this paragraph 3 and there is a subsequent variation in the rate of corporation tax in the relevant tax year, the Permitted Dividend shall not be recalculated to take account of such variation."</u></p>

A new paragraph 3A shall be added as follows:

"3A The Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to plan its business activities and working capital position such that the Forecast Closing Cash Position does not fall below the Floor Cash Position."

Paragraph 4.3(c) shall be amended by inserting the following text at the end of the subparagraph:

"The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee shall under no circumstances be entitled to reimbursement, pursuant to Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) or otherwise, in respect of any additional costs or expenses incurred by the Franchisee in

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u><i>procuring any new Performance Bond where required to do so pursuant to this paragraph 4.3(c)</i></u></p> <p>Paragraph 4.5(a)(i)(A) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"either terminated or expired and, in either case, in circumstances where there are liabilities or obligations outstanding from the Franchisee to the Secretary of State, <u>including where the Franchise Period has terminated or expired but provisions of the Franchise Agreement remain in operation and effect (including Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments))</u>; and/or</i></p> <p>The subparagraphs in paragraph 4.5(b) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"(i) early termination of the Franchise Agreement; and/or</i></p> <p><i>(ii) any failure by the Franchisee to perform or comply with any of its obligations to the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement or to a Successor Operator under the Supplemental Agreement,</i></p> <p><u><i>and/or</i></u></p> <p><i>(iii) <u>without prejudice to the generality of paragraph 4.5(b)(i), any of the following amounts which (a) in respect of any Performance Period (as defined in paragraph 1 (Definitions) of schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as amended by the EMA), the Secretary of State has not offset against MFPP in accordance with paragraph 11 (Management Fee and Performance Payment) of schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as amended by the EMA, (b) in respect of any Franchisee Year, the Secretary of State has not offset against FFPBF in accordance with paragraph 15 (Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee) of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments); or (c) are not taken into account in any payment received by the Secretary of State pursuant to the Funding Deed:</u></i></p> <p><u><i>(A) EMA SoS Claims, SoS Claims, Disallowable Costs, Non-Recoverable Costs and Revenue Foregone;</i></u></p> <p><u><i>(B) PPADC (as defined in paragraph 11.1 of schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) to the Franchise Agreement as amended by the EMA); and</i></u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(C)</u> <i>any other sums which the Secretary of State has the right in accordance with Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) to offset against FFPBF; and/or</i></p> <p><u>(iv)</u> <i>any amount of the Final Working Capital Adjustment not paid to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 10.4 of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)."</i></p> <p>In paragraph 4.5(c), the reference to "Schedule 8" shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>Schedule 8.1A</u>".</p> <p>A new subparagraph 4.5(d) shall be added as follows:</p> <p><u>"The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee shall under no circumstances be entitled to reimbursement, pursuant to Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) or otherwise, of any losses, liabilities, costs or expenses incurred by the Franchisee arising out of or in connection with any lawful demand made by the Secretary of State under the Performance Bond pursuant to this paragraph 4."</u></p> <p>Paragraph 5.7 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><u>"5.7</u> <i>The Secretary of State and the Franchisee may agree to increase or reduce the amount covered or required to be covered under a Season Ticket Bond from time to time, and the Secretary of State may direct the Franchisee to amend the amount covered or required to be covered under a Season Ticket Bond when, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, the STBA calculated pursuant to paragraph 5.3 above may not accurately represent the value of the Season Ticket suspense liabilities held by the Franchisee."</i></p> <p>A new paragraph 7 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>"7</u> <b><u>Survival</u></b></p> <p><u><i>This Schedule 12 and any other provisions of the Franchise Agreement reasonably required for the purpose of giving this Schedule 12 full effect shall survive the termination or expiry of the</i></u></p>



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<u>Franchise Term (however arising) and continue in full force and effect in accordance with its terms."</u>
<b>Schedule 13: Rail Industry Initiatives and Innovation Obligations</b>	
13.1 – Rail Industry Initiatives	<p>A new paragraph 9A3 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><u>"9A3 <b>Diversity and Inclusion</b></u></p> <p><u>9A3.1 <b>Diversity and Inclusion Strategy</b></u></p> <p><u>(a) Within 12 weeks after the ERMA Start Date, the Franchisee shall prepare a draft of its D&amp;I Strategy and submit it to the Secretary of State. The draft shall include details of:</u></p> <p><u>(i) the diversity and inclusion principles that the Franchisee maintains and/or will establish within its organisation, including but not limited to, in relation to recruitment practices, working environments and procedures</u></p> <p><u>(ii) the activities, policies and procedures that the Franchisee will employ (for example, including in relation to targeted recruitment policies, promotion of flexible working, mentoring programmes, school visits and annual staff diversity and inclusion surveys) that will demonstrate that it is an inclusive employer;</u></p> <p><u>(iii) how the Franchisee will evidence compliance with its diversity principles, policies and procedures against the Diversity KPIs (as defined in paragraph 9A3.3);</u></p> <p><u>(iv) how it will achieve and/or maintain diversity accreditation in accordance with a Recognised Accreditation Scheme in accordance with paragraph 9A3.2;</u></p> <p><u>and</u></p> <p><u>(v) how the Franchisee will comply with its Recruitment Objectives.</u></p> <p><u>(b) The Secretary of State may provide comments on the draft D&amp;I strategy to the Franchisee and the Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree the form</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>of D&amp;I Strategy within four (4) months of the date on which it was provided to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 9A3.1(a).</u></p> <p><u>(c) If the Parties are unable to agree a D&amp;I Strategy within the period set out in paragraph 9A3.1(b) the Secretary of State may reasonably determine the D&amp;I Strategy.</u></p> <p><u>(d) The Secretary of State may, from time to time, recommend such changes to the Approved D&amp;I Strategy as it considers reasonable.</u></p> <p><u>(e) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement and comply with the Approved D&amp;I Strategy.</u></p> <p><u>(f) In respect of any new contract or arrangements it enters into with third parties during the Franchise Term, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure it obliges its counterparty to comply with and implement suitable diversity and inclusion policies.</u></p> <p><u>(g) To the extent the Franchisee is entering into any material amendments to any existing contracts or arrangements with third parties, it shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the contract or arrangement (as amended) does not materially adversely affect the Franchisee's ability to comply with its D&amp;I Strategy.</u></p> <p><b><u>9A3.2 Diversity Accreditation</u></b></p> <p><u>The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to attain and/or maintain at least one diversity accreditation from a Recognised Accreditation Scheme within such timeframe as may be set out in its D&amp;I Strategy which shall comply with the timescales set by the relevant Recognised Accreditation Scheme or as otherwise agreed between the Parties.</u></p> <p><b><u>9A3.3 Performance reporting</u></b></p> <p><u>(a) The Franchisee shall develop D&amp;I Initiatives KPIs and D&amp;I Characteristics KPIs (together, the "Diversity KPIs").</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(b) The Franchisee shall design its Diversity KPIs with a focus on such areas as the Secretary of State may notify to it and in accordance with any guidance as the Secretary of State may provide.</u></p>
	<p><u>(c) The Franchisee shall collect suitable data to evidence its performance against the Diversity KPIs of which it shall:</u></p> <p><u>(i) provide details on as part of the D&amp;I Annual Report; and</u></p> <p><u>(ii) make available, in an orderly fashion, to any Successor Operator.</u></p>
	<p><u>(d) The Franchisee shall submit a D&amp;I Annual Report to the Secretary of State on the D&amp;I Annual Reporting Date.</u></p>
	<p><u>(e) The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee's D&amp;I Annual Report shall be provided substantially in the same form as the Secretary of State may request and shall include:</u></p> <p><u>(i) evidence of the Franchisee's performance against, and impact of implementing, its D&amp;I Strategy;</u></p> <p><u>(ii) evidence of the Franchisee's performance against the Diversity KPIs;</u></p> <p><u>(iii) evidence of the Franchisee working towards achieving and maintaining diversity accreditation in accordance with paragraph 9A3.2;</u></p> <p><u>(iv) evidence of the Franchisee establishing diversity in its procurement process and using a diverse supply chain;</u></p> <p><u>(v) evidence of the Franchisee's performance against its Recruitment Objectives;</u></p> <p><u>(vi) a record of any other diversity data collected by the Franchisee in respect of its workforce; and</u></p> <p><u>(vii) such other information and data as the Secretary of State may reasonably request at least three (3) months prior to the D&amp;I Annual Reporting Date.</u></p>
	<p><b><u>9A3.4 Diversity and Inclusion Champion</u></b></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(a) As soon as reasonably practicable and by no later than 31 October 2020, the Franchisee shall (to the extent that the Franchisee has not already done so) nominate a board director of the Franchisee or a member of the senior executive team of the Franchisee to act as D&amp;I Champion.</u></p> <p><u>(b) The Franchisee shall ensure that the D&amp;I Champion role is filled as soon as reasonably practicable after such role becomes vacant throughout the term of this Franchise Agreement.</u></p>
	<p><b><u>9A3.5 Recruitment Targets and Objectives</u></b></p> <p><u>(a) The Franchisee shall set out suitable recruitment targets and associated timeframes from time to time in respect of all new recruits across all grades, jobs, positions and roles (the “<b>Recruitment Targets</b>”) in its D&amp;I Strategy which, amongst other things, shall include:</u></p> <p><u>(i) gender equality targets, including a target of 50% female new recruits across all grades, jobs, positions and roles; and</u></p> <p><u>(ii) targets specifying the percentage of new recruits across all grades, jobs, positions and roles which will be ethnic minorities.</u></p> <p><u>(b) The Secretary of State shall consider the proportionality of the Recruitment Targets by reference to:</u></p> <p><u>(i) the demographics of the workforce in each region as indicated by the most recent Labour Force Survey produced by the Office for National Statistics;</u></p> <p><u>(ii) the individual circumstances of the Franchisee; and</u></p> <p><u>(iii) any other information the Secretary of State reasonably determines to be relevant.</u></p> <p><u>(c) The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State all evidence to allow the Secretary of State to reasonably determine whether any Recruitment Target is proportionate, as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State.</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(d) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable and lawful endeavours to:</u></p> <p><u>(i) be objective, transparent and fair in its recruitment processes;</u></p> <p><u>(ii) meet Recruitment Targets; and</u></p> <p><u>(iii) improve retention rates of underrepresented groups (together, the “<b>Recruitment Objectives</b>”).</u></p>
	<p><u>(e) The Franchisee shall report on its performance against its Recruitment Objectives as part of its D&amp;I Annual Report, together with relevant supporting evidence. Such supporting evidence may include details of Franchisee policies and procedures such as: advertising across a variety of channels to reach a broad range of candidates; blind sifting applications; engaging in CV blind interviewing; engaging in outreach programmes; establishing a returners policy; and/or establishing mentoring schemes.</u></p>
	<p><u>(f) The Secretary of State shall review the Franchisee’s performance against the Franchisee’s Recruitment Objectives as part of the Franchisee’s D&amp;I Annual Report.</u></p>
	<p><u>(g) The Secretary of State shall keep the Recruitment Targets under review and may adjust and/or suspend any Recruitment Target the Secretary of State reasonably determines to no longer be proportionate.</u></p>
	<p><u>(h) Nothing in this paragraph 9A3.5 or this Schedule 13.1 is intended to impose or require any quota.</u></p>
	<p><b><u>9A3.6 Data – collecting, monitoring and reporting</u></b></p>
	<p><u>(a) During the Franchise Term, the Franchisee shall monitor the diversity profile of its workforce and collect Workforce Diversity Data.</u></p>
	<p><u>(b) Within 6 weeks of the date of the ERMA, the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee of any further data requirements it may have, including:</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>(i) any additions to the scope of the Workforce Diversity Data the Franchisee is required to monitor and collect;</u></li> <li><u>(ii) the frequency in which it shall be measured or collected; and</u></li> <li><u>(iii) the form in which the Franchisee is required to deliver this to the Secretary of State via such data hub as the Secretary of State may direct.</u></li> </ul>
	<u>(c) The Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to collect and submit this data in accordance with the Secretary of State's data requirements.</u>
	<u>(d) The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that the Secretary of State may use any data provided to it by the Franchisee pursuant to this Schedule 13.1 for analytical and policy development purposes.</u>
	<u>(e) The Franchisee shall provide a summary report to the Secretary of State of its Workforce Diversity Data by no later than the date which is six (6) months after date of the ERMA.</u>
	<u>(f) The Franchisee shall provide a detailed report to the Secretary of State of its Workforce Diversity Data by no later than the date which is twelve (12) months after the date of this ERMA and on each anniversary of this date thereafter.</u>
	<u>(g) The Franchisee shall organise the detailed report in accordance with the characteristics listed in the definition of Workforce Diversity Data.</u>
	<b><u>9A3.7 Improvement and Remedial Plans</u></b>
	<u>(a) If and to the extent that the Secretary of State considers that the Franchisee has not adequately:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>(i) delivered its D&amp;I Strategy;</u></li> <li><u>(ii) achieved accreditation in accordance with its D&amp;I Strategy or has otherwise lost its accreditation;</u></li> <li><u>(iii) used all reasonable and lawful endeavours to deliver against its Recruitment Objectives; or</u></li> </ul>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>(iv) collected, monitored and reported on data pursuant to paragraph 9A3.6, it may notify the Franchisee that it requires it to deliver a plan for how it will improve its performance in the relevant area (a "D&amp;I Improvement Plan") for its approval. The D&amp;I Improvement Plan shall include the Franchisee's proposed timeline for implementing any changes or actions.</u></p> <p><u>(b) If the Parties cannot agree the D&amp;I Improvement Plan within 20 Weekdays from the Secretary of State's notification pursuant to paragraph 9A3.7(a), the Secretary of State may impose such D&amp;I Improvement Plan as it considers reasonable.</u></p> <p><u>(c) If the Franchisee fails to implement the D&amp;I Improvement Plan, then the Secretary of State may serve a Remedial Plan Notice on the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 10.1."</u></p>

A new paragraph 11A shall be inserted as follows:

**"11.A European Train Control System**

11A.1 The Franchisee shall co-operate in good faith acting reasonably and with each of the Department for Transport, Network Rail, any relevant ROSCO and any other third party in connection with the development, implementation and operational introduction on the routes of any system which is intended to provide European Train Control System ("ETCS").

11A.2 In accordance with paragraph 11A.1 the Franchisee shall provide reasonable assistance to the Secretary of State, Network Rail, any relevant ROSCO and any other relevant third party, which may, amongst other things, include:

- (i) providing advice to the Secretary of State in respect of any ETCS proposals and plans;
- (ii) supporting planning activities alongside other key stakeholders;
- (iii) ensuring that suitable equipment is fitted to rolling stock;

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
13.2 – Innovation Obligations	<p><u>(iv) developing driver training programmes and procuring that drivers are suitably trained; and</u></p> <p>(iv) <u>other associated amendments or variations.</u>"</p> <p>A new Appendix 2 shall be inserted in the form attached at Appendix 7 (<u>Appendix 2 (D&amp;I Strategy) to Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives)</u>) to this Schedule 1.</p>
<b>Schedule 14: Preservation of Assets</b>	
14.1 – Maintenance of Franchisee	N/A
14.2 – Maintenance of Operating Assets and Branding	N/A
14.3 – Key Contracts	N/A
14.4 – Designation of Franchise Assets	<p>Paragraph 2.1(h) (Primary Franchise Assets) shall be amended to insert the words "<u>or, where applicable, a Partially Completed RV Asset on the date on which the Secretary of State issues a Certificate of Partial Completion in respect of such RV Asset.</u>" at the end.</p> <p>Paragraph 2.1(j) (Primary Franchise Assets) shall be inserted to read "<u>any property and rights comprised in Committed Obligations or Franchise Specific Obligations and designated by the Secretary of State as Primary Franchise Assets pursuant to paragraph 10 (Designation of Assets comprised in COs as Primary Franchise Assets) of Schedule 6.2 (Special Terms related to the Committed Obligations), on the date of such designation.</u>"</p>
14.5 – Dealing with Franchise Assets	N/A
14.6 – Residual Value Mechanism	The following new definitions shall be added:



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u><b>“1 March RV Asset Transfer Value”</b> means the transfer value of a Partially Complete RV Asset as at 1 March 2020, determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 1.3A(d).</u></p> <p><u><b>“Certificate of Partial Completion”</b> means a certificate of partial completion issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 1.3A(e).</u></p> <p><u><b>“Completed RV Assets”</b> means RV Assets in respect of which a Certificate of Completion has been issued in accordance with the terms of paragraph 1.3 in respect of RV Assets in operational use prior to 1 March 2020 and <b>“Completed RV Asset”</b> means any one of them.</u></p> <p><u><b>“Partially Complete RV Assets”</b> means each Potential Partially Complete RV Asset in respect of which a Certificate of Partial Completion has been issued in accordance with paragraph 1.3A and which is not a Completed RV Asset and <b>“Partially Complete RV Asset”</b> means any one of them.</u></p> <p><u><b>“Potential Partially Complete RV Asset”</b> means an RV Asset (i) listed in Column 1 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of RV Assets) in respect of which a Certificate of Completion had not been issued as at 1 March 2020 but in respect of which delivery has commenced such that the asset was partially complete as at that date; and (ii) details of which have been notified to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 1.3A(a).</u></p> <p><u><b>“RV Asset Transfer Values”</b> means each of the transfer values relating to the RV Assets as specified in Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of RV Assets);</u></p> <p><u><b>“Revised RV Asset Transfer Values”</b> means each of the RV Asset Transfer Values as adjusted by the Secretary of State in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 1.4(a), paragraph 1.4(b) and paragraph 1.5 (as applicable).”</u></p>

The following definitions shall be deleted and replaced with the following:

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u><i>"Franchisee Owned RV Asset" means each of the assets listed in Column 1 of the table set out in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism), or where applicable the partially completed elements of such assets, in each case which:</i></u></p> <p>(a) <u><i>are not annotated in Column 4 of such table as Network Rail Fixture Assets; and</i></u></p> <p>(b) <u><i>are designated as Primary Franchise Assets in accordance with paragraph 2.1(h) of Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets) such that they can be transferred to a Successor Operator at the applicable value specified in Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism) (as such value may be amended during the Franchise Term in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs 1.4, 1.5 or 2.2 of this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism);</i></u></p> <p><u><i>"Network Rail Fixture Asset" means a tangible asset annotated as such in Column 4 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism), or where applicable the partially completed elements of such assets, in each case which is:</i></u></p> <p>(a) <u><i>funded by the Franchisee and affixed to a Station or Depot (as the case may be) such that it is regarded as a fixture to and part of such Station or Depot (as the case may be); and</i></u></p> <p>(b) <u><i>designated as a Primary Franchise Asset in accordance with paragraph 2.1(h) of Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets) such that it can be transferred as the unencumbered property of the Franchisee to a Successor Operator at the applicable value specified in Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism) (as such value may be amended during the Franchise Term in accordance with the provisions of paragraphs 1.4, 1.5 or 2.2 of this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism);</i></u></p> <p>Subparagraph (a) of paragraph 1.2 shall be deleted and replaced with the following:</p> <p><i>"(a) such RV Asset is lost, destroyed or otherwise beyond repair after the date upon which it is designated as a Primary Franchise Asset pursuant to paragraph 2.1(h) of Schedule 14.4</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u><i>(Designation of Franchise Assets) and such RV Asset is not replaced or such RV Asset is not or has ceased to be vested in the Franchisee; or</i></u></p> <p>Paragraph 1.3(a) shall be amended by inserting the words “<u><i>(which is not a Partially Complete RV Asset)</i></u>” after the words “<i>Within twenty (20) days of the date upon which an RV Asset</i>”.</p> <p>Paragraph 1.3(a)(v) shall be amended by inserting the words “<u><i>or Franchise Specific Obligations</i></u>” after the words “<i>Committed Obligations</i>”.</p> <p>The following paragraph shall be inserted as a new paragraph 1.3A after the existing paragraph 1.3 (<i>Process for issue of a Certificate of Completion for Completed RV Assets</i>)</p>
	<p><u><b>“1.3A Process for issue of a Certificate of Partial Completion for Partially Completed RV Assets</b></u></p> <p>(a) <u><i>In respect of any RV Assets listed in Column 1 of the table set out in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism), which are not Completed RV Assets as at 1 March 2020, the Franchisee shall, within fourteen (14) days of the date of the ERMA, provide to the Secretary of State such information as is required by the Secretary of State, and in the detail needed to demonstrate and evidence the degree to which such RV Asset could potentially be a Partially Complete RV Asset and the actual capital cost incurred by the Franchisee in respect of such RV Asset up to 1 March 2020, including the following:</i></u></p> <p>(i) <u><i>the information described in paragraph 9 of this Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets), including such information as the Secretary of State may require pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets);</i></u></p> <p>(ii) <u><i>information evidencing the actual capital cost incurred in respect of such RV Asset up to 1 March 2020 (including receipts and other supporting evidence) or where all information required to evidence the actual capital cost incurred in respect of such</i></u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>RV Asset is not yet available, the Franchisee's reasonable estimate of such actual capital cost with a commentary explaining how the estimate has been arrived at;</u></p>
	<p>(iii) <u>information which shows that, taking into account the works that would be required for that RV Asset to become a Completed RV Asset, such RV Asset satisfies the requirements of the Committed Obligations or Franchise Specific Obligations to which it relates;</u></p>
	<p>(iv) <u>details of any work completed up to 1 March 2020 and any work which remains outstanding before such RV Asset can be put into operational use; and</u></p>
	<p>(v) <u>such other information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in order to determine whether such RV Asset shall qualify for a Partial Completion Certificate.</u></p>
(b)	<p><u>Where the Franchisee is only able to provide an estimate of the capital cost of procuring a Potential Partially Complete RV Asset pursuant to paragraph 1.3A(a) above, it shall notify the Secretary of State of the actual capital cost (incurred by the Franchisee up to 1 March 2020) of procuring such asset (with receipts and other supporting evidence) as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within twenty eight (28) days of the date of the ERMA. The Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with such further information as reasonably requested for the purposes of verifying the actual capital costs incurred by the Franchisee up to 1 March 2020 in respect of such asset.</u></p>
(c)	<p><u>The Secretary of State may, prior to the issue of a Certificate of Partial Completion in respect of a Potential Partially Complete RV Asset, exercise Secretary of State's rights under paragraph 6 (Right to Inspect) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information) to inspect such asset for the purposes of determining whether the Secretary of State considers it appropriate to issue a Certificate of Partial Completion in respect of that asset and for the purposes of determining its 1 March RV Asset Transfer Value.</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(d) <u>The Secretary of State shall, for the purposes of issuing any Certificate of Partial Completion, determine (acting reasonably) the 1 March RV Asset Transfer Value of the relevant RV Asset and, in doing so, shall take into account the:</u></p> <p>(i) <u>actual capital cost incurred in respect of that asset up to 1 March 2020, which has been evidenced to the Secretary of State's satisfaction;</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>state of completion of the asset as compared to what would be expected from such asset were it to have become a Completed RV Asset; and</u></p> <p>(iii) <u>capital costs that would be expected to have been incurred by an operator acting in accordance with the Franchisee's obligations under the terms of the Franchise Agreement (as in effect at the time such costs were incurred) in achieving such state of completion,</u></p> <p><u>provided that, in respect of each relevant RV Asset, the 1 March RV Asset Transfer Value shall not in any event be greater than the capital cost set out in Column 5 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets).</u></p>
	<p>(e) <u>Subject to the Secretary of State being satisfied with the information provided pursuant to this paragraph 1.3A in respect of a Potential Partially Complete RV Asset, having regard to any information available to the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State shall issue to the Franchisee a certificate of partial completion in respect of such Potential Partially Complete RV Assets specifying for the purposes of this Agreement the state of completeness as compared to what would be expected from such RV Asset when it became a Completed RV Asset and the 1 March RV Asset Transfer Value (determined in accordance with paragraph 1.3A(d)) of the relevant RV Asset ("<b>Certificate of Partial Completion</b>").</u></p>
	<p>(f) <u>Notwithstanding any other provision of this Schedule 14.6, if a Certificate of Partial Completion is issued in respect of an RV Asset listed in Column 1 of the table in Appendix</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6, then no Certificate of Completion shall subsequently be issued in respect of that RV Asset.”</u></p>
	<p>Paragraph 1.4(c) shall be deleted and replaced with “Not used”.</p>
	<p>The following new paragraphs shall be added after paragraph 1.4.</p>
	<p><u>“1.5 Adjustments to the Transfer Value of RV Assets following entry into the ERMA</u></p>
	<p>(a) <u>In respect of each Partially Complete RV Asset:</u></p>
	<p>(i) <u>the Secretary of State shall adjust the RV Asset Transfer Value applicable to such Partially Complete RV Asset using the same principles as were specified in the Financial Model and Record of Assumption for the calculation of the initial RV Asset Transfer Value except that the 1 March RV Asset Transfer Value of such Partially Complete RV Asset shall replace the capital cost specified for such Partially Complete RV Asset in Column 5 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) in order to calculate the Revised RV Asset Transfer Value and such adjustment shall be deemed to take effect from the date upon which the relevant Certificate of Partial Completion is issued; and</u></p>
	<p>(ii) <u>Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) shall be restated using the amounts of the Revised RV Asset Transfer Value and such restatement shall be deemed to be effective from the date of issue of a Certificate of Partial Completion.</u></p>
	<p>(b) <u>The Parties acknowledge that:</u></p>
	<p>(i) <u>the RV Asset Transfer Values set out in Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) were calculated on the basis that the Franchise Term would end on 12 October 2025; and</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(ii) <u>upon entry into the ERMA, the Franchise Term was amended so that it ends on the Expiry Date.</u></p> <p>(c) <u>In order to reflect the amendment to the Term, the Parties agree that the Secretary of State shall adjust the RV Asset Transfer Value for each Completed RV Asset and each Partially Complete RV Asset (after applying any adjustments to the values in the table in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) in accordance with paragraph 1.5(a) above) by depreciating the value of each RV Asset on a straight line basis from the delivery date specified for such RV Asset in Column 3 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (“Planned Delivery Date”) until the end of the Franchise Term (as amended) so that:</u></p> <p>(i) <u>the Revised RV Asset Transfer Value will be the residual value of the RV Asset following such depreciation as at the end of the Franchise Period (as amended) or, if the RV Asset has been fully depreciated on that basis at that time, nil; and</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) shall be restated using the Revised RV Asset Transfer Value.</u></p> <p>(d) <u>The adjustments to Appendix 1 of this Schedule 14.6 contemplated in paragraph 1.5(a) in relation to each Completed RV Asset are without prejudice to any other adjustments that may be made in accordance with paragraph 1.4 (Adjustments to the Transfer Value), provided that the adjustments set out in this paragraph 1.5 shall only be applied after any adjustments pursuant to paragraph 1.4 (Adjustments to the Transfer Value) are first applied.”</u></p>
1.6	<p><u>Transfer Value of RV Assets commenced after 1 March 2020 or which do not become Partially Complete RV Assets</u></p> <p>(a) <u>If the Franchisee had not incurred any capital costs in respect of an RV Asset prior to 1 March 2020, the capital cost under Column 5 and the RV Asset Transfer Value under Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to the Schedule 14.6 (Residual</u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>Value Mechanism), in respect of such RV Asset shall both be deemed to be nil and Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) shall be deemed to be restated with effect from 1 March 2020 and the Secretary of State shall not be obliged to issue a Certificate of Completion or a Certificate of Partial Completion in respect of any such RV Asset.</u></p>
(b)	<p><u>Without limiting paragraph 1.6(a) above, for any RV Asset listed in Column 1 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to the Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism) in respect of which a Certificate of Completion or a Certificate of Partial Completion has not been issued by the end of the Franchise Period, the capital cost under Column 5 and the RV Asset Transfer Value under Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 (List of the RV Assets) to the Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism), in respect of such RV Asset shall both be deemed to be nil and Column 2 of the table in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 14.6 (List of the RV Assets) shall be deemed to be restated accordingly.”</u></p>

Paragraphs 1.5 to 1.7 of Schedule 14.6 shall be deleted and replaced with the following:

**“2 Maintenance Requirements for Completed RV Assets**

**2.1** At the same time as the Franchisee provides the information required pursuant to paragraph 1.3(a), the Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State a schedule of condition specifying the condition of such Completed RV Asset as at the date upon which such Completed RV Asset was brought into operational use as specified in the applicable Certificate of Completion. Such schedule of condition must be approved by the Secretary of State and shall be in respect of such aspects of a Completed RV Asset as the Secretary of State may reasonably require. The Franchisee shall ensure that each Completed RV Asset is maintained, preserved and protected in at least the same condition, subject to fair wear and tear, as specified in the applicable schedule of condition as approved by the Secretary of State in respect of such Completed RV Asset pursuant to this paragraph 2.1. In respect of any Completed RV Asset that is a Network Rail Fixture Asset the Franchisee shall ensure that any schedule of condition prepared as required by this paragraph 2.1 shall



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<u>comply with the Franchisee's maintenance obligations relating to such Network Rail Fixture Asset under the applicable Station Access Conditions and/or Depot Access Conditions (as the case may be).</u>
2.2	<u>Subject to paragraph 2.3, where the Franchisee has failed to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that it has complied with its maintenance obligations in paragraph 2.1 in respect of any Completed RV Asset then the Secretary of State may, by notice in writing to the Franchisee, require that the RV Asset Transfer Value payable by a Successor Operator required pursuant to the Supplemental Agreement to pay to the Franchisee the RV Asset Transfer Value for such Completed RV Asset (the “<b>Relevant Successor Operator</b>”) is adjusted downwards by an amount that is equal to the amount that is agreed by the Franchisee and the Relevant Successor Operator (or on failure to agree, as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State) as being the amount reasonably expected to be incurred by the Relevant Successor Operator for putting such Completed RV Asset in the condition required pursuant to paragraph 2.1.</u>
2.3	<u>The provisions of paragraph 2.2 shall not apply in circumstances where the Franchisee and the Relevant Successor Operator agree that the Franchisee shall either:</u>  <u>(a) rectify any relevant non-compliance with the requirements of paragraph 2.1; or</u>  <u>(b) indemnify the Relevant Successor Operator (the form of such indemnity to be in a form that is acceptable to the Relevant Successor Operator) against the reasonable costs of putting the relevant Completed RV Asset in the condition required by paragraph 2.1.”</u>

The following paragraph shall be inserted as a new paragraph 2A after the existing paragraph 2 (Maintenance Requirements for Completed RV Assets)

“2A Maintenance Requirements for Partially Complete RV Assets

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><u>2A.1 At the same time as the Franchisee provides the information required pursuant to paragraph 1.3A(a), the Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State a statement of condition specifying the condition of the relevant Potential Partially Complete RV Asset. Such statement of condition must be approved by the Secretary of State. The Franchisee shall ensure that each Partially Complete RV Asset is maintained, preserved and protected in at least the same condition, subject to any further works undertaken in relation to such Partially Complete RV Asset (in which case, the Franchisee shall ensure that each further developed Partially Complete RV Asset is maintained, preserved and protected in the manner that would be expected of a Good and Efficient Operator).</u></p>
	<p><u>2A.2 Subject to paragraph 2A.3, where the Franchisee has failed to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that it has complied with its maintenance obligations in paragraph 2A.1 in respect of any Partially Completed RV Asset then the Secretary of State may by notice in writing to the Franchisee require that the RV Asset Transfer Value payable by a Successor Operator required pursuant to the Supplemental Agreement to pay to the Franchisee the RV Asset Transfer Value for such Partially Complete RV Asset (“<b>Relevant Successor Operator</b>”) is adjusted downwards by an amount that is equal to the amount that is agreed by the Franchisee and the Relevant Successor Operator (or on failure to agree, as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State) as being the amount reasonably expected to be incurred by the Relevant Successor Operator for putting such Partially Complete RV Asset (as relevant) in the condition required pursuant to paragraph 2A.1.</u></p>
	<p><u>2A.3 The provisions of paragraph 2A.2 shall not apply in circumstances where the Franchisee and the Relevant Successor Operator agree that the Franchisee shall either:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><u>(a) rectify any relevant non-compliance with the requirements of paragraph 2A.1; or</u></li><li><u>(b) indemnify the Relevant Successor Operator (the form of such indemnity to be in a form that is acceptable to the Relevant Successor Operator) against the reasonable</u></li></ul>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
14.7 – Incentivising Long Term Investment	<p style="text-align: center;"><u><a href="#">costs of putting the relevant Partially Complete RV Asset in the condition required by paragraph 2A.1.</a></u></p> <p>N/A</p>
<b>Schedule 15: Obligations Associated with Termination</b>	
15.1 – Reletting Provisions	N/A
15.2 – Last 12 or 13 months of Franchise Period and Other Conduct of Business Provisions	<p>Paragraphs 2 and 3 shall be deleted and replaced with "<a href="#">Not used</a>".</p> <p>The reference in Paragraph 4 to "in the last twelve (12) months of the Franchise Period" shall be deleted and replaced with "during the ERMA Term".</p> <p>The words "during such period of twelve (12) months provided that where the last twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months of the Franchise Period has been deemed to have commenced under paragraph 1.1 and the period of the restriction contemplated by this paragraph 4 lasts longer than twelve (12) months such restriction shall apply in respect of the longer period" shall be deleted and replaced by "compared to the previous period of twelve (12) months".</p> <p>Paragraph 5.1(a) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(a) <i>During <u><a href="#">the term of the ERMA or the last thirteen (13) months of the Franchise Period (whichever is the longer)</a></u>, the Franchisee shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld), set the Price or Child Price of or sell (except to the extent required to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement as a result of the Price or Child Price of a Fare being set by another person) any Fare which would entitle the purchaser of such Fare to travel on all or any of the Passenger Services after the <u><a href="#">term of the ERMA or the Franchise Period (as applicable)</a></u> for an amount which is less than the Price or the Child Price of that Fare immediately before <del>the commencement</del> <u><a href="#">ERMA Start Date</a></u> or of such thirteen (13) month period <u><a href="#">(as</a></u></i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i><u>applicable</u></i> or, in the case of a new Fare, the Price of its nearest equivalent immediately before the commencement of such period."</p> <p>Paragraph 5.1(b)(i) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"(i) <i>presenting a Discount Card (or any equivalent replacement thereof) issued by the Franchisee before the <u>commencementERMA Start Date or</u> such thirteen (13) month period and to which the purchaser would have been entitled before the commencement of such period;</i>"</p> <p>Paragraphs 5.2(a) and (b) shall be amended by inserting the words "<u>during the term of the ERMA or,</u>" before the words "in the last thirteen (13) Reporting Periods" and adding the words "(whichever is the longer)" after the words "in the last thirteen (13) Reporting Periods".</p> <p>Paragraph 6 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"6. <i>Voting on Scheme Councils</i></p> <p>6.1 <i><u>Subject to paragraph 7.4, during the last twelve (12) months term</u> of the <u>Franchise Period ERMA</u>, the Franchisee shall give the Secretary of State reasonable notice of:</i></p> <p>(a) <i>any meeting of:</i></p> <p>(i) <i>a scheme council of an Inter-Operator Scheme on which the Franchisee is represented; or</i></p> <p>(ii) <i>a scheme management group of any Inter-Operator Scheme:</i></p> <p>(A) <i>in which the Franchisee has a permanent position; or</i></p> <p>(B) <i>where the Franchisee employs a member of such group;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>the resolutions to be voted upon at any such meeting; and</i></p> <p>(c) <i>the Franchisee's voting <u>intentions recommendations, together with its reasons.</u></i></p> <p>6.2 <i><u>Subject to paragraph 7, the</u> The Franchisee shall:</i></p> <p><i><u>(a)</u> vote at any such meeting in the manner required by the Secretary of State; and</i></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<u><i>(b) present any documents or other information which the Secretary of State may request at any such meeting</i></u> ".
15.3 – Handover Package	Paragraph 7 shall be deleted and replaced with " <u>Not used</u> ".
15.4 – Provisions Applying on and After Termination	<p>N/A</p> <p>Paragraph 2.2 shall be amended by inserting the words "<u>or sub-lessee and/or any</u>" after the words "any rolling stock lessor" and by deleting the word "and" before "other relevant third party".</p> <p>Paragraph 4.2 shall be amended by inserting the words "<u>(or, in relation to the rolling stock vehicles, use all reasonably endeavours to) procure that any sub-lessee shall provide</u>" after the words "On the expiry of the Franchise Period, the Franchisee shall grant".</p> <p>Paragraph 6 shall be amended by inserting the words "<u>(or, in relation to rolling stock vehicles, use all reasonably endeavours to) procure that any sub-lessee shall provide</u>" after the words "The Franchisee shall immediately on expiry of the Franchise Period provide to the Secretary of State".</p>
<b>Schedule 16: Pensions</b>	
16 – Pensions	<p>New Paragraphs 5.3 and 5.4 shall be added as follows:</p> <p><u><i>“5.3 For the remaining term of the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee shall:</i></u></p> <p><u><i>(a) not seek to or consent to lower the rate or amount of employer and/or employee contributions payable under the schedule of contributions (or any new schedule of contributions) relating to the Franchise Sections without the express written consent of the Secretary of State; and</i></u></p> <p><u><i>(b) comply with its obligation under paragraph 5.4 if and to the extent applicable.</i></u></p> <p><u><i>5.4 Where the Franchisee’s existing schedule of contributions provides for a reduction in the rate or amount of employer and/or employee contributions payable in respect of the Greater Eastern Railway Shared Cost Section during the remaining term of the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to amend or replace the</i></u></p>

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p><i><u>existing schedule of contributions (and if and to the extent necessary, to put in place amendments to the Rules of the Greater Eastern Railway Shared Cost Section) so that the reduction in the rate or amount of employer and/or employees contributions does not take effect. For the avoidance of doubt, all reasonable endeavours shall include for this purpose undertaking any consultation with employees or trade unions that may be required and seeking to obtain the consent of the Trustee of the Railways Pension Scheme, any Pensions Committee and the Secretary of State under paragraph 4.2(e) of Schedule 16 of the Franchise Agreement.</u></i></p>
	<p>In paragraph 6.4 and 6.5, the reference to "Schedule 8 (Payments)" shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)</u>".</p>
	<p>Paragraph 6.4 shall be amended as shown below:</p>
	<p>"If the Trustee does not certify under paragraph 6.3 in relation to the Franchise Sections that the Franchisee has fully complied with its obligations under the Railways Pension Scheme or if the Secretary of State otherwise reasonably considers that the Franchisee has not complied with such obligations, <u>then, without prejudice to the other duties and obligations of the Franchisee and to any other rights the Secretary of State may adjust have, it is acknowledged that the provisions in Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments) will operate to adjust the Franchise Payments payable under Schedule 8A (Franchise Payments) by an amount which is, in his opinion, no greater than the amount to take account of any contribution or payment that the Franchisee has thereby failed to make or avoided making.</u>"</p>
	<p>In paragraph 6.5, the text shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>Not used</u>".</p>
	<p>New paragraphs 8, 9 and 10 shall be added as follows:</p>

REFERENCE  
(CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)

## AMENDMENT

**"8. Franchisee obligations to participate in any Investigation and reform**8.1 In this Schedule:

(a) **"Investigation"** means any investigation, threatened use, or use of any statutory powers by the Pensions Regulator in relation to a section of the Railways Pension Scheme which has or had as its designated employer the Franchisee or another Train Operator (including a Successor Operator). For the avoidance of doubt, this includes any powers under section 231 of the Pensions Act 2004 or any other power which could affect the contributions payable by the employer or the liabilities of any other person in respect of that section; and

(b) **"Reasonable Commercial Manner"** means:

(i) acting in the long-term interests of the Franchise taking into account the long-term affordability, sustainability and financial robustness of the Franchise Section(s) as if the Franchisee and its employees (as appropriate) were solely responsible for the funding of the Franchise Section(s) and, at all times, disregarding the actual allocation of cost risk as between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State in this Franchise Agreement;

(ii) or (at the option of the Secretary of State) acting in such other manner as the Secretary of State directs.

8.2 The Franchisee shall:

(a) act in good faith and in a Reasonable Commercial Manner at all times; and

(b) engage appropriately with the RDG, the Pensions Regulator and the relevant trade unions,

in discharging its obligations under paragraph 8.3 of this Schedule 16.

8.3 The Franchisee shall take all reasonable steps to participate in:

- (a) the development and implementation of the RDG's response to the current and any future Investigation and the associated concerns raised by the Pensions Regulator regarding those sections of the Railways Pension Scheme for which a Train Operator is the designated employer;
- (b) any Investigation concerning one or more of the Franchise Sections, in which case the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to achieve an outcome from that Investigation with which a reasonable franchisee, who was in the position of the Franchisee and acting in a Reasonable Commercial Manner, would be satisfied; and
- (c) any industry wide efforts to reform the pension arrangements or benefits payable under the Railways Pension Scheme or offered to employees of Train Operators, recognising the need for the British passenger rail industry to be affordable and offer value for money in the interests of relevant stakeholders including taxpayers.

#### **9. Information Powers**

Where required by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee agrees to allow the Secretary of State or the Secretary of State's representatives to attend any meeting between the Franchisee and the Trustee and/or the Pensions Regulator where the meeting in whole or part relates to matters to which paragraph 8 or 10 of this Schedule 16 applies.

#### **10. Pension Directions by the Secretary of State**

10.1 The Secretary of State may, at any time, by written notice to the Franchisee, direct that the Franchisee take such action in relation to pensions for employees and workers of the Franchisee as the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's sole discretion determine. The Secretary of State may consult with the Franchisee before issuing any such direction under this paragraph. The Secretary of State may issue more than one direction to the Franchisee under this paragraph.

10.2 Without limiting the generality of paragraph 10.1, such directions may include:



REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
	<p>(a) <u>directing the Franchisee to propose a schedule of contributions or recovery plan to the Trustee of the Railways Pension Scheme incorporating such employer and employee contributions and over such period as the Secretary of State may determine;</u></p> <p>(b) <u>directing the Franchisee to offer such alternative pension arrangements to employees or workers of the Franchisee as the Secretary of State may determine; and</u></p> <p>(c) <u>directing the Franchisee to make proposals to the Trustee of the Railways Pension Scheme in relation to benefits, contributions or investments.</u></p>
	<p><u>10.3 Where the Franchisee receives a direction under paragraph 10.1, the Franchisee will use all reasonable endeavours to implement the direction and to work in good faith and act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner with other parties to give effect to the direction.</u></p>
	<p><u>10.4 To the extent that the terms of any direction given under paragraph 10.1 conflict with any of the other terms of this Schedule 16.1, the terms of the direction shall prevail to the extent of that inconsistency.</u></p>
	<p><u>10.5 The Franchisee will provide the Secretary of State with any documents or information which it may reasonably request in connection with any matter which is relevant to the subject of any direction given under paragraph 10.1 or its implementation.</u></p>
	<p><u>10.6 Nothing in this paragraph 10 shall require the Franchisee to breach any legal obligation to which it is subject. Where the Franchisee reasonably considers that the implementation of any aspect of the direction will cause it to breach any legal obligation of the Franchisee the Secretary of State shall work in co-operation with the Franchisee with a view to agreeing an approach to discuss changes to avoid or otherwise mitigate the risk of such breach.”</u></p>

#### Schedule 17: Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection

REFERENCE (CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection	<p>Paragraph 1 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>“Subject to the provisions of the Act, the Environmental Information Regulations, the Freedom of Information Act (and any code of practice or other guidance related to the same) and paragraphs 2 to 8 and 10 inclusive of this Schedule 17, each Party shall hold in confidence <a href="#">the Franchise Documents</a> and all documents, materials and other information, whether technical or commercial, supplied by or on behalf of the other Party (including all documents and information supplied in the course of proceedings under the Dispute Resolution Rules or the rules of any other dispute resolution procedures to which a dispute is referred in accordance with the Franchise Agreement) (all together the “Confidential Information”) and shall not, except with the other Party's prior written authority, publish or otherwise disclose any Confidential Information otherwise than as expressly provided for in the Franchise Agreement unless or until the recipient Party can demonstrate that any such document, material or information is in the public domain through no fault of its own and through no contravention of the Franchise Agreement, whereupon to the extent that it is in the public domain this obligation shall cease.”</i></p> <p>Paragraph 2.2 shall be amended by:</p> <p>deleting the word “or” after subparagraph (f)</p> <p>amending subparagraph (g) as follows:</p> <p><i>“(g) on a confidential basis to a proposed successor, transferee or assignee of the Secretary of State in connection with any assignment, novation or disposal of any of its rights, obligations or liabilities under this Agreement; <a href="#">or</a> ”</i>; and</p> <p>inserting the following as new subparagraph (h):</p> <p><i><a href="#">“(h) on a confidential basis to any Devolved Transport Body for any proper purpose of the Secretary of State or of the relevant Devolved Transport Body,”</a></i></p> <p>Paragraph 3.1 shall be amended by:</p> <p>as follows:</p>

**REFERENCE  
(CLAUSE/PARAGRAPH/SCHEDULE)****AMENDMENT**

*“Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph 1, the Secretary of State may publish ([for purposes including section 73 of the Act and](#) whether to the press, the public or to one or more individuals, companies or other bodies, including to any prospective Successor Operator) in such form and at such times as the Secretary of State sees fit, the following (irrespective of whether the same was provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee or a third party):”*; and

by inserting a new subparagraph (n) as follows:

*[“\(n\) any information provided to the Secretary of State pursuant to any provision of the Franchise Agreement including pursuant to a Request for Data where in the opinion of the Secretary of State publication is appropriate for the purposes of properly carrying out its duties; and”](#)*

**Appendix 1 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 1 (*Passenger Service Obligations*)**

**Passenger Service Obligations**

Schedule 1.1:	Franchise Services and Service Development
	Part 1 – Franchise Services
	Part 2 – Service Development
Schedule 1.2:	Operating Obligations
Schedule 1.3:	<b>NOT USED</b>
Schedule 1.4:	Passenger Facing Obligations
Schedule 1.5:	Information about Passengers
Schedule 1.6:	The Rolling Stock
	Appendix 1: The Composition of the Train Fleet
Schedule 1.7:	Stations
	Appendix 1: List of Stations and Car Parks with accreditation
	Appendix 2: Information about Station Improvement Measures
	Appendix 3 : <b>NOT USED</b>
	Appendix 4 : <b>NOT USED</b>

## **Schedule 1.1 Franchise Services and Service Development**

### **Part 1 – Franchise Services**

#### **1 Franchise Services**

- 1.1** The Franchisee may at all times during the Franchise Term provide and operate the Franchise Services specified in this Schedule 1.1. The Franchisee is required to provide the Passenger Services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and (without prejudice to the other provisions of the Franchise Agreement) is permitted to provide other Franchise Services subject to the provisions of Part 1 of this Schedule 1.1.
- 1.2** The Franchisee shall not, directly or indirectly, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, carry on any business or activity other than the provision and operation of the Franchise Services.
- 1.3** Nothing in this Schedule 1.1 shall restrict any Affiliate of the Franchisee from having an interest in or participating in any business or activity.
- 1.4** The Franchisee shall not engage any Franchise Employee in any activity or business which it may not conduct or engage in under this Schedule 1.1.

#### **2 Station Services**

**2.1** The Station Services shall comprise:

**2.1.1** the provision of any services to persons at Stations or to Train Operators whose trains call at such Stations, provided that such services:

- (i) are made available only or principally to passengers alighting from or joining trains calling at such Stations and to such Train Operators;
- (ii) are provided in connection with the calling of trains at such Stations and are not designed to encourage passengers or other persons to use such Station Services other than in connection with a journey on a train calling at such Stations;
- (iii) exclude the sale or issue (for a charge) of any goods other than passenger timetables and any items included in the price of a Fare; and
- (iv) may include the provision of car parking spaces; and

**2.1.2** the provision of access to any person under an Access Agreement at any Station.

**2.2** The Station Services shall include the provision of any service which the Franchisee may provide, or may be required to provide, under any Access Agreement in effect on the Start Date or as lawfully directed by the ORR from time to time.

#### **3 Light Maintenance Services**

**3.1** Light Maintenance Services shall comprise:

- 3.1.1** the provision of access to any other person under an Access Agreement;
- 3.1.2** the carrying out of inspections of rolling stock vehicles;

- 3.1.3 the carrying out of maintenance work on rolling stock vehicles of a kind which is normally carried out at regular intervals of twelve (12) months or less;
- 3.1.4 the replacement of failed components and consumables on rolling stock vehicles;
- 3.1.5 the preparation of rolling stock vehicles for service;
- 3.1.6 the stabling or other temporary holding of rolling stock vehicles;
- 3.1.7 the refuelling of rolling stock vehicles;
- 3.1.8 the emptying of retention tanks fitted to rolling stock vehicles equipped with Controlled Emission Toilets;
- 3.1.9 the replenishment of water tanks; and
- 3.1.10 the cleaning of the exterior or the interior of rolling stock vehicles,

in each case for itself and/or other Train Operators, at any Station or Depot.

- 3.2 Light Maintenance Services shall include the provision of any service which the Franchisee may provide, or may be required to provide, under any Access Agreement in effect on the Start Date or as lawfully directed by the ORR from time to time.

#### **4 Ancillary Services**

- 4.1 The Franchisee may carry out the following Ancillary Services:

- 4.1.1 the selling, lending or hiring of any goods or rights and the provision of any services (whether for a charge or not) on any train used in the provision of the Passenger Services where such goods or services are sold or provided principally for consumption or use on the relevant train, including the sale of any Fares, meals, light refreshments, newspapers, magazines, books, entertainment materials information or materials targeted at tourists and other leisure passengers (such as maps) or phone cards;
- 4.1.2 the provision of any service at any station which, if provided on a train used in the provision of the Passenger Services, would fall within paragraph 4.1.1 or which, if provided at a Station, would fall within paragraph 2 and which, in each case, is made available only or principally to persons at such stations who either are about to travel or have recently travelled on a train used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
- 4.1.3 NOT USED;
- 4.1.4 NOT USED;
- 4.1.5 NOT USED;
- 4.1.6 the selling at any location of any Fare which is valid, in whole or in part, on the Passenger Services and the selling of any other Fare at any location where such Fares may be purchased from the Franchisee on or before the date of the Franchise Agreement or at any other location, provided that the majority of Fares sold at any such other location shall be Fares which are valid, in whole or in part, on the Passenger Services;
- 4.1.7 the selling, in conjunction with any Fare, of any other rights which entitle the purchaser thereof to:

- (i) travel on any other train or light rail service;
  - (ii) travel on any aircraft;
  - (iii) travel on any shipping or ferry service;
  - (iv) travel on any bus; or
  - (v) attend any event or attraction or enter any location;
- 4.1.8** the lending, seconding, hiring or contracting out of Franchise Employees to other Train Operators in order to enable such Train Operators to provide services at the Stations to passengers travelling on any such operator's trains;
- 4.1.9** the provision of information relating to railway passenger services within Great Britain to passengers through telephone, internet, mobile data services or other appropriate means;
- 4.1.10** the supervision, management and training of train crew of other Train Operators provided such activity is necessarily incidental to the provision of the Passenger Services and could not reasonably be carried out by or through an Affiliate of the Franchisee;
- 4.1.11** NOT USED.
- 4.1.12** the licensing or permitting of any other person (including an Affiliate of the Franchisee) to carry out any activity or business, in connection with the provision of the Franchise Services, or otherwise, on any rolling stock vehicle operated by the Franchisee, at any station served by the Passenger Services, at any Depot, or otherwise (including the letting, leasing or licensing (on an exclusive basis or otherwise) of any part or all of a Station or Depot to such other person);
- 4.1.13** such other activity or business as may be reasonably necessary for the purpose of providing any other Franchise Services or complying with the Franchise Agreement, provided that it could not reasonably be carried out by or through an Affiliate of the Franchisee;
- 4.1.14** NOT USED
- 4.1.15** the provision or operation of Charter Services, subject to the Planned Train Mileage of such Charter Services not exceeding in any Reporting Period two per cent (2%) of the Planned Train Mileage of Passenger Services provided by the Franchisee in such Reporting Period;
- 4.1.16** the provision of consultancy services reasonably ancillary to the provision of the other Franchise Services; and
- 4.1.17** any services or activity not falling within paragraphs 2, 3, and 4.1.1 to 4.1.16, subject to the gross value of any such services or activity (excluding any attribution of costs) not exceeding twenty five thousand pounds (£25,000) per annum in each Franchisee Year, per item and in aggregate, two hundred and fifty thousand pounds (£250,000) per annum in each Franchisee Year provided that in the second and each subsequent Franchisee Year, these amounts will be increased by RPI.
- 4.2** Subject to obtaining the Secretary of State's prior written consent (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) save in respect of paragraph 4.2.4, for which no such consent shall be required, the Franchisee may, and (to the extent required in order to best



serve the needs of passengers on railway passenger services within Great Britain from time to time) shall use all reasonable endeavours to, carry out the following Ancillary Services:

- 4.2.1 in any Reporting Period, the subleasing, hiring or licensing of the rolling stock vehicles used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
- 4.2.2 the lending, seconding, hiring or contracting out during any Reporting Period to another person or persons (whether for a charge or not) of Franchise Employees;
- 4.2.3 any heavy maintenance of rolling stock vehicles which does not fall within the Light Maintenance Services, carried out on behalf of any other person at the following Depot(s):  
Norwich Crown Point; and
- 4.2.4 the subleasing, hiring, licensing, lending, selling of any rolling stock vehicles or other assets of the Franchisee or the lending, hiring or contracting out of any employees of the Franchisee or the provision of any other services to Network Rail or any other Train Operator on an emergency basis.

## 5 Royal Train

- 5.1 The Franchisee shall, if and to the extent requested by any person (including DB Cargo UK Limited its successor and assigns) and subject to the payment by such person of any reasonable costs of the Franchisee, co-operate in the provision by such person of railway passenger services for Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II or any successor head of state or members of the royal family or representatives of either of them.
- 5.2 The provision of railway services for Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II or any successor head of state or members of the royal family or representatives of either of them may include:
  - 5.2.1 running a “sweeper” train in front of the royal train;
  - 5.2.2 having spare locomotives or other rolling stock on standby as rescue traction; and/or
  - 5.2.3 carrying out security requirements or co-operating with other persons in ensuring that security requirements are carried out prior to calling at any station on the Routes.

## 6 Restrictions relating to Franchise Services

- 6.1 The Franchisee shall not without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State operate Passenger Services other than on the following routes (and, in the event of disruption, any reasonable diversionary route):
  - 6.1.1 Great Eastern Main Line between London Liverpool Street and Norwich, and branches to Braintree, Colchester Town, Clacton-on-Sea, Walton-on-the-Naze; and Harwich Town;
  - 6.1.2 Marks Tey to Sudbury;
  - 6.1.3 London Liverpool Street to Southend Victoria;
  - 6.1.4 Wickford to Southminster;
  - 6.1.5 West Anglia routes between London Liverpool Street and Stratford to Hertford East; Stansted Airport, Cambridge, and Kings Lynn;
  - 6.1.6 Ipswich to Felixstowe, Lowestoft, Cambridge, Ely and Peterborough;

6.1.7 Norwich to Cambridge, Great Yarmouth, Lowestoft, Cromer and Sheringham; and

6.1.8 Cambridge to Stansted Airport.

6.2 It is acknowledged that a Passenger Service to be operated by the Franchisee on the routes specified in paragraph 6.1 may be operated throughout the route, on part of the route or any combination of the whole or part of any two or more of the routes specified above.

6.3 The Secretary of State may impose such conditions to the Secretary of State's consent as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for the purpose of securing the continuity of the provision of the Franchise Services at the end of the Franchise Term.

6.4 The Franchisee shall not during the Franchise Term, without the consent of the Secretary of State:

6.4.1 provide or operate any railway passenger services other than the Passenger Services or Charter Services;

6.4.2 operate any stations or light maintenance depots other than the Stations and Depots; or

6.4.3 hold shares, participations or any other interest in any other company or body corporate unless such company or body corporate is:

(i) Network Rail; or

(ii) owned directly or indirectly by another participant in the railway industry and the holding is incidental to the Franchisee's participation in an Inter-Operator Scheme or any other arrangement designed to ensure or facilitate co-operation between such participants or between any such participants and any other person.

## **7 Restrictions on Closures of Railway Passenger Services or Railway Facilities**

7.1 Except to the extent that the Secretary of State agrees otherwise, the Franchisee shall not:

7.1.1 cease to operate;

7.1.2 cease to secure the operation of; or

7.1.3 propose to terminate the use of,

any Station (or part of a Station) or any railway passenger service over a Route where such cessation or proposal might result in a Closure.

7.2 If any procedures are commenced under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 in relation to a Closure, the Franchisee shall, at its own cost and to the extent so requested by the Secretary of State, take such action as the Secretary of State may require in order to enable the Secretary of State to comply with any duty imposed on the Secretary of State under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 in relation to such Closure.

## **8 Subcontracting any Passenger Services**

8.1 Subject to paragraph 8.2, the Franchisee may not subcontract or delegate the provision of the Passenger Services without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

- 8.2** The Franchisee may subcontract or delegate the provision of the Passenger Services, provided that:
- 8.2.1** the Secretary of State receives prior written notice of any such subcontracting or delegation;
  - 8.2.2** the Franchisee continues to be party to all Access Agreements and Property Leases necessary to provide such Passenger Services and to enjoy all relevant access and operational rights thereunder;
  - 8.2.3** the Franchisee continues to specify and control the terms and conditions (subject to the requirements of the Inter-Operator Schemes) on which such Passenger Services are to be provided, including the determination of the Price or Child Price (as the case may be) of any Fares;
  - 8.2.4** the Planned Train Mileage of the Passenger Services so delegated or subcontracted does not exceed five per cent (5%) of the Planned Train Mileage of the Franchisee in any Reporting Period (provided that, if as a result of the impact of COVID-19 it is not reasonably practicable to obtain the prior written consent of the Secretary of State to a higher percentage of the Planned Train Mileage being delegated or subcontracted in advance of subcontracting or delegating the provision of such Passenger Services, the Franchisee may subcontract or delegate the provision of such Passenger Services provided that the Secretary of State receives notification of, and has not objected to, any such subcontracting or delegation); and
  - 8.2.5** the Franchisee continues to perform its obligations under this Schedule 1.1 in respect of any subcontracted or delegated services.
- 8.3** Any such subcontracting or delegation shall not relieve the Franchisee from any of its obligations under the Franchise Agreement, including its obligations under this paragraph 8 and Schedule 14 (*Preservation of Assets*).

## Part 2 – Service Development

### 9 Train Service Requirement – Purpose and Responsibility

- 9.1** This Part 2 of Schedule 1.1 sets out the obligations of the Franchisee in relation to the acquisition of timetable development rights required for the purposes of securing a Timetable that complies with the Train Service Requirement and preparing a Train Plan consistent with the obligations of the Franchisee and the provision of appropriate levels of passenger carrying capacity. It also provides for alteration of the Train Service Requirement by the Secretary of State. The Train Service Requirement does not in any way limit the Franchisee's obligations pursuant to paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1.
- 9.2** The Train Service Requirement is the minimum specification of the Passenger Services to be provided by the Franchisee during the Franchise Term.
- 9.3** The Train Service Requirement as at the date of the Franchise Agreement is comprised in the following, all in the agreed terms marked as follows:
- 9.3.1** TSR1 being the Train Service Requirement applicable from the Start Date until the Passenger Change Date in May 2019; and
  - 9.3.2** TSR2 being the Train Service Requirement applicable from the Passenger Change Date in May 2019 until the Passenger Change Date in May 2020;
  - 9.3.3** TSR3 being the Train Service Requirement applicable from the Passenger Change Date in May 2020 until the end of the Franchise Term.
- 9.4** The Secretary of State and the Franchisee agree that the replacement of:
- 9.4.1** TSR1 by TSR2; and
  - 9.4.2** TSR2 by TSR3
- at the times and for the periods specified in paragraph 9.3 shall not constitute a Change for the purposes of paragraph (d) of the definition of Change.
- 9.5** For the purposes of this Schedule 1.1, the Train Service Requirement shall remain in force unless and until amended or replaced pursuant to this Schedule 1.1.
- 9.6** The Train Service Requirement may be expressed, in whole or in part, at any level of generality or to any level of detail the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

### 10 Train Plan

- 10.1** Subject to paragraph 10.2, for the purposes of this Agreement, the “**Train Plan**” shall be the plan (including sub-plans) prepared by the Franchisee for the operation of trains and train formations under the Timetable that best matches available capacity to Forecast Passenger Demand as amended from time to time during the Franchise Period in accordance with this Agreement.
- 10.2** For the purposes of Schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*), references to “Train Plan” shall be construed as the latest version of the Train Plan which includes any amendments thereto pursuant to paragraphs 3, 4 and/or 5 of Schedule 1.2 (*Operating Obligations*):
- 10.2.1** where such amendments are required as a consequence of Network Rail exercising its rights pursuant to the Track Access Agreement;

- 10.2.2 where such amendments proposed by the Franchisee have prior approval from the Secretary of State; or
- 10.2.3 where such amendments are requested by the Secretary of State.
- 10.3 The Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State a Train Plan in respect of each Timetable in accordance with this Schedule 1.1.
- 10.4 In preparing any Train Plan, the Franchisee shall do so by reference to the Timetable that it envisages operating in order to comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1.
- 10.5 Each Train Plan shall set out for each railway passenger service in the Timetable to which it relates:
- 10.5.1 its start point and departure time;
- 10.5.2 its terminating point and arrival time;
- 10.5.3 the number and class of rolling stock vehicles allocated to each such railway passenger service;
- 10.5.4 the Passenger Carrying Capacity that each such railway passenger service, as formed, is to have; and
- 10.5.5 its Forecast Passenger Demand and, where this has been requested by the Secretary of State and is capable of calculation, Actual Passenger Demand.
- 10.6 A Train Plan shall be in any format that the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for this purpose.
- 10.7 At the Start Date, Network Rail will have issued the applicable working timetable on which the Timetable is to be based. Accordingly, the Franchisee shall confirm to the Secretary of State that it intends:
- 10.7.1 to adopt, from the Start Date until the next Passenger Change Date, the Train Plan prepared by the Train Operator under the Previous Franchise Agreement; or
- 10.7.2 to prepare its own Train Plan in accordance with this Schedule 1.1,
- such Train Plan shall become the document in the agreed terms marked **TP** as at the Start Date. It is acknowledged that the Train Plan in the agreed terms marked **TP** shall be replaced from time to time during the Franchise Period in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 14.4.
- 11 Consultation on Significant Alterations to the Timetable**
- 11.1 Notwithstanding any consultation the Secretary of State might separately undertake in respect of any amended or new draft Train Service Requirement issued pursuant to paragraph 16, the Franchisee shall where:
- 11.1.1 it intends that any future Timetable will contain Significant Alterations compared to the Timetable then in force; and
- 11.1.2 such Significant Alterations are likely to have, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, a materially adverse effect on:

- (i) the ability of passengers using any station served by the Passenger Services to make journeys relating to work or education at reasonably convenient times; and/or
- (ii) the trading prospects of commercial enterprises located in any community in which a station served by the Passenger Services is located in consequence of it being more difficult for customers or employees to access such commercial enterprises through travel on the Passenger Services,

consult with Stakeholders who would reasonably be expected to be affected by any such Significant Alterations in relation to such proposed future Timetable.

**11.2** Accordingly, the Franchisee shall where the circumstances described in paragraph 11.1 apply:

**11.2.1** as soon as reasonably practicable provide to the Secretary of State and all Stakeholders a comprehensive summary of the proposed changes from the Timetable then in force specifying the proposed Timetable changes, the reasons for them and the likely impact on passengers;

**11.2.2** carry out the consultation in relation to such proposed changes using a reasonable range of communication channels (taking into account the scale of the proposed changes) and in a manner that can be reasonably expected to encourage responses from a broad range of affected Stakeholders;

**11.2.3** give consultees such time as is reasonable under all the circumstances to respond (it being agreed that it shall normally be reasonable to give at least twelve (12) weeks to respond in relation to major proposed Timetable changes);

**11.2.4** take due account of the responses of consultees;

**11.2.5** within six (6) weeks of the close of the consultation (or such longer period as the Secretary of State may agree, such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) publish a report containing a summary of the main issues raised by respondents (including quantitative analysis of the responses received), the reasoned response of the Franchisee to them and notification of how the Franchisee shall now seek to exercise relevant Timetable Development Rights in the context of its obligation to take due account of the results of the consultation;

**11.2.6** ensure that the published report is promptly provided to the Secretary of State and all respondents who submitted written responses to the consultation and published in a widely accessible form; and

**11.2.7** ensure that the relevant Timetable Development Rights to implement the proposed Timetable change are not exercised prior to the publication of the report and exercise such Timetable Development Rights in the manner indicated in the report.

**11.3** NOT USED.

## **12 Timetable Development Rights**

**12.1** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to amend and/or enter into such Access Agreements as may be necessary or desirable from time to time to obtain the timetable development rights that it requires to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and otherwise

comply with its obligations under the Franchise Agreement (including under paragraph 14 and paragraph 16 of this Schedule 1.1).

**12.2** Prior to exercising any Timetable Development Rights to secure a Timetable, the Franchisee shall make an informed estimate of Forecast Passenger Demand and in doing so shall make reasonable assumptions based on available evidence (making proper use of recognised railway industry systems and forecasting tools as these may develop over the Franchise Period) with the estimate being in such format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

**12.3** Subject to the remaining provisions of this paragraph 12, the Franchisee shall exercise its Timetable Development Rights so as to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1 in accordance with its obligations under paragraph 17 of this Schedule 1.1.

**12.4** Where the Franchisee proposes to exercise its Timetable Development Rights so that the Timetable in force after the relevant Passenger Change Date contains Significant Alterations to that in force prior to such Passenger Change Date, the Franchisee shall (without prejudice to its obligation to consult pursuant to paragraph 11) act reasonably with the intention of obtaining a Timetable which enables:

**12.4.1** paragraph 14.1.2; and

**12.4.2** paragraph 14.1.3,

of this Schedule 1.1 to be achieved in relation to each Passenger Service in the Timetable to the greatest extent reasonably practicable.

It is agreed that in acting reasonably the Franchisee shall take full and proper account of its informed estimate of the Forecast Passenger Demand made pursuant to paragraph 12.2 above.

**12.5** Unless the Secretary of State otherwise directs, the Franchisee shall, for the purposes of securing a Timetable that complies with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1, exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to object, to make representations and to withhold consent in respect of any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in relation to such agreement in respect of its Timetable Development Rights.

**12.6** If the Secretary of State does not consider that the Franchisee has taken sufficient steps under paragraph 12.5, the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to exercise its rights in such manner as the Secretary of State reasonably considers appropriate in the circumstances, including:

**12.6.1** disputing any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in respect of any Timetable Development Rights; and

**12.6.2** submitting such dispute to any relevant dispute resolution arrangements or procedures and appealing against any award or determination under such arrangements or procedures, including to the ORR.

**12.7** Subject to the Franchisee complying with its obligations under paragraph 12.5 above, it shall not be liable for any failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate



railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1, to the extent that such failure is caused by:

- 12.7.1 the Franchisee's Timetable Development Rights being inadequate to enable it to secure the requisite Train Slots, provided that the Franchisee has exercised and, unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, is continuing to exercise all reasonable endeavours to obtain the requisite Timetable Development Rights in accordance with paragraph 12.1;
- 12.7.2 Network Rail exercising its flexing rights from time to time under the Track Access Agreement or the Network Code in respect of such Train Slots;
- 12.7.3 Network Rail exercising its other rights from time to time under the Track Access Agreement or the Network Code; or
- 12.7.4 the exercise by the ORR of its powers pursuant to section 22C of the Act.

## 12.8 TDR Amendments

12.8.1 If and to the extent that the Franchisee is not able to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement as a result of it not being able to obtain the Timetable Development Rights that it requires for that purpose, the Secretary of State shall (subject to paragraphs 12.8.2 and 12.8.3) issue to the Franchisee amendments to the Train Service Requirement ("**TDR Amendment**"). The amendments to the Train Service Requirement contained in the TDR Amendment shall be those that the Secretary of State considers necessary for the purposes of enabling the Franchisee to secure a Timetable that is compliant with the Train Service Requirement by exercise of the Timetable Development Rights that the Franchisee does have.

12.8.2 The Secretary of State shall have an unfettered discretion as to whether or not to issue a TDR Amendment in circumstances where the Franchisee:

- (i) has failed to exercise all reasonable endeavours to obtain the requisite Timetable Development Rights in accordance with paragraph 12.1; and
- (ii) is not relieved by paragraph 12.7 from liability for such failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement.

12.8.3 The Franchisee shall not be relieved from its obligations to obtain a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate the Train Service Requirement by the issue of any TDR Amendment where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that such failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate the Train Service Requirement is partly due to the default of the Franchisee in not properly complying with its obligations under the Franchise Agreement in relation to securing timetable development rights. Accordingly any TDR Amendment may be drafted so that it does not relieve the Franchisee of the obligation to comply with the Train Service Requirement to the extent that the Secretary of State determines that the failure is due to such default of the Franchisee and the Franchisee may therefore be in contravention of the Franchise Agreement.

12.9 Following issue of any TDR Amendment pursuant to paragraph 12.8 the Franchisee shall, unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, continue to use all reasonable endeavours to amend and/or enter into such Access Agreements as may be necessary or



desirable from time to time to obtain the timetable development rights that it requires to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement without such TDR Amendment.

**12.10** Any TDR Amendment issued pursuant to paragraph 12.8 shall:

**12.10.1** unless otherwise required by the Secretary of State, cease to have effect on the date (if any) on which the first Timetable comes into effect after the Franchisee has obtained the Timetable Development Rights to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement without any such TDR Amendment; and

**12.10.2** amount to a Change but only to the extent that the Franchisee makes a saving as a consequence of such TDR Amendment and provided that if such TDR Amendment has been issued in consequence of Network Rail exercising the rights referred to in paragraphs 12.7.2 or 12.7.3 there shall be no Change.

**12.11** With effect from the date on which any TDR Amendment ceases to have effect in accordance with paragraph 12.10:

**12.11.1** the Train Service Requirement without such TDR Amendment shall thereafter apply; and

**12.11.2** where there has been a Change which is a Qualifying Change pursuant to paragraph 12.10.2 there shall be a further Change (which shall be deemed to be a Qualifying Change) to the extent necessary so as, with effect from such date, to disapply the effect of any such Qualifying Change pursuant to paragraph 12.10.2 to take into account the fact that the Franchisee will have ceased to make a saving.

### **13 Certification and Notification by Franchisee of Exercising Timetable Development Rights**

**13.1** Before exercising any Timetable Development Right to bid for Train Slots, the Franchisee shall provide a certificate addressed to the Secretary of State and signed by a statutory director of the Franchisee confirming that its proposed exercise of that Timetable Development Right will be compliant with its obligation specified in paragraph 12.3.

**13.2** If requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee agrees to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the Franchisee's certificate referred to in paragraph 13.1 is a true and accurate confirmation of compliance with its obligation specified in paragraph 12.3.

**13.3** The Franchisee shall:

**13.3.1** keep the Secretary of State fully informed of any discussions with Network Rail in relation to the matters referred to in this Schedule 1.1 which may, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, have a material impact on the ability of the Franchisee to deliver the Train Service Requirement or meet the requirements of paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1 through the Timetable and shall, if required to do so by the Secretary of State, supply copies of any related correspondence to the Secretary of State; and

**13.3.2** update any notification under this paragraph 13.3 and/or certification under paragraph 13.1 as soon as reasonably practicable, if at any time it elects or is required to modify any aspect of its exercise of its Timetable Development Rights

following Network Rail's proposed or actual rejection or modification of its bid or any part of it or for any other reason.

## **14 Planning to meet Target Passenger Demand**

### **14.1 Capacity and Timetable Planning**

**14.1.1** The Franchisee shall, in preparing its Timetable and Train Plan, unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees, provide for at least the capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement.

**14.1.2** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide for Passenger Carrying Capacity on each Passenger Service that meets as a minimum the Target Passenger Demand for that Passenger Service.

**14.1.3** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide passengers with a reasonable expectation of a seat:

- (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and
- (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service.

### **14.2 Allocation of rolling stock where Franchisee unable to meet the capacity requirements**

If at the time it prepares its Timetable and/or Train Plan, having exercised all reasonable endeavours, the Franchisee is unable to prepare a Timetable and/or Train Plan having the Passenger Carrying Capacity and/or meeting the reasonable expectations referred to in paragraphs 14.1.2 and 14.1.3, then the Timetable and/or the Train Plan shall specify the best allocation of Passenger Services and rolling stock vehicles to Passenger Services that is reasonably practicable with a view to:

**14.2.1** minimising, so far as is possible, the amount by which Target Passenger Demand exceeds the provision of Passenger Carrying Capacity on the affected Passenger Services;

**14.2.2** ensuring, so far as is possible, that such excess is not unduly concentrated on any particular Route or Passenger Service; and

**14.2.3** minimising, so far as is possible, the extent to which passengers are required to stand:

- (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and
- (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service.

### **14.3 Preparation of Timetable and Train Plan**

**14.3.1** Subject to paragraph 14.3.2, the Franchisee shall in preparing its Timetable and its Train Plan take full and proper account of its calculation of Forecast Passenger Demand and use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the Train Fleet is deployed in an optimal manner for the purposes of complying with its obligations under paragraphs 14.1 and 14.2 above.

**14.3.2** The Franchisee shall in preparing its Timetable and Train Plan deploy the entire Train Fleet (excluding reasonable planning requirements for the allocation of Hot Standbys or other rolling stock vehicles to be out of service due to maintenance requirements, Mandatory Modifications or any other reason agreed with the Secretary of State (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed)) in delivering the Passenger Services:

- (i) during each Peak; and
- (ii) at such times outside the Peak where such deployment of the entire Train Fleet is reasonably required to meet the Franchisee's obligations pursuant to paragraphs 14.1 and 14.2 above.

#### **14.4 Finalising the Train Plan**

**14.4.1** The Franchisee shall submit its proposed Train Plan to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable after Network Rail has issued the Timetable on which the Train Plan is to be based.

**14.4.2** The Franchisee shall submit its final Train Plan to the Secretary of State prior to the commencement of the Timetable to which it relates.

**14.4.3** The Train Plan shall be certified by a statutory director of the Franchisee as being true and accurate and including the minimum capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement.

**14.4.4** The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State in a timely manner such rolling stock diagrams as the Secretary of State may reasonably request from time to time.

### **15 Capacity Mitigation Proposal**

**15.1** Without prejudice to the obligation of the Franchisee to include in the Train Plan the capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement, if at any time the Franchisee is unable to prepare a Timetable and/or a Train Plan which meets the requirements of paragraph 14.1 (regardless of whether the Franchisee has used all reasonable endeavours to do so), the Secretary of State may serve a notice on the Franchisee requiring it to produce a proposal to a reasonable specification provided with the notice to remedy or mitigate such inability ("**Capacity Mitigation Proposal**").

**15.2** The Capacity Mitigation Proposal may, without limitation, include measures to be implemented by the Franchisee to:

**15.2.1** remedy the circumstances leading to the Franchisee being unable to prepare a Timetable and/or a Train Plan which meets the requirements of paragraph 14.1; and/or

**15.2.2** minimise, so far as is possible, the amount by which Target Passenger Demand exceeds the provision of Passenger Carrying Capacity on the affected Passenger Services;

**15.2.3** ensure, so far as is possible, that such excess is not unduly concentrated on any particular Route or Passenger Service; and

**15.2.4** minimise, so far as is possible, the extent to which passengers are required to stand:

- (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and

- (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Regional Peak Passenger Service or London Peak Passenger Service,

in all such cases (unless the Secretary of State specifies to the contrary) taking into account both Actual Passenger Demand and Forecast Passenger Demand.

**15.3** Where the Secretary of State reasonably believes that future circumstances may lead to the Franchisee being unable to prepare a Timetable and/or a Train Plan which meets the requirements of paragraph 14.1 at any time within the next four (4) years (including after the end of the Franchise Term) the Secretary of State shall have the right to serve notice on the Franchisee specifying those future circumstances and the date that the Franchisee should assume that they will arise from and requiring it to produce a Capacity Mitigation Proposal to remedy or mitigate such future circumstances on the basis of assumptions provided by the Secretary of State.

**15.4** The Capacity Mitigation Proposal shall (unless the Secretary of State specifies to the contrary) include the Franchisee's informed estimate of Forecast Passenger Demand, in such format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require. Without limitation such specification may require the Franchisee to present options to address relevant issues through:

**15.4.1** alterations to the Train Service Requirement;

**15.4.2** modification of rolling stock or the acquisition of additional or replacement rolling stock;

**15.4.3** alterations to Fares; and/or

**15.4.4** alterations or enhancements to any track, signalling, station, depot or other relevant railway infrastructure.

**15.5** The Capacity Mitigation Proposal shall provide a comprehensive analysis backed by relevant data and assumptions of:

**15.5.1** all cost and revenue and other financial implications of options contained within it including the potential implications for Franchise Payments;

**15.5.2** the implications (if any) for the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks; and

**15.5.3** the likely impact of options within it for existing and future passenger journeys and journey opportunities.

**15.6** The Franchisee shall meet with the Secretary of State to discuss the Capacity Mitigation Proposal and provide such further information or analysis and further iterations of the Capacity Mitigation Proposal as the Secretary of State shall reasonably require. If the Secretary of State decides that the Secretary of State wishes to implement any Capacity Mitigation Proposal (or any part thereof) this shall be by way of a Variation.

## **16 New or amended Train Service Requirement by the Secretary of State and Franchisee Informed Opinion**

**16.1** As and when required, whether for the purposes of considering alterations to the Train Service Requirement or otherwise, the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State:

- 16.1.1** its informed estimate of Forecast Passenger Demand, in such format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in order to assist the Secretary of State's decision making on future train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock vehicle investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding;
- 16.1.2** its informed opinion as to any changes to the current Train Service Requirement which:
- (i) should be made in order to deliver an optimal range of railway passenger services relative to Target Passenger Demand; and
  - (ii) could be implemented and operated without additional resources or an adjustment to the Franchise Payments;
- 16.1.3** its informed opinion as to any changes to the current Train Service Requirement which:
- (i) would deliver an optimal range of railway passenger services relative to Target Passenger Demand; and
  - (ii) could only be implemented and operated with additional resources and/or an adjustment to the Franchise Payments, together with an explanation as to:
    - (1) what additional resources and/or adjustments are necessary to make such changes; and
    - (2) why such additional resources and/or adjustments are necessary;
- 16.1.4** a draft of the Train Plan that the Franchisee considers that each set of proposed changes would require.
- 16.2** Prior to issuing any amended or new Train Service Requirement the Secretary of State shall provide to the Franchisee the Secretary of State's draft of any proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement stating the date upon which the Secretary of State proposes that such amended or new Train Service Requirement should take effect along with the Secretary of State's views as to the changes (if any) that the Secretary of State proposes to make to the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks.
- 16.3** On receipt of any such draft of a proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State (if so requested) its informed opinion:
- 16.3.1** with supporting reasons as to the impact of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement on the delivery of an optimal range of railway passenger services patterns relative to Target Passenger Demand and compliance with paragraph 14.1 of this Schedule 1.1;
  - 16.3.2** with supporting reasons as to the changes to resources and adjustment to Franchise Payments (if any) which would be required in consequence of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement;
  - 16.3.3** with supporting reasons as to changes (if any) to the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks;
  - 16.3.4** of the process to be required to implement the proposed amendment to the Train Service Requirement together with a plan for the implementation of the amendment to the Train Service Requirement (including all steps required to ensure that the

Franchisee can deliver a Timetable compliant with such amended or new Train Service Requirement) prepared in accordance with procedural arrangements specified by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17 of this Schedule 1.1; and

- 16.3.5 with supporting reasons of the likely impact of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement on existing and future passenger journeys and journey opportunities,

together with a draft of the Train Plan that it considers that the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement would require.

- 16.4 There may be iterations of drafts of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement and the Franchisee shall to the extent required by the Secretary of State have the obligations described in this paragraph 16 in respect of all such iterations.
- 16.5 Processes contained in this paragraph 16 shall take place in accordance with procedural arrangements and timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17.2 of this Schedule 1.1.
- 16.6 The Secretary of State may, in accordance with any stipulation made under paragraph 17.2, issue to the Franchisee any amended or new Train Service Requirement that the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to operate and notice of the amendments (if any) to the Benchmarks and/or Annual Benchmarks. Such amended or new Train Service Requirement will be issued prior to the commencement of the timetable development process of Network Rail for the Timetable in respect of which it is proposed to implement the change to Passenger Services arising from the amended or new Train Service Requirement.
- 16.7 In the absence of the Secretary of State issuing any amended or new Train Service Requirement the existing Train Service Requirement will remain in full force and effect. The degree of variation from any Train Service Requirement specified at the date of the Franchise Agreement was entered into in respect of any particular period and brought about by any amended or new Train Service Requirement issued pursuant to this paragraph 16 shall (where relevant) be of a magnitude no greater than that contemplated in the Invitation to Tender.
- 16.8 At the same time as the Secretary of State provides the Franchisee with a draft of any proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement pursuant to paragraph 16.1, the Secretary of State shall also provide to the Franchisee the Secretary of State's opinion of any amendments (if any) that are required to the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks.
- 16.9 The Secretary of State shall be permitted to carry out indicative Runs of the Financial Model for the purposes of considering the effects of the Secretary of State's proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement.

## **17 Procedural Arrangements and Timescales**

- 17.1 The Franchisee agrees that the effective operation of the provisions of this Schedule 1.1 (and of provisions addressing the same or similar matters in other franchise agreements) will require certain procedural arrangements and timescales to be followed to a common timescale by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee, Network Rail and others.

- 17.2** The Franchisee agrees that the Secretary of State may stipulate any reasonable procedural arrangements and timescales that are to be followed by the Secretary of State and the Franchisee for these purposes (which shall be consistent with any relevant standard railway industry processes for the development of the Timetable and the resultant Train Plan) and that the Secretary of State may amend any such stipulation from time to time.
- 17.3** The Secretary of State agrees to consult the Franchisee as far as reasonably practicable prior to stipulating or amending any such procedural arrangements and timescales in accordance with paragraph 17.2.
- 17.4** Any stipulation by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17.2:
- 17.4.1** shall be at the reasonable discretion of the Secretary of State;
  - 17.4.2** may contain procedural arrangements and timescales to be followed by the Franchisee in relation to other changes to the Franchise Services (pursuant to paragraph 1 of Schedule 9.3 (*Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes*)) in conjunction with the Train Service Requirement; and
  - 17.4.3** may provide for iterations of drafts of any amended or new Train Service Requirement, Train Plan or Timetable and for indicative Runs of the Financial Model in relation thereto.
- 17.5** Any procedural arrangements and timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17.2 shall have contractual effect between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State in accordance with the terms of such stipulation.

## **18 Obligations in relation to other Train Operators**

Subject to the terms of the Licences and any applicable Law, the Franchisee shall co-operate with other Train Operators in respect of their timetable development rights where such other Train Operators provide railway passenger services meeting common or displaced passenger demand, with a view to ensuring that:

- 18.1.1** the levels of overcrowding over the Routes or other relevant routes are minimised and not unduly concentrated on particular railway passenger services, Routes or other relevant routes;
- 18.1.2** the stopping patterns of such railway passenger services are placed at approximately evenly-spaced intervals throughout each relevant hour, taking into account the reasonable needs of passengers and the different types of railway passenger services provided by other Train Operators and the Franchisee; and
- 18.1.3** a reasonable pattern of railway passenger service is provided on the relevant route(s) to enable passengers to make Connections (particularly where low frequency railway passenger services are operated, first trains or last trains are involved, taking account of seasonal fluctuations in passenger demand and the time needed to make any such Connection).

## **19 Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases**

- 19.1** Where the Secretary of State considers it requisite for the purposes of better securing the delivery of railway passenger services under the Franchise Agreement, or any other franchise agreement, or for the better achievement by the Secretary of State of any of the



Secretary of State's duties, functions and powers in relation to railways, or the implementation of the Crossrail Programme and the operation of the Crossrail Services by the Crossrail Operator, the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee:

- 19.1.1 to exercise or refrain from exercising any or all of its rights under any Access Agreement or any Property Lease, or any related rights under such other agreements as the Secretary of State may specify; and/or
  - 19.1.2 subject to the consent of the counterparty thereto, to assign, novate or surrender its rights under any Access Agreement or Property Lease.
- 19.2** Except to the extent that the Secretary of State otherwise indicates from time to time, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State of its intention to enter into or amend any Access Agreement:
- 19.2.1 where the approval of the ORR is required under the Act, not less than ten (10) Weekdays before the submission to the ORR; and
  - 19.2.2 where no such approval is required, not less than ten (10) Weekdays prior to entering into such amendment or Access Agreement.
- 19.3** The Franchisee shall comply with its obligations under any Access Agreement or any Property Lease to which it is a party from time to time:
- 19.3.1 to notify or consult with the Secretary of State on any matter or proposal relating to that Access Agreement or Property Lease; and
  - 19.3.2 which are contingent on a particular course of action being taken by the Secretary of State or which are otherwise expressly included in that Access Agreement or Property Lease for the benefit of the Secretary of State.
- 19.4** If and to the extent that:
- 19.4.1 the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 19.1;
  - 19.4.2 the Franchisee's compliance with the Secretary of State's requirements pursuant to paragraph 19.1 would lead to the unavoidable consequence of the Franchisee contravening any other terms of the Franchise Agreement or the occurrence of an Event of Default; and
  - 19.4.3 the Franchisee duly complies with such requirements,
- no such contravention of the Franchise Agreement or Event of Default shall have occurred.

## **20 The Timetable and Network Rail's Working Timetable**

- 20.1 Any specification of Passenger Services in the Train Service Requirement shall (unless the Secretary of State states to the contrary) be regarded as relating to how those Passenger Services are to be provided for in the National Rail Timetable that Network Rail publishes for passengers.
- 20.2 The Franchisee shall ensure, for each period between two (2) consecutive Passenger Change Dates during the Franchise Term that the Timetable for such period is, in its reasonable opinion, not materially different from the relevant working timetable issued by Network Rail.



21 NOT USED.

## Schedule 1.2 Operating Obligations

### 1 Daily Operating Obligations

The Franchisee agrees to use all reasonable endeavours to operate on each day of the Franchise Term each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan for that Passenger Service. The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable if it has on any day of the Franchise Term failed to operate to a material extent each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan for that Passenger Service.

### 2 Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation

**2.1** If the Secretary of State considers that the Franchisee may have breached any of its obligations under any of paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) and/or paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2, the Secretary of State shall (in addition to the Secretary of State's right to obtain further information pursuant to paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 1.5 (*Information about Passengers*) and without prejudice to any other rights of the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement or otherwise) have the right, by serving notice on the Franchisee, to instigate an investigation of the Franchisee's compliance with its obligations under paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) and paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2, including any differences between the Forecast Passenger Demand and the Actual Passenger Demand and any unreasonable assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators made by the Franchisee ("**Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation**").

**2.2** Following the service of such a notice the Franchisee shall:

**2.2.1** provide such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of determining if the Franchisee has complied with its obligations under paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) and/or paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2 including evidence of:

- (i) the steps taken by the Franchisee to amend and/or enter into Access Agreements, exercise Timetable Development Rights and exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement to object, to make representations and to withhold consent in respect of any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in relation to such agreement in respect of its Timetable Development Rights;
- (ii) the extent to which the Franchisee has operated on each day of the relevant Reporting Period each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan for that Passenger Service;
- (iii) Forecast Passenger Demand and the way that it was calculated, including all evidence taken into account and assumptions used (including any

divergences from then existing industry modelling standards and the reasons for such divergences); and

- (iv) any assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators made by the Franchisee; and
- (v) the alternative solutions considered by the Franchisee before finalising the Timetable and Train Plan and the reasons why any such alternative solutions were not adopted; and

2.2.2 permit the Secretary of State to carry out an audit of the extent to which the Timetable and Train Plan enables the Franchisee to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) and fully co-operate with and provide all information needed to facilitate such audit.

### 2.3 Contravention of the Franchise Agreement

2.3.1 The Franchisee shall be in contravention of the Franchise Agreement if following the completion by the Secretary of State of the Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation the Secretary of State concludes that the Franchisee breached any of its obligations under any of paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) and/or paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2, including where the Franchisee:

- (i) failed to act reasonably in calculating Forecast Passenger Demand because it unreasonably assumed that there would be differences between Forecast Passenger Demand and Actual Passenger Demand at the time that the Forecast Passenger Demand calculation was made; or
- (ii) made unreasonable assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators serving some or all of the same stations as the Franchisee.

2.3.2 Where the Secretary of State does conclude pursuant to paragraph 2.3.1 that the Franchisee has breached any relevant obligation the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State the costs incurred by the Secretary of State in undertaking any Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation (including any audit pursuant to paragraph 2.2.2).

2.3.3 The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee if the Secretary of State concludes pursuant to paragraph 2.3.1 that the Franchisee is in contravention of the Franchise Agreement and the Secretary of State may at the Secretary of State's discretion, and entirely without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights consequent upon the relevant contravention, serve a Remedial Plan Notice pursuant to paragraph 2 of Schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*).

## 3 Timetable changes proposed by Network Rail

3.1 The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State promptly after being notified by Network Rail that Network Rail has decided or proposes to:

- 3.1.1 omit from the Plan of the Day Passenger Services that are included in the Timetable; or

- 3.1.2 reschedule in the Plan of the Day Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable.
- 3.2 To the extent that any such decision or proposal may, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Plan the Franchisee shall explain in such notification the way in which, in its reasonable opinion, such omission or rescheduling may materially prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Plan.
- 3.3 The Franchisee agrees to supply to the Secretary of State from time to time, in the format required by the Secretary of State, such details of any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services by Network Rail as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including details of the steps which the Franchisee proposes to take pursuant to paragraph 3.4.
- 3.4 Where the actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services is one which may, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State or the Franchisee, materially prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Plan, the Franchisee shall promptly notify the Secretary of State and the Franchisee agrees to co-operate with Network Rail in relation to such proposal, unless and until: (i) the Franchisee reasonably believes that such proposal is likely to be materially detrimental to the interests of passengers on railway passenger services in Great Britain; or (ii) the Secretary of State specifically instructs the Franchisee otherwise, in which case the Franchisee shall exercise its rights under the Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to:
- 3.4.1 object (including submitting its objection to any relevant dispute resolution arrangements or procedures and appealing against any award or determination under such arrangements or procedures, including to the ORR);
- 3.4.2 make representations; and
- 3.4.3 withhold consent,
- in respect of such actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services by Network Rail.
- 3.5 NOT USED.
- 3.6 NOT USED.
- 3.7 The provisions of this paragraph 3 shall apply to any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services that originates from any person other than Network Rail or the Secretary of State, as those provisions apply to Network Rail.

#### **4 Timetable changes proposed by the Franchisee**

- 4.1 The Franchisee agrees, subject to paragraph 4.4, not to propose to Network Rail:
- 4.1.1 the addition to the Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services which are not included in the Timetable;
- 4.1.2 the omission from the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services included in the Timetable; or

- 4.1.3 the rescheduling in the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable,  
without the Secretary of State's prior consent.
- 4.2 The Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State an amended Train Plan in respect of each Timetable change proposal.
- 4.3 Not used
- 4.4 Subject to paragraph 4.8, if, in the opinion of the Franchisee (acting reasonably), it would not be reasonably practicable to obtain the Secretary of State's consent prior to proposing any of the items referred to in paragraph 4.1.1, 4.1.2 or 4.1.3 to Network Rail, the Franchisee shall be entitled to propose such items to Network Rail without the Secretary of State's prior consent, provided that the Franchisee shall inform the Secretary of State of such proposals as soon as is reasonably practicable.
- 4.5 Subject to paragraph 4.8, the Franchisee shall ensure that any proposals to Network Rail submitted pursuant to paragraphs 4.1 or 4.4:
- 4.5.1 take full and proper account of the likely passenger demand (including a reasonable assessment of key workers) considering any known or anticipated impacts of COVID-19 (including without limitation any guidance published by Public Health England, and any Legislation, direction or instruction issued by any relevant local, governmental or other competent authority in the United Kingdom from time to time);
  - 4.5.2 utilise an appropriate number of Franchise Employees to support the likely passenger demand (as determined having taking into consideration the matters referred to in paragraph 4.5.1); and
  - 4.5.3 ensure that the Train Fleet is deployed in an optimal manner taking account of all relevant circumstances, including the latest available official guidance relating to social distancing.
- 4.6 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to co-operate with other Train Operators in respect of the Franchisee's proposals to Network Rail pursuant to paragraphs 4.1 and 4.4 or any emergency timetables proposed by other Train Operators to ensure that a reasonable pattern of railway passenger service is provided on the relevant route(s) to enable passengers to make Connections (particularly where low frequency railway passenger services are operated or first trains or last trains are involved, taking account of the likely fluctuations in passenger demand as a result of COVID-19 and the time needed to make any such Connection).
- 4.7 The Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to take into account the requirements of operators of rail freight services in respect of the Franchisee's proposals to Network Rail pursuant to paragraphs 4.1 and 4.4.
- 4.8 The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that the Secretary of State may, at any time, direct that all or any part of paragraphs 4.4 and/or 4.5 shall cease to apply. Any such direction by the Secretary of State shall have effect from such date as may be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State and, in such circumstances, the relevant parts of paragraph 4.4 and/or paragraph 4.5 and, where applicable, any references to the provisions of those provisions shall be deemed to be deleted.

#### **4A Special Events**

4A.1 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to operate adequate railway passenger services to or from any special events which are not already provided for in the Plan of the Day to meet the passenger demand that is reasonably likely to arise from such special events and to ensure that the railway passenger services provided have an appropriate amount of passenger carrying capacity. The Franchisee shall in meeting its obligations pursuant to this paragraph 4A.1:

4.8.1 consider amending the Plan of the Day through the omission, addition or rescheduling of Passenger Services; and

4.8.2 seek to optimise the effective delivery of the Passenger Services as a whole with the provision of appropriate capacity in the context of the additional demand consequent upon a relevant special event.

#### **5 Timetable changes and Train Plan changes requested by the Secretary of State**

5.1 The Franchisee agrees, as and when requested by the Secretary of State, to use all reasonable endeavours to seek and to obtain:

5.1.1 the addition to the Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services that are not included in the Timetable;

5.1.2 the omission from the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services that are included in the Timetable; and/or

5.1.3 the rescheduling in the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable.

5.2 The Secretary of State may reasonably request that the Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State an amendment to the Train Plan at any time.

#### **6 Obligations of the Franchisee in the event of disruption to railway passenger services**

6.1 In the event of any planned or unplanned disruption to railway passenger services operated on the Routes, or on other parts of the network which are reasonably local to the Routes, the Franchisee shall:

6.1.1 without prejudice to any other provision of this Schedule 1.2, notify the Secretary of State promptly where such disruption would materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable or deliver the Timetable in accordance with the Train Plan;

6.1.2 co-operate with Network Rail and other Train Operators to act in the overall interests of passengers using such railway passenger services, including using all reasonable endeavours to ensure that such disruption is not concentrated on a particular part of the network, except where such concentration either:

(i) would be in the overall interests of passengers using such Passenger Services or railway passenger services and would not result in disproportionate inconvenience to any group of passengers; or

- (ii) is reasonably necessary as a result of the cause or the location of the disruption; and

6.1.3 use all reasonable endeavours to provide or secure the provision of alternative transport arrangements in accordance with paragraph 6.2.

**6.2** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide or secure the provision of alternative transport arrangements to enable passengers affected by any disruption referred to in paragraph 6.1 to complete their intended journeys in accordance with this paragraph 6.2. In particular, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to:

6.2.1 ensure that such alternative transport arrangements are of reasonable quality, of a reasonably similar frequency to the Passenger Services included in the Timetable which such arrangements replace and reasonably fit for the purpose of the journey to be undertaken;

6.2.2 transport passengers to, or as near as reasonably practicable to, the end of their intended journey on such Passenger Services, having particular regard to the needs of any Disabled Persons and, where appropriate, making additional arrangements for such Disabled Persons to complete their intended journey;

6.2.3 provide adequate and prominent publicity of such alternative transport arrangements in advance, subject, in the case of unplanned disruption, to the Franchisee having sufficient notice of such disruption to enable it to provide such publicity;

6.2.4 provide sufficient alternative transport capacity for the reasonably foreseeable demand for the disrupted Passenger Services; and

6.2.5 ensure, if any planned disruption overruns, that there is a reasonable contingency arrangement for such alternative transport arrangements to continue for the duration of such overrun.

## **7 Obligation to use “all reasonable endeavours” under this Schedule 1.2**

**7.1** Any obligation in this Schedule 1.2 on the part of the Franchisee to use “**all reasonable endeavours**” shall (with the exception of paragraph 5 of this Schedule 1.2) include an obligation to:

7.1.1 ensure (so far as it is able to do so) the provision of the Passenger Services as set out in the Plan of the Day in accordance with the Train Plan in ordinary operating conditions;

7.1.2 take reasonable measures to avoid and/or reduce the impact of any disruption to the Franchise Services having regard to all the circumstances, including the reasonably foreseeable risks arising from the matters referred to in paragraph 7.2; and

7.1.3 actively manage the performance by Network Rail of its contractual relationship with the Franchisee (and provide appropriate management resources for this purpose) so as to secure the best performance reasonably obtainable from Network Rail by these means (including taking the steps referred to in paragraph 7.4), having regard to all the circumstances.

**7.2** The matters to which the Franchisee is to have regard pursuant to paragraph 7.1.2 shall include:

- 7.2.1 variations in weather and operating conditions (including Network Rail's infrastructure not being available for any reason), which may in either case include seasonal variations;
  - 7.2.2 default by, or restrictions imposed by, suppliers to the Franchisee;
  - 7.2.3 shortages of appropriately skilled or qualified Franchise Employees;
  - 7.2.4 disputes with Franchise Employees;
  - 7.2.5 the availability of the Train Fleet, having regard to maintenance requirements and any Mandatory Modifications;
  - 7.2.6 establishing reasonable Turnaround Time allowances for enabling or disabling (as appropriate) any part of a train, the rostering of any train crew and the servicing or cleaning of any rolling stock vehicles;
  - 7.2.7 failures of rolling stock vehicles in service and contingency arrangements (including Hot Standbys and rescue traction); and
  - 7.2.8 the impact, and emerging projections relating to the likely or potential impact, from time to time, of COVID-19 on the Franchisee's ability to provide the Passenger Services and/or the level of passenger demand or reasonably expected passenger demand for the Passenger Services.
- 7.3** For the purpose of taking measures in respect of any disruption to the Franchise Services in accordance with paragraph 7.1.2 and assessing the extent of any risk referred to in paragraph 7.1.2 and any such risk's reasonable foreseeability, regard shall be had both:
- 7.3.1 to the historical levels of incidence of disruption in the operation of:
    - (i) the Franchise Services;
    - (ii) similar services both by the Franchisee and/or its predecessors; and
    - (iii) other services of a type similar to the Franchise Services; and
  - 7.3.2 to potential changes in circumstances which may affect those levels.
- 7.4** The steps to which paragraph 7.1.3 refers include:
- 7.4.1 co-operating with Network Rail in the development, agreement and implementation of:
    - (i) a five (5)-year (rolling) Performance Strategy Plan; and
    - (ii) recovery plans in response to failures to achieve the performance levels specified in any Performance Strategy Plan;
  - 7.4.2 co-operating with Network Rail in adopting the principles set out in any Service Recovery Plans agreed between Network Rail and the Franchisee from time to time;
  - 7.4.3 undertaking regular reviews of:
    - (i) the most common and most detrimental causes of delay to the Passenger Services; and
    - (ii) the causes of the ten (10) delays to the Passenger Services with the longest duration (to the extent not already reviewed in accordance with paragraph 7.4.3(i)),



- which have occurred during a defined review period (e.g. weekly/four (4) weekly/quarterly) and which have been caused by the Franchisee, any other Train Operator, any other train operator licensed under the Act or Network Rail;
- 7.4.4** undertaking with Network Rail a review of the time taken to recover the Passenger Services following the occurrence of any of the events specified in paragraphs 7.4.3(i) and 7.4.3(ii) and seeking to identify and implement actions that reduce the delay effect of such events;
  - 7.4.5** setting up and holding regular and effective performance review meetings with Network Rail, evidenced by meeting minutes and the closure of actions agreed between the Parties;
  - 7.4.6** regularly monitoring (at least every Reporting Period) the delivery of local output commitments made by Network Rail in the Performance Strategy Plan and derived delivery plans and using reasonable endeavours to specify and develop such delivery plans;
  - 7.4.7** as and when required by Network Rail, co-operating with Network Rail in improving the accuracy of future timetables by providing access to trains (and data collected from train systems), other facilities and/or information;
  - 7.4.8** co-operating with Network Rail in other delay management initiatives and ongoing quarterly reviews of the Performance Strategy Plan;
  - 7.4.9** regularly reviewing (at least every Reporting Period) the imposition and clearance of temporary speed restrictions;
  - 7.4.10** regularly reviewing (at least every Reporting Period) the timely and efficient handover and hand-back of possessions; and
  - 7.4.11** where appropriate and where Network Rail fails to perform its obligations under the Track Access Agreement, enforcing the Franchisee's rights under the Track Access Agreement.
- 7.5** The Franchisee undertakes to reasonably co-operate with Network Rail with regard to Network Rail's management of the network, including in relation to the establishment of up to date Timetable Planning Rules.
- 7.6** To the extent not already provided for in the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure the performance by Network Rail of its obligations under any relevant agreement, including, where appropriate or where requested by the Secretary of State, enforcing its rights against Network Rail under any such agreement.
- 7.7** When and to the extent reasonably requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State evidence of the steps taken by the Franchisee in order to comply with its obligations under this paragraph 7.

**Schedule 1.3  
NOT USED**

## **Schedule 1.4 Passenger Facing Obligations**

### **1 Publishing the Timetable**

#### **1.1 The First Timetable**

The Franchisee shall publish on the Start Date:

##### **1.1.1 the Timetable:**

- (i) at each staffed Station, by making the relevant information available upon request and free of charge in one or more booklets or in other similar form;
- (ii) at each Station, by displaying the relevant information on information displays;
- (iii) at each Franchisee Access Station, by providing to the operator of each such station the departure and arrival times of the Passenger Services that call at each such station and the principal Connections to any other transport services relevant to each such station in the same forms as are specified in paragraphs 1.1.1(i) and 1.1.1(ii); and
- (iv) on the Franchisee's website; and

1.1.2 the timetables of other Train Operators at Stations, in accordance with paragraph 1.4.

#### **1.2 Timetable Revisions and Alterations**

Subject to paragraph 2A.2 of this Schedule 1.4, the Franchisee shall publish updates or replacements to the Timetable at the locations specified in paragraph 1.1 to the extent necessary to reflect any changes which come into effect on a Passenger Change Date:

- 1.2.1 in the case of booklets, at least four (4) weeks before the changes come into effect;
- 1.2.2 in the case of information displays, no later than the day before the changes come into effect;
- 1.2.3 in the case of information provided to the operators of Franchisee Access Stations, in sufficient time for such information to be published by such operators within the time limits provided for in this paragraph 1.2; and
- 1.2.4 in the case of the Franchisee's website, at least four (4) weeks before the changes come into effect.

#### **1.3 In addition, subject to paragraph 2A.2 of this Schedule 1.4, the Franchisee shall:**

- 1.3.1 subject to paragraph 1.4, display posters at each Station advising passengers of all Significant Alterations between any two (2) Passenger Change Dates to railway passenger services calling at that Station, no later than four (4) weeks in advance of the date on which the alterations come into effect; and
- 1.3.2 provide posters to the operators of Franchisee Access Stations, advising passengers of all Significant Alterations between any two (2) Passenger Change Dates to the Passenger Services which call at such Franchisee Access Stations, in sufficient time

for such information to be published by such operators within the time limit provided for in paragraph 1.3.1.

#### **1.4 Other Train Operators' Timetables**

Subject to paragraph 2A.2 of this Schedule 1.4, the Franchisee shall also comply with the requirements of paragraphs 1.1 to 1.3 inclusive by making available booklets and displaying information in information displays and otherwise displaying posters in respect of any other Train Operator's timetable at each Station where the railway passenger services of such other Train Operator are scheduled to call or in respect of which Connections to such other Train Operators railway passenger services can be made from that Station:

- 1.4.1 within the time limits specified in paragraphs 1.2 and 1.3 where and to the extent that such other Train Operator delivers to the Franchisee the relevant information and materials in sufficient time for the Franchisee to so publish; and
- 1.4.2 as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter where and to the extent that such other Train Operator delivers the relevant information and materials late to the Franchisee.

#### **1.5 National Rail Timetable and National Rail Enquiry Scheme**

The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure (including by virtue of any arrangements made from time to time between Network Rail and RSP) that the National Rail Timetable (or any replacement timetable), which Network Rail is responsible for publishing from time to time in relation to the Passenger Services, incorporates or is consistent with its Timetable from time to time.

- 1.6 Subject to paragraph 2A.2 of this Schedule 1.4, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure that information in relation to:

- 1.6.1 the Timetable; and
- 1.6.2 any Significant Alterations, to the Timetable to take effect between any two (2) Passenger Change Dates,

is available to passengers through the National Rail Enquiry Scheme (or any replacement) not less than four (4) weeks prior to coming into effect.

## **2 Communicating Late Timetable Changes**

- 2.1 Subject to paragraph 2A.2 of this Schedule 1.4, and save in respect of Significant Alterations, for which the provisions of paragraphs 1.3 and 1.6 shall apply, the Franchisee shall inform passengers, so far as possible on not less than seven (7) days' prior notice, if it will be unable to operate its trains in accordance with the Timetable. Such information shall include any revised Timetable or travelling arrangements.

- 2.2 Such information shall be provided by:

- 2.2.1 revising or adding to the information displays referred to in paragraph 1.1;
- 2.2.2 notifying the operators of the Franchisee Access Stations, as appropriate, including by providing such operators with revised posters; and
- 2.2.3 updating the Franchisee's website.

- 2.3** The Franchisee shall revise or add to the information displays at the Stations promptly on receipt of any equivalent information relating to the railway passenger services of other Train Operators whose services call at the Stations.
- 2.4** Where the Franchisee is unable to provide the information specified in paragraph 2.1 because the relevant revisions are made on an emergency basis, the Franchisee shall notify passengers and publish the relevant revisions by way of the means contemplated by paragraph 2.2 as soon as reasonably practicable.
- 2.5** The Franchisee shall ensure that, so far as reasonably practicable (including by communication of the relevant information to persons likely to receive enquiries), passengers making enquiries regarding the Passenger Services are informed of the revised Timetable and any revised travel arrangements of the Franchisee as far in advance as is reasonably practicable.

## **2A Communicating Emergency Timetables**

2A.1 Subject to paragraph 2A.3, the Franchisee shall publish:

**2.5.1** any amendments to the Timetable made pursuant to paragraphs 3, 4, 5 or 6 of Schedule 1.2 as soon as reasonably practicable:

- (i) at each Station, by displaying the relevant information on information displays;
- (ii) at each Franchisee Access Station, by providing to the operator of each such station the departure and arrival times of the Passenger Services that call at each such station and the principal Connections to any other transport services relevant to each such station in the same forms as are specified in paragraph (i);
- (iii) on the Franchisee's website;
- (iv) via the Franchisee's social media accounts (through which the Franchisee shall in any event publish any such amendments to the Timetable no later than two (2) hours following agreement of such amendments); and
- (v) via any other direct means of communication with passengers available to the Franchisee, including but not limited to email and/or text messaging services; and

**2.5.2** as far and as soon as is reasonably practicable, any emergency timetables of other Train Operator's where the railway passenger services of such other Train Operator are scheduled to call or in respect of which Connections to such other Train Operators railway passenger services can be made from that Station:

- (i) at each Station, by displaying the relevant information on information displays; and
- (ii) on the Franchisee's website.

2A.2 To the extent that this paragraph 2A requires the Franchisee to undertake activities that it would otherwise be obliged to perform pursuant to paragraphs 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 and 2, and there are any discrepancies between the timescales or other requirements relating to such activities between this paragraph 2A and paragraphs 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 or 2, the relevant

requirements of this paragraph 2A shall take precedence over those in paragraph 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 or 2 (as applicable).

- 2A.3 The Secretary of State may, at any time, direct that this paragraph 2A shall cease to apply and/or shall no longer take precedence over the timescales and/or the other requirements set out in paragraphs 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 or 2 above. Any such direction shall have effect from such date as may be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State and, in such circumstances, the entirety of this paragraph 2A and any references to the provisions of this paragraph 2A shall be deemed to be deleted.

### **3 Fares Selling Restrictions**

#### **3.1 Restrictions on Sales**

The Franchisee shall ensure that the purchaser of any Protected Fare or Commuter Fare:

- 3.1.1 shall be entitled, without further charge, to such rights of access and egress and other similar rights at the commencement and end of the relevant intended journey or journeys as may be reasonably necessary for such purchaser to travel on the Passenger Services;
- 3.1.2 shall not be required to incur any cost or take any action beyond the payment of an amount equal to the Price of such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) and, in relation to the issue of a Season Ticket Fare, the completion of an identity card as the Franchisee may reasonably require; and
- 3.1.3 shall not be required to pay an amount in respect of a seat reservation or other similar right which it may be compulsory for such purchaser to have in order to make a journey with such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) on a Passenger Service.

#### **3.2 The Franchisee shall procure that for any:**

- 3.2.1 Protected Return Fare, Single Fare which is a Commuter Fare or Return Fare which is a Commuter Fare, each such Fare shall be offered for sale wherever and whenever any other Fare (not being a Season Ticket Fare) for a journey between the same origin and destination stations is offered for sale; and
- 3.2.2 Protected Weekly Season Ticket or Season Ticket Fare which is a Commuter Fare, each such Fare shall be offered for sale at all staffed ticket offices at which Fares for a journey between the same origin and destination stations are sold and otherwise wherever and whenever any Season Ticket Fare is offered for sale,

in each case, either by the Franchisee or its agents (except persons acting in such capacity by virtue of having been appointed under Parts II to VI of Chapter 9 of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement or by being party to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement).

#### **3.3 Where the Franchisee sets a limit on the number of Protected Fares or Commuter Fares that may be used on any particular train, such limit shall be the greater of:**

- 3.3.1 the number of seats in Standard Class Accommodation on such train; and
- 3.3.2 the capacity of Standard Class Accommodation of the rolling stock vehicles comprising such train according to the tables set out in Appendix 1 to Schedule 1.6 (*The Rolling Stock*).

**3.4** The Franchisee shall not sell or offer to sell:**3.4.1** any Fare in respect of which the:

- (i) Prices are regulated under Schedule 5.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*), at prices that are greater than the Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Schedule 5.4 and Schedule 5.5; and
- (ii) Child Prices are regulated under paragraph 1.3 of Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*) at prices that are greater than fifty per cent (50%) of the Price of the relevant Fare;

**3.4.2** any Fare or Discount Card which has a validity of thirteen (13) or more months, except to the extent required to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement.**3.5 Agents of the Franchisee**

The Franchisee shall procure that all persons selling or offering to sell Fares on its behalf (whether under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, as its agents or otherwise):

**3.5.1** for Fares in respect of which the:

- (i) Prices are regulated under Schedule 5.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*), sell or offer to sell at prices no greater than the Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Schedule 5.4 and Schedule 5.5; and
- (ii) Child Prices are regulated under Schedule 5.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*), at prices that are greater than the Child Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Schedule 5.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*);

**3.5.2** for Fares in respect of which the Child Price has been set pursuant to paragraph 2.1 of Schedule 5.2 (*Franchisee's Obligation to Create Fares*), Child Prices are regulated under Schedule 5.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*), at prices that are greater than the Child Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Schedule 5.4 (*Regulation of Fares Basket Values*) and Schedule 5.5 (*Regulation of Individual Fares*); and**3.5.3** for all Fares:

- (i) do not sell or offer to sell any Fare or Discount Card with a validity of thirteen (13) or more months without the consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld); and
- (ii) comply with the provisions of paragraph 5 of Schedule 15.2 (*Last Twelve (12) or Thirteen (13) Months of Franchise Period and Other Conduct of Business Provisions*) to the extent they apply to the selling of Fares by the Franchisee.

### **3.6 Additional Ancillary Services**

The Franchisee shall, subject to this paragraph 3, be entitled to charge a purchaser of any Protected Fare or Commuter Fare for any additional services:

3.6.1 which are ancillary to the railway passenger service for which such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) was purchased (including charges in respect of car parking or catering services); and

3.6.2 which such purchaser is not obliged to purchase.

### **3.7 Sale of Fares for travel on Bank Holidays**

The Franchisee shall ensure that, for any Fare in respect of travel on a Bank Holiday, it only offers for sale (and shall procure that any person authorised to sell Fares on its behalf only offers for sale) such Fare that has the same rights and restrictions as a Fare which is valid for travel on a Saturday or a Sunday.

### **3.8 NOT USED**

## **4 Passenger's Charter**

### **4.1 Content**

The Franchisee shall:

4.1.1 publish its Passenger's Charter:

(i) in substantially the same form as the document in the agreed terms marked **PC**; and

(ii) in accordance with the requirements specified in paragraph 4.3;

4.1.2 review the need for changes to the Passenger's Charter at least every three (3) years, in consultation with the Passengers' Council, and shall submit a draft of any revisions to the Passenger's Charter that it wishes to propose, together with proof of such consultation, to the Secretary of State; and

4.1.3 state the date of publication clearly on the front cover of the Passenger's Charter.

4.2 The Franchisee may not change the Passenger's Charter without the Secretary of State's prior written consent (which is not to be unreasonably withheld).

### **4.3 Publishing the Passenger's Charter**

The Franchisee shall publicise its Passenger's Charter by:

4.3.1 providing copies to the Secretary of State and the Passengers' Council at least seven (7) days before it comes into effect;

4.3.2 providing copies to passengers, free of charge, at each staffed Station and in the case of any revision thereto, providing such copies at least seven (7) days before such revision comes into effect;

4.3.3 sending a copy, free of charge, to any person who requests it; and

4.3.4 displaying it on its website at all times and, in the case of any revision thereto, at least seven (7) days before such revision comes into effect,



save in respect of the Passenger's Charter which is effective on the Start Date, in which case the Franchisee shall publicise such Passenger's Charter in the manner contemplated by this paragraph 4.3 on and from the Start Date.

**4.4** The Franchisee shall also provide at each staffed Station the then current passenger's charter of any other Train Operator whose trains call there, subject to the provision of such passenger's charter to the Franchisee by such other Train Operator.

**4.5** The Franchisee shall provide copies of its Passenger's Charter to the operators of Franchisee Access Stations to enable such operators to publish it.

#### **4.6 Passenger's Charter Payments and Other Obligations**

The Franchisee shall:

**4.6.1** make all payments which passengers may reasonably expect to be made or provided from time to time under the terms of the Passenger's Charter (whether or not the Franchisee is legally obliged to do so);

**4.6.2** use all reasonable endeavours to make passengers aware of their right to claim compensation pursuant to the Passenger's Charter, including by:

- (i) displaying the relevant information on trains and at Stations;
- (ii) making appropriate announcements to passengers on trains and at Stations when the circumstances giving rise to that right occur;
- (iii) making compensation claim forms readily available to passengers at Stations and on the Franchisee's website; and
- (iv) any other reasonable means to reflect future advancements in technology proposed in writing either by the Franchisee or the Secretary of State and agreed by both Parties (acting reasonably); and

**4.6.3** use all reasonable endeavours:

- (i) to comply with any other obligations, statements and representations; and
  - (ii) to meet any other standards or targets of performance,
- as are comprised in its Passenger's Charter from time to time.

### **5 End to End Journeys and Cycles**

The Franchisee shall have due regard to the desirability of acting in a manner which facilitates end to end journeys that involve travel by all transport modes (including cycles). The Franchisee shall permit the carriage of folding cycles on all Passenger Services and non-folding cycles wherever reasonably practicable.

### **6 Statutory Notices**

If requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall publish and display at the Stations (and shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure the publication and display at Franchisee Access Stations of) such statutory notices as the Secretary of State may wish to publish from time to time in the exercise of the Secretary of State's functions (including in relation to Closures or any enforcement or penalty orders).

## **7 Train and Station Cleaning**

The Franchisee shall:

- 7.1** ensure that the nature and frequency of its planned and reactive programme for maintaining a reasonable standard of train presentation is such that all rolling stock used by the Franchisee in the provision of the Passenger Services is expected to be kept reasonably clean, appropriately stocked with consumables and free from minor defects;
- 7.2** use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that a reasonable standard of train presentation is maintained at all times in respect of all rolling stock used by the Franchisee in the provision of the Passenger Services;
- 7.3** ensure that the nature and frequency of its planned and reactive programme for maintaining a reasonable standard of Station condition and passenger environment is such that all of the Stations are expected to be clean, free of litter and graffiti, painted to a reasonable standard and free from minor defects; and
- 7.4** use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that all Stations are clean, free of litter and graffiti, painted to a reasonable standard and free from minor defects throughout the Franchise Term.

## **8 Publication of Performance Data**

- 8.1** The Franchisee shall in accordance with paragraph 8.2 of this Schedule 1.4 (and in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) publish on the Franchisee's website in relation to each Reporting Period during the Franchise Term the performance of the Franchisee by reference to:

- 8.1.1** Cancellations Figures;
- 8.1.2** PPM Figures;
- 8.1.3** CaSL Figures;
- 8.1.4** Right Time Figures;
- 8.1.5** Short Formation Figures;
- 8.1.6** Time to three (3) Minutes Figures;
- 8.1.7** Time to fifteen (15) Minutes Figures;
- 8.1.8** All Cancellations Figures; and
- 8.1.9** On Time Figures.

Such data shall be published by the Franchisee within ten (10) Weekdays of it becoming available to the Franchisee.

- 8.2** The Franchisee shall ensure that the data published by it pursuant to paragraph 8.1 shall in each case be shown:
  - 8.2.1** in relation to all Passenger Services;
  - 8.2.2** disaggregated by reference to Service Groups;
  - 8.2.3** on a periodic and/or on an average basis (as applicable); and

**8.2.4** include details of:

- (i) the number of Passenger Services operated by the Franchisee during each relevant Reporting Period which are late in arriving at their final scheduled destination in the Plan of the Day:
  - (A) by between thirty (30) minutes and fifty-nine (59) minutes;
  - (B) by between sixty (60) minutes and one hundred and nineteen (119) minutes; and
  - (C) by one hundred and twenty (120) minutes or more,
 and the percentage that each such category of delayed Passenger Services represents of the total number of Passenger Services scheduled to be provided in the Plan of the Day during such Reporting Period; and
- (ii) the number of Passenger Services formed with less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan during such Reporting Period and the percentage that this represents of all Passenger Services scheduled in the Train Plan to be operated in that Reporting Period.

**8.3** As part of each Customer Report (excluding the first (1st) Customer Report) to be provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 10.1 of Schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*), the Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require):

- 8.3.1** the mean average of each of the Cancellations Figures and the Short Formation Figures for the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report (or, in the case of the first (1st) Customer Report, since the Start Date);
- 8.3.2** the latest Time to three (3) Minutes Figures, Time to fifteen (15) Minutes Figures, All Cancellation Figures and On Time Figures for the last Reporting Period before publication of the relevant Customer Report;
- 8.3.3** from the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Customer Report onwards, a summary comparison of the statistics produced pursuant to paragraphs 8.3.1 and 8.3.2 as against the equivalent statistics provided for the same Reporting Period(s) in the previous Franchisee Year;
- 8.3.4** an update on the key activities undertaken by the Franchisee to improve its performance in relation to the measures referred to in paragraphs 8.3.1 and 8.3.2; and
- 8.3.5** a summary of the key activities planned to be undertaken by the Franchisee in the period in relation to which the next Customer Report will report to improve its performance in relation to the measures referred to in paragraphs 8.3.1 and 8.3.2.

## **9 Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data**

As part of each Customer Report to be provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 10.1 of Schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*), the Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report or, in the case of the first (1st) Customer Report, since the Start Date):

- 9.1.1 a summary of the data published by the ORR from time to time in relation to the handling of passenger complaints regarding the Franchisee's operation of the Passenger Services;
- 9.1.2 details of the number of faults notified to the Franchisee by passengers or station users through specified channels, including the website of the Franchisee (each a "**Notified Fault**") in each case identifying the total numbers of Notified Faults (by reference to whether such Notified Faults relate to rolling stock or stations), with such numbers further disaggregated by Service Group and broken down into relevant sub-categories of Notified Fault;
- 9.1.3 the mean average time taken by the Franchisee:
- (i) to resolve Notified Faults; and
  - (ii) where Notified Faults are not resolved within twenty (20) Weekdays, to provide feedback to applicable passengers and/or station users on its progress in seeking resolution of such Notified Faults; and
- 9.1.4 from the third (3rd) Customer Report onwards a summary comparison of:
- (i) the mean average number of Notified Faults notified to the Franchisee;
  - (ii) the mean average time taken by the Franchisee to resolve Notified Faults; and
  - (iii) the mean average time taken by the Franchisee, where Notified Faults have not been resolved within twenty (20) Weekdays to provide feedback to applicable passengers and/or station users on its progress in seeking resolution of such Notified Faults,

in each case in comparison with the relevant equivalent mean average statistics provided for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Franchisee Year.

## Schedule 1.5 Information about Passengers

### 1 Passenger Numbers Information

1.1 The Franchisee shall, as and when reasonably requested by the Secretary of State (and, for these purposes, it shall not be unreasonable to make such a request at least twice yearly), provide information to the Secretary of State on the extent of the use by passengers of the Passenger Services. Without limitation to the generality of the foregoing, in particular and when so requested, the Franchisee shall provide information relating to:

1.1.1 the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation:

- (i) on each Passenger Service;
- (ii) on each Route; and/or
- (iii) at any station or between any stations;

1.1.2 the times of the day, week or year at which passengers travel; and

1.1.3 the Actual Consist Data and the Scheduled Consist Data,

(the information referred to in the whole of this paragraph 1.1 being referred to together as “**Actual Passenger Demand**”).

1.2 The Franchisee shall obtain and collate the information specified in paragraph 1.1 by using the technology specified in paragraph 3. The Franchisee shall ensure that any technology for determining the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation that is fitted on the Train Fleet remains operational and in good working order from the date that it is fitted throughout the Franchise Period. The Franchisee shall also ensure that, if such technology is not fitted to one hundred per cent (100%) of the Train Fleet, the individual rolling stock vehicles that have been fitted with such technology shall be rotated around the Routes as necessary to satisfy such request for data as is made by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.1. The Secretary of State, acting reasonably, shall have the right to obtain such other information that the Franchisee has, ought properly to have or could reasonably obtain which may provide a more detailed or accurate view of the extent of use by passengers of the Passenger Services, including information about ingress and egress of passengers at ticket gates at Stations.

1.3 The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State all of the information generated by the technology specified in paragraph 3 and/or by using manual counts pursuant to paragraph 2, including the information specified in paragraph 1.1:

1.3.1 promptly following its collation and in any case within the following timescales:

- (i) in the case of data collected automatically by the Count Equipment and capable of being transmitted directly and automatically to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), within forty-eight (48) hours of its collation;
- (ii) in the case of data collected automatically by the Count Equipment but not capable of direct and automatic transmission to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), within one (1) calendar month of its collation; and

(iii) in the case of data collected by manual count, within one (1) calendar month of its collation;

1.3.2 using such systems, in such a format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, and in a format which is capable of being read by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate) (which shall include providing data which is not encrypted);

1.3.3 either by transmitting such data directly to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate) or by ensuring that the database provider can pull and transmit such data to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), as appropriate according to the nature of the Franchisee's Count Equipment from time to time or by providing such data to the Secretary of State by such other means as the Secretary of State notifies to the Franchisee from time to time; and

1.3.4 to the extent required by the Secretary of State, by providing the Secretary of State with direct remote access to the system used by the Franchisee to collect such information such that the Secretary of State is able to download such information,

and such information may be used by the Secretary of State for such purposes as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including for the purposes of assisting the Secretary of State's decision making on train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding.

1.4 The Franchisee shall use any flagging system contained within the RPC Database to highlight such events and occurrences as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify in writing from time to time.

1.5 NOT USED.

## **2 Manual Passenger Counts**

2.1 The Secretary of State shall have the right to require the Franchisee to carry out manual counts in relation to some or all of the Passenger Services at such times as may be required and in such manner (including as to levels of accuracy and the number of days) as may be specified from time to time by the Secretary of State, including if, exceptionally, the Franchisee is unable to comply with its obligations to provide data generated by the technology specified in paragraph 3.

2.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to audit such counts (whether by specimen checks at the time of such counts, verification of proper compliance with the manner approved by the Secretary of State or otherwise). In the event that such audit reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material error, or a reasonable likelihood of material error, in such counts, the Secretary of State may require the counts to be repeated or the results adjusted as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, and in these circumstances the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State the costs of any such audits.

## **3 Technology for Obtaining the Information referred to in paragraph 1.2**

3.1 The technology to be used for the purpose of paragraph 1.2 shall be infra-red sensors or camera based door sensors..

3.2 The technology to be used for the purposes of paragraph 1.2 shall be fitted to:

- 3.2.1 in the case of any brand new rolling stock which is admitted to the Train Fleet, one hundred per cent (100%) of it from the date that such rolling stock is properly admitted; and
  - 3.2.2 in the case of all other rolling stock, by 1 January 2020, to every vehicle comprised within no less than thirty-five per cent (35%) of such rolling stock units included in the Train Fleet from time to time in aggregate.
- 3.3 Without limiting the Secretary of State's rights under paragraph 1.1 of this Schedule 1.5, the technology specified in paragraph 3.1 above shall be used to provide counts in respect of, in any period of not less than twelve (12) weeks, at least two (2) of each of the Timetabled Services, and each count shall be carried out on each rolling stock unit comprising a particular train. The Franchisee may only use a method of extrapolation and use extrapolated data to provide a reliable estimate of a full train's count with the Secretary of State's prior written approval of the use of extrapolated data and the method of extrapolation (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
- 3.4 The Franchisee shall comply with its obligation under this paragraph 3 from the date(s) such rolling stock is incorporated into the Train Fleet.
- 3.5 The Parties acknowledge that the information supplied under paragraph 1.1, and any product of it created by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), may constitute Confidential Information to which Schedule 17 (*Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection*) applies.

#### **4 Customer Relationship Management (CRM) Data**

- 4.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that any CRM System is the property of the Franchisee or is licensed to the Franchisee on terms which have been approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) and that any CRM Data obtained by or on behalf of the Franchisee shall be:
  - 4.1.1 obtained on terms such that the Franchisee shall be the Data Controller of such data; and
  - 4.1.2 the property of the Franchisee.
- 4.2 In relation to any CRM Data obtained by or on behalf of the Franchisee, the Franchisee shall ensure or procure that at the same time as the Franchisee seeks consent to process such CRM Data, the consent of the Data Subject is also sought to such CRM Data being disclosed to any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State and processed by any Successor Operator for the same purposes as the Franchisee sought consent to process such CRM Data.
- 4.3 Any consent referred to in paragraph 4.2 shall be sought in such manner as shall from time to time be approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) and shall be on terms such as shall permit, in each case in compliance with Data Protection Legislation:
  - 4.3.1 the Franchisee to disclose such CRM Data to any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State; and
  - 4.3.2 any such Successor Operator to process such CRM Data in the manner contemplated by paragraph 4.2.



- 4.4** The Franchisee shall not be required to:
- 4.4.1** disclose, publish, share or otherwise provide or make available any Personal Data (including CRM Data) to any person (including a Successor Operator or any participant involved with the re-letting of the Franchise); or
  - 4.4.2** provide access to any CRM System,
- in each case pursuant to the terms of the Franchise Agreement (together, the “**CRM Obligations**”) if and to the extent that the Franchisee demonstrates to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that compliance with such CRM Obligations would put the Franchisee, acting as a Data Controller, in contravention of its duties and/or obligations under any Personal Data Legislation.

## **5 Yield Management Data**

- 5.1** The Franchisee shall ensure that any Yield Management Data and Yield Management System are the property of the Franchisee or are licensed to the Franchisee on terms which have been approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
- 5.2** NOT USED.
- 5.3** The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of the full names and registered office addresses of the entities which from time to time are hosting or storing any of the Yield Management Data, or which are otherwise holding within their possession or control any of the Yield Management Data, together with the location(s) in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held. In cases where the hosting, storage or holding of the Yield Management Data occurs in location(s) which are outside of the United Kingdom the notification shall include details of the relevant country(ies) or territory(ies).
- 5.4** The Franchisee hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State legitimately wishes to have knowledge of the locations in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held from time to time (whether inside or outside of the United Kingdom) given that all such information would be relevant in the event of any transfer of the Franchise to a Successor Operator.

## **6 NOT USED.**

## **7 Rail Passenger Counts Database**

- 7.1** Subject to compliance by the Franchisee with its obligations set out in this Schedule 1.5, the Secretary of State shall as soon as reasonably practicable following the Start Date:
- 7.1.1** use reasonable endeavours to set up and thereafter maintain the RPC Database;
  - 7.1.2** use reasonable endeavours to populate the RPC Database with such Actual Passenger Demand information as the Franchisee shall provide pursuant to the Franchisee’s obligations contained elsewhere in the Franchise Agreement and any other information that the Secretary of State shall desire; and
  - 7.1.3** use reasonable endeavours to provide the Franchisee with log-in details to the RPC Database in order to allow the Franchisee to access Actual Passenger Demand information that has been provided by the Franchisee, any Network Rail Data, any Third Party Data and to generate reports from the RPC Database.



**7.2** The RPC Database is not intended to be used as the sole basis for any business decision. The Secretary of State makes no representation as to the accuracy and/or completeness of:

**7.2.1** any data or information contained in the RPC Database;

**7.2.2** the raw Actual Passenger Demand information provided by the Franchisee or any Network Rail Data or any Third Party Data (as inputted to the RPC Database by whatever means); or

**7.2.3** any product of that Actual Passenger Demand information, Network Rail Data and/or Third Party Data.

### **7.3**

**7.3.1** The Secretary of State is not liable for:

(i) any inaccuracy, incompleteness or other error in Actual Passenger Demand information, Network Rail Data, Third Party Data or product of the above provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee, NR or a third party;

(ii) any failure of the RPC Database to achieve any particular business result for the Franchisee. For the avoidance of doubt, it is the responsibility of the Franchisee to decide the appropriateness of using the RPC Database to achieve its own business results;

(iii) any loss, destruction, corruption, degradation, inaccuracy or damage of or to the Actual Passenger Demand information following its submission to the RPC Database;

(iv) any loss or damage to the property or assets of the Franchisee (tangible or intangible) as a result of a contravention of paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5; or

(v) any indirect, special or consequential loss or damage.

**7.3.2** The Secretary of State's total liability for the duration of the Franchise Agreement in respect of a contravention of its obligations under paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5 for all other heads of loss or damage which can lawfully be limited shall be limited to the extent to which the Secretary of State is successful in recovering the equivalent loss from such entity to whom the Secretary of State subcontracts its obligations under paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5 (the "**Subcontractor**"), subject to the following provisions:

(i) if reasonably requested by the Franchisee within three (3) months of incurring such loss or damage, the Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to recover the equivalent losses from the Subcontractor;

(ii) it shall not be reasonable for the Franchisee to make a request pursuant to paragraph 7.3.2(i) if the value of the Franchisee's losses does not exceed **[REDACTED<sup>7</sup> x RPI**;

---

<sup>7</sup> 5 October 2016 (Date of Redactions Approval) – Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- (iii) prior to accounting to the Franchisee for any sums recovered from the Subcontractor pursuant to this paragraph 7.3.2, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to deduct and retain any reasonable costs and expenses incurred in pursuing such a claim which the Secretary of State does not successfully recover from the Subcontractor; and
- (iv) the Secretary of State shall be entitled to deduct from any sums recovered from the Subcontractor pursuant to this paragraph 7.3.2 such sum as the Secretary of State reasonably deems appropriate to take account of the Secretary of State's actual or potential liability to other train operating companies pursuant to equivalent arrangements with them, with a view to distributing any sums received from the Subcontractor fairly between the various operators.

**7.3.3** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate any losses incurred by the Franchisee as a result of a contravention by the Secretary of State of the Secretary of State's obligations contained in paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5.

**7.4** The Parties acknowledge that it is intended that the RPC Database will also contain actual passenger demand information relating to franchisees other than the Franchisee but a franchisee shall have access only to information relating to its own franchise (in the case of the Franchisee, via the log on details provided pursuant to paragraph 7.1.3). For the avoidance of doubt, the licence granted at paragraph 8.6 shall only permit the usage of the RPC Database, Derivative Output and Intellectual Property Rights related to the Actual Passenger Demand information supplied by the Franchisee.

**7.5** Without prejudice to Schedule 14.4 (*Designation of Franchise Assets*), paragraphs 2.1 and 3 of Schedule 15.1 (*Reletting Provisions*), Schedule 15.4 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*) or any other rights of the Secretary of State, the Franchisee agrees that, following the expiry or termination by whatever means of the Franchise Agreement and any Continuation Document, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to allow access to the Franchisee's Actual Passenger Demand information by way of granting access to that area of the RPC Database or otherwise to any future operator of the Passenger Services (whether or not in direct succession to the Franchisee) or to such part of the Actual Passenger Demand information as relates to the part of the franchise which is being taken over by such future operator.

## **8 Intellectual Property Rights and General Provisions**

**8.1** All Intellectual Property Rights in the RPC Database and Derivative Output shall at all times remain owned by the Secretary of State and to the extent that any rights in the RPC Database vest in the Franchisee by operation of law, the Franchisee hereby assigns such rights to the Secretary of State.

**8.2** Subject to Schedule 14.4 (*Designation of Franchise Assets*) and Schedule 15.4 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*), all Intellectual Property Rights in the Actual Passenger Demand information will at all times remain owned by the Franchisee and (subject as previously stated) to the extent that any rights in the Actual Passenger Demand information vest in the Secretary of State by operation of law, the Secretary of State hereby assigns such rights to the Franchisee.

**8.3** All Intellectual Property Rights in the Network Rail Data will at all times remain owned by the relevant NR entity and to the extent that any rights in the Network Rail Data vest in the

Secretary of State or the Franchisee by operation of law, the Secretary of State and/or the Franchisee (as applicable) will enter into a separate agreement with the relevant Network Rail entity to assign such rights to it.

**8.4** All Intellectual Property Rights in the Third Party Data will at all times remain owned by the third party from whom they have been obtained and to the extent that any rights in the Third Party Data vest in the Secretary of State or the Franchisee by operation of law, the Secretary of State and/or the Franchisee (as applicable) will enter into a separate agreement with the relevant Third Party to assign such rights to it.

**8.5** Subject to Schedule 14.4 (*Designation of Franchise Assets*) and Schedule 15.4 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*), each Party:

**8.5.1** acknowledges and agrees that it shall not acquire or claim any title to any of the other Party's Intellectual Property Rights (or those of the other Party's licensors) by virtue of the rights granted to it under this Agreement or through its use of such Intellectual Property Rights; and

**8.5.2** agrees that it will not, at any time, do, or omit to do, anything which is likely to prejudice the other Party's ownership (or the other Party's licensors' ownership) of such Intellectual Property Rights.

**8.6** The Secretary of State hereby grants, for the duration of the Franchise Period, the Franchisee a non-exclusive, non-transferable licence to use:

**8.6.1** the RPC Database;

**8.6.2** any Derivative Output; and

**8.6.3** all Intellectual Property Rights in the same,

in the United Kingdom for the purposes of accessing the Actual Passenger Demand information by using the functionality of the RPC Database.

**8.7** Without limiting any other rights the Secretary of State may have, the Franchisee hereby grants the Secretary of State a perpetual, non-terminable, non-exclusive licence (which is transferable and/or capable of being sub-licensed in the circumstances set out in this paragraph 8.7) to use the Actual Passenger Demand information and all Intellectual Property Rights in the same:

**8.7.1** by including them in the RPC Database; and/or

**8.7.2** by including them in the Preliminary Database; and/or

**8.7.3** whether included in the RPC Database, the Preliminary Database or in any other format for such purposes as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including for the purposes of assisting the Secretary of State's decision making on train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding; and/or

**8.7.4** to the extent permitted by the other provisions of the Franchise Agreement to share, disclose or publish the same and transfer and/or sub-licence and permit the use and sharing, disclosing or publishing for the purposes it is shared or disclosed; and/or

**8.7.5** to allow a future operator of the Passenger Services (whether or not in direct succession to the Franchisee) to view and access such Actual Passenger Demand

information (whether via the RPC Database or otherwise) as directly relates to the services that it will be running,

and such rights to use the Actual Passenger Demand information and all Intellectual Property Rights pursuant to this paragraph 8.7 shall continue following expiry or termination of this Agreement.

- 8.8** Paragraphs 7.2, 7.3, 8.1, 8.2 and 8.7 of this Schedule 1.5 shall continue in force after expiry or termination of the Franchise Agreement or any Continuation Document, together with any other provisions which expressly or impliedly continue in force after the expiry or termination of the Franchise Agreement or any Continuation Document.
- 8.9** The Parties intend that the provisions of The Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 will apply to allow the relevant NR entity to rely on and enforce against a third party the provisions of paragraph 8.3 of this Schedule 1.5.

## Schedule 1.6 The Rolling Stock

### 1 Purpose

- 1.1 This Schedule 1.6 records the rolling stock vehicles which shall be comprised in the Train Fleet from the Start Date (Original Rolling Stock shown in Table 1) and further additional rolling stock that will become part of the Train Fleet during the Franchise Term (Specified Additional Rolling Stock shown in Table 2 ) and key information in relation to it. It includes other requirements in relation to the Train Fleet, including in relation to rolling stock testing and commissioning and compliance with the requirements of the Secretary of State in relation to the specification of the Train Fleet, including in relation to baby changing facilities and Controlled Emission Toilets.

### 2 The Composition/Deployment of the Train Fleet

- 2.1 The Train Fleet consists of:

2.1.1 from the Start Date until the lease expiry dates referred to in Column 6 of Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 the rolling stock vehicles set out in Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 (“**Original Rolling Stock**”) with the Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit referred to in Column 3 and Column 4 of Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6;

2.1.2 from the dates set out in Column 6 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6, until the lease expiry dates referred to in Column 7 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 the rolling stock vehicles, including new build or cascaded rolling stock (“**Specified Additional Rolling Stock**”) set out in Table 2, in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 with the Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit referred to in Column 3 and Column 4 of Table 2;

2.1.3 NOT USED.

2.1.4 NOT USED.

- 2.2 NOT USED.

- 2.3 NOT USED.

- 2.4 The Passenger Carrying Capacity of any rolling stock vehicles shall be as set out in Tables 1 or 2 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 or as determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.4 of this Schedule 1.6 (as applicable).

- 2.5 The Franchisee shall procure that the rolling stock vehicles described in the Tables 1 or 2 or 3 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6, with the capacity and other characteristics referred to there, are available for deployment in the provision of the Passenger Services to the extent required by the Timetable and Train Plan during the periods referred to therein.

### 3 Changes to the Train Fleet

- 3.1 The Franchisee shall maintain the composition of the Train Fleet during the Franchise Period, unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees, such that there are no changes to the Train Fleet, including changes:

3.1.1 to the classes or types;

- 3.1.2 to the interior configurations; or
  - 3.1.3 which may reduce the journey time capabilities,  
of any rolling stock vehicles specified in the Train Fleet.
- 3.2 NOT USED.
- 3.3 During the Franchise Period, the Franchisee shall advise the Secretary of State of any rolling stock vehicles damaged beyond economic repair or likely to be unavailable for service for a period of three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods or more.
- 3.4 If any change is made to the Train Fleet in accordance with this Schedule 1.6, the Secretary of State may, after consulting the Franchisee, determine the Passenger Carrying Capacity of any rolling stock vehicles or class of rolling stock vehicles comprising the Train Fleet following such change. The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the Secretary of State's determination of any such Passenger Carrying Capacity.
- 3.5 The Secretary of State may request the Franchisee to:
  - 3.5.1 change the composition of the Train Fleet during the term of the ERMA;
  - 3.5.2 sub-let some of its Train Fleet to another Train Operator or to sub-lease a Train Fleet from another Train Operator;
  - 3.5.3 procure modifications to the Train Fleet and to manage any such modification programme, subject to payment of the Franchisee's reasonable costs by the Secretary of State or a relevant third party; and
  - 3.5.4 work in collaboration with the Secretary of State to identify and secure additional or replacement rolling stock vehicles during the term of the ERMA, in which case the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to set the specification for such rolling stock vehicles, subject to the Secretary of State's prior written consent.

#### **4 Rolling Stock Testing and Commissioning**

- 4.1 The Franchisee shall, to the extent reasonably requested by the Secretary of State and subject to payment of the Franchisee's reasonable costs by the relevant third party, co-operate with any third party which the Secretary of State may specify (including a Successor Operator, a rolling stock vehicle manufacturer or Network Rail or the Secretary of State) in connection with the testing and commissioning of new rolling stock vehicles or any new equipment to be fitted to rolling stock vehicles (whether such rolling stock vehicles are new or otherwise).
- 4.2 The co-operation referred to in paragraph 4.1 shall not unreasonably disrupt the provision and operation of the Franchise Services and may include:
  - 4.2.1 the movement of test trains within and around depots;
  - 4.2.2 making available suitably qualified personnel to operate test trains along the Routes and provide information on the Routes;
  - 4.2.3 making Train Slots available for such purposes;
  - 4.2.4 granting or procuring the grant of access to the third party and its representatives to any relevant facilities; and
  - 4.2.5 the delivery of rolling stock vehicles to specific locations.

## 5 Controlled Emission Toilets

- 5.1 By no later than 31 December 2019, the Franchisee shall ensure that each Rolling Stock Unit comprised in the Train Fleet used for the provision of the Passenger Services which has on board toilet facilities, and any new rolling stock vehicles procured by the Franchisee which are to be used for the provision of the Passenger Services shall be fitted with Controlled Emission Toilets.
- 5.2 The Franchisee shall ensure that the contents of the toilet retention tanks relating to each Controlled Emission Toilet fitted on rolling stock vehicles in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 5.1 are disposed of in a safe and hygienic manner at suitable facilities designed for these purposes including at Depots and stabling points.
- 5.3 Pending installation of the Controlled Emission Toilets, the Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to stop toilets fitted to existing rolling stock units emptying whilst the rolling stock unit is stationary within a station
- 5.4 NOT USED.

## 6 Baby Changing Facilities

For Rolling Stock Units that have on board toilet facilities, a baby changing facility shall be provided by the Franchisee which shall be compliant with the requirements of the PRM TSI.

## 7 Measurement of Traction Energy Usage

The Franchisee shall ensure that all rolling stock units that form part of the Train Fleet are able to measure and monitor fuel use as soon as reasonably practicable, and in the case of electric traction, enable the Franchisee to be a “**Metered Train Operator**” as defined by Network Rail’s Traction Electricity Rules.

**APPENDIX 1 TO SCHEDULE 1.6  
The Composition of the Train Fleet**

**1 Original Rolling Stock**

Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock)								
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3				Column 4	Column 5	Column 6
Class of vehicle / unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit				Total Wheel-chair(s) per unit	Owner / Lessor	Lease expiry date(s)
		Standard Class (Std)			First Class Seats			
		Seats	Standing	Total				
153	5 vehicles 5 x 1 cars	72	23	95	0	0	Porterbrook	31/08/2019
156	18 vehicles 9 x 2 cars	146	72	218	0	0	Porterbrook	30/12/2019
170	8 vehicles 4 x 2 cars	119	56	175	9	2	Porterbrook	01/10/2019
170	24 vehicles 8 x 3 cars	180	84	264	7	2	Porterbrook	01/10/2019
Intercity CI90, Mk3 & DVT (CI90;FO;FOD;TSOB; 5x TSO;DVT)	30 vehicles 3 x 8 car sets	475	307	782	86	2	Porterbrook	01/01/2020
Intercity CI90, Mk3 & DVT (CI90;FO;FOD;TSOB; 6 x TSO;DVT)	88 vehicles 8 x 9 car sets	528	341	869	86	2	Porterbrook	01/01/2020



Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock)								
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3				Column 4	Column 5	Column 6
Class of vehicle / unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit				Total Wheel-chair(s) per unit	Owner / Lessor	Lease expiry date(s)
		Standard Class (Std)			First Class Seats			
		Seats	Standing	Total				
Spare MK3 vehicles to support above service sets	30 vehicles 4 x CI90 4 x DVT 3 x FO 3 x FOD 2 x TSOB 14 x TSO						Porterbrook	31/12/2019
317 / 5	60 vehicles 15 x 4 cars	270	129	399	22	0	Angel	31/05/2020
317 / 6	96 vehicles 24 x 4 cars	234	116	350	24	0	Angel	31/12/2019
317/7 Demonstrator	4 vehicles 1 x 4 car	204	180	384	22	2	Angel	31/12/2019
317/ 8	24 vehicles 6 x 4 cars	243	120	363	20	0	Angel	31/12/2019
321/3	224 vehicles 56 x 4 cars	292	122	414	16	0	Eversholt	30/11/2019
321/4	112 vehicles 28 X 4 cars	283	122	405	12	0	Eversholt	30/11/2019
321 Renatus	40 vehicles 10 x 4 cars	265	116	381	16	2	Eversholt	31/12/2019

Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock)									
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3				Column 4	Column 5	Column 6	
Class of vehicle / unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit				Total Wheel-chair(s) per unit	Owner / Lessor	Lease expiry date(s)	
		Standard Class (Std)			First Class Seats				
		Seats	Standing	Total					
360	84 vehicles 21 x 4 cars	264	108	372	16	2	Angel	31/12/2020	
379	120 vehicles 30 x 4 cars	189	136	325	20	2	Macquarie	01/08/2020	

The Franchisee shall provide the cycle carrying capacity as specified in paragraph 21 of Part 1 to Schedule 6.2 (Committed Obligations).

--

2 Specified Additional Rolling Stock

Table 2 (Specified Additional Rolling Stock)									
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3				Column 4	Column 5	Column 6	Column 7
Class of vehicle / unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit				Total Wheel-chair(s) per unit	Owner/ Lessor	Lease start date(s)	Lease expiry date(s)
		Standard Class (Std)			First Class Seats				
		Seats	Stand-ing	Total					
317 / 3	48 vehicles 12 x 4 cars	270	129	399	22	0	Angel	01/01/2017	31/05/2020
321 / 4	24 vehicles 6 x 4 cars	283	122	405	12	0	Eversholt	16 /10 /2016	30/11/2019
IC 12	120 vehicles 10 x 12 cars	672	245	917	80	3	ROCK	Mar 2019 to Aug 2019	17/10/2026
Air12	120 vehicles 10 x 12 cars	748	381	1129	0	3	ROCK	Feb 2019 to Oct 2019	17/10/2026
OS 12	276 vehicles 23 x 12 cars	1125	356	1481	0	3	Angel	Sep 2019 to Aug 2020	17/10/2026
OS 6	534 vehicles 89 x 6 cars	527	184	711	0	2	Angel	Feb 19 to Jan 2020	17/10/2026
Bi-Mode (HYB4)	96 vehicles 24 x 4 car	224	111	335	0	2	ROCK	Jan 2019 to May 2019	17/10/2026

Table 2 (Specified Additional Rolling Stock)									
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3				Column 4	Column 5	Column 6	Column 7
Class of vehicle / unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit				Total Wheel-chair(s) per unit	Owner/ Lessor	Lease start date(s)	Lease expiry date(s)
		Standard Class (Std)			First Class Seats				
		Seats	Stand-ing	Total					
Bi-Mode (HYB3)	42 vehicles 14 x 3cars	166	61	227	0	2	ROCK	Jun 2019 to Oct 2019	17/10/2026

## **Schedule 1.7 Stations**

### **1 Station Asset Management**

#### **1.1** The Franchisee shall implement and comply with:

1.1.1 the Previous Franchisee's Station Asset Management Plan until the date of approval of the Station Asset Management Plan in accordance with paragraph 1.2.

1.1.2 From such date, the Station Asset Management Plan.

#### **1.2** By no later than the end of the first Franchisee Year (or such later date as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine), the Franchisee shall prepare and provide to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) the Station Asset Management Plan.

#### **1.3** Where the Secretary of State does not approve the draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it, the Franchisee shall make:

1.3.1 such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and

1.3.2 provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

#### **1.4** The Station Asset Management Plan shall:

1.4.1 include the information set out in paragraph 1.5; and

1.4.2 meet the requirements of paragraph 1.6,

and it shall be reasonable for the Secretary of State to not approve a plan which does not include such information or meet such requirements.

#### **1.5** The Franchisee shall ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan in relation to each Station shall include the following:

1.5.1 the details of all maintenance, repair and renewal activity undertaken by the Franchisee since the Start Date;

1.5.2 the details of any maintenance, repair and renewal activity which the Franchisee has not completed or not completed within the specified time frame set out in any Station Asset Management Plan (or the Previous Franchisee's Station Asset Management Plan, as the case may be) together with reasons;

1.5.3 the maintenance (including the Franchisee's approach to identifying and dealing with reactive maintenance), repair and renewal activity planned by the Franchisee including such activities the Franchisee plans to undertake in order to ensure that the condition and capability of Station Assets are maintained and comply with the Standard of Repair;

1.5.4 the details of the maintenance, repair and renewal activity undertaken since the Start Date or planned by Network Rail, any Local Authority, any Community Rail Partnership and any other relevant stakeholder, which the Franchisee is aware of;

- 1.5.5 the assumptions that the Franchisee has made about the current state and future degradation of assets at the Station at the Start Date or, if an asset becomes an asset at the Station on a later date, the assumptions of the Franchisee about the current state and future degradation of each relevant asset on the date that it becomes such an asset at the Station;
  - 1.5.6 the details of under and over provision of assets at the Station at the Start Date given current and projected future customer volumes and reasonable customer demands and planned enhancements or removals to accommodate changing customer volumes and reasonable customer demands;
  - 1.5.7 the plans for improving the environmental performance of Stations, including where appropriate, plans for:
    - (i) energy metering and data management, including measurement and verification plans for measures adopted;
    - (ii) lighting and lighting controls;
    - (iii) heating and heating controls;
    - (iv) auxiliary power uses;
    - (v) other energy efficiency measures;
    - (vi) renewable energy generation;
    - (vii) water efficiency measures;
    - (viii) waste reduction;
    - (ix) identification of opportunities for recycling or reuse of assets; and
    - (x) identification of opportunities for local sourcing of assets and asset materials;
  - 1.5.8 the plans to ensure that delivery of Station Services is resilient to periods of extreme weather and minimises disruption to passengers;
  - 1.5.9 the plans to ensure that maintenance, repair, renewal, enhancement and other building works to be carried out at such Stations is consistent with the Principles of Inclusive Design ; and
  - 1.5.10 the plans to ensure that activity at such Stations is consistent with the Network Rail Asset Management Policy.
- 1.6** In addition, the Franchisee shall ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan:
- 1.6.1 shall cover a period of no less than forty (40) years from the date that it is created or revised and updated in accordance with this Schedule 1.7, as if the Franchisee was to operate each of the Stations for such forty (40)-year period;
  - 1.6.2 fully reflects the principles and approach to asset management set out in the Station Asset Management Principles;
  - 1.6.3 includes an indicative volume and level of spend of funds to be deposited in the Station Condition Account for five (5) years following the date of the Station Asset Management Plan in relation to those planned activities described in accordance with paragraph 1.5; and

- 1.6.4 is developed in accordance, and complies, with guidance and policies (including the guidance documents known as “*Subject Specific Guidelines*” published by the Institute of Asset Management (or such appropriate replacement guidance) which are commensurate with those that would be referred to by a competent, skilled and experienced train operator using an asset management planning approach, in particular in respect of the balance of maintenance and renewal of each asset type.
- 1.7 Any amendments to the Station Asset Management Plan must be agreed by the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
- 1.8 The Franchisee shall ensure that all renewal, enhancement and other building works at Stations are implemented in accordance with the Principles of Inclusive Design. Updating the Station Asset Management Plan
- 1.8.1 By the date three (3) months prior to the end of the second (2nd) Franchisee Year and on each subsequent anniversary of such date the Franchisee shall have reviewed the Station Asset Management Plan and shall submit to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) a draft updated version of the Station Asset Management Plan.
- 1.8.2 The updated draft Station Asset Management Plan shall include and reflect the following:
- (i) a schedule of any revisions to the current Station Asset Management Plan and a brief summary of the rationale supporting any change for review and approval by the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) any changed and developing circumstances and the requirements of the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation;
  - (iii) where relevant, the outcomes of, and the Franchisee’s responses to the stakeholder consultation process described in paragraph 8; and
  - (iv) the information required in accordance with paragraphs 1.5 and 1.6 of this Schedule 1.7 save that the reference to the “**Start Date**” in paragraph 1.5.1 shall be read as the date on which the Station Asset Management Plan is reviewed and updated by the Franchisee in accordance with this paragraph 1.8 of this Schedule 1.7.
- 1.8.3 If:
- (i) the Secretary of State approves an updated draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 1.8.1, such document shall become the then current Station Asset Management Plan; or
  - (ii) the Secretary of State does not approve an updated draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 1.8.1, then the Franchisee shall make:
    - (1) such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and
    - (2) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

- 1.8.4 The Franchisee shall put in place such arrangements as are necessary (to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State) to ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan is (and continues to be maintained) in a format acceptable to the Secretary of State which is capable of being transferred to a Successor Operator as part of the Handover Package so that the Successor Operator is able to access, use and amend the Station Asset Management Plan using the same format.

## 1.9 Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation Certificate

- 1.9.1 The Franchisee shall:

- (i) ensure that it applies for and obtains the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation by no later than the end of the second (2nd) Franchisee Year;
- (ii) promptly upon receipt by the Franchisee, provide to the Secretary of State a certificate of accreditation issued by an organisation accredited by the United Kingdom Accreditation System (UKAS) which has been signed by a director of the Franchisee and which confirms that the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation has been obtained (the “**Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation Certificate**”); and
- (iii) maintain the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation from the date that it is required to be achieved in accordance with paragraph 1.9.1(i) for the remainder of the Franchise Period.

- 1.9.2 If the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation is at any time lost or the Franchisee fails to secure such then the Franchisee shall report that fact to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within ten (10) Weekdays of the Franchisee becoming aware of such fact.

- 1.9.3 From the date upon which the Franchisee notified the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.9.2 (or should have notified the Secretary of State having complied with the provisions of this Agreement), the Franchisee shall:

- (i) re-secure such accreditation as soon as reasonably practicable and in any case within three (3) months; and
- (ii) report to the Secretary of State every Reporting Period on the measures it is proposing to take, and is taking, to achieve such restoration of the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation.

- 1.9.4 Where the Franchisee fails to secure the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation pursuant to paragraph 1.9.3 within three (3) months of the date of such accreditation being lost or failed to be secured (as the case may be), such failure shall constitute a contravention of the Franchise Agreement and the Secretary of State may issue a Remedial Plan Notice pursuant to Schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*) and the provisions of Schedule 10 (*Remedies, Events of Default and Termination Events*) shall apply.

- 1.9.5 The Franchisee shall calculate the Station Stewardship Measure defined by NR/ARM/M17PR for each Station, providing validated scores for each Station to Network Rail or ORR on an annual basis at such time specified by the ORR and Network Rail, and assisting Network Rail and/or the ORR in the any future development of such measure.



## **2 Station Maintenance Obligations**

**2.1** Subject to paragraph 2.4, the Franchisee shall ensure that the Asset Remaining Life in relation to each of the Station Asset Groups specified in Column 1 of the Minimum Asset Remaining Life Table (on a basis averaging such Asset Remaining Life across all relevant assets from each of the Station Asset Groups at all Stations) is not less than the corresponding Minimum Asset Remaining Life specified in column 2 of the Minimum Asset Remaining Life Table (the “Standard of Repair”).

**2.2** Within thirty (30) days of the start of each Franchisee Year (other than the first Franchisee Year) the Franchisee shall deliver a written report based on the requirements of ORR Mandate AO/24 (as such may be updated or replaced from time to time) to the Secretary of State that complies with the following requirements:

- (a) it has been prepared by a reputable firm of surveyors who have carried out inspections of the Stations for the purposes of the preparation of the Station Stewardship Measure report no more than sixty (60) days prior to the end of the previous Franchisee Year;
- (b) it is addressed to the Secretary of State (but may also be addressed to other parties at the discretion of the Franchisee);
- (c) it contains a fair summary of the extent to which the Franchisee has complied with its obligations to achieve the Standard of Repair during the preceding twelve (12) months;
- (d) it contains the calculation of the Franchisee (as a percentage) of the average Asset Remaining Life of each Station Asset Group (in accordance with standard “NR/ARM/M17PR” or such other standard as may be notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State from time to time);
- (e) it identifies separately any Stations where a Station Asset has an asset life that is less than:
  - (i) 47.50% in relation to platforms;
  - (ii) 49.91% in relation to footbridges;
  - (iii) 45.99% in relation to canopies; and
  - (iv) 39.38% in relation to buildings at Stations;
- (f) it contains a copy of the Station Stewardship Measure report issued by the Franchisee to ORR and/or Network Rail; and
- (g) it contains such other details as may be specified in writing by the Secretary of State from time to time.

**2.3** It is agreed by the Secretary of State and the Franchisee that:

- (a) the methodology to be adopted by the Secretary of State for the purposes of monitoring the Franchisee’s compliance with its obligations in paragraph 2.1 shall, subject to paragraph 2.3(b), be as described in the document entitled NR/ARM/M17PR Network Rail Asset Reporting Manual - Procedures for the

Reporting of the Station Stewardship Measure" in the agreed terms marked "SCM" (the "**Stations Conditions Methodology**");

- (b) the Stations Conditions Methodology can be amended by the Secretary of State; and
  - (c) if, at any time during the Franchise Period, the Stations Conditions Methodology is amended as envisaged under paragraph 2.3(b) and the Secretary of State reasonably determines that it is appropriate to amend the Minimum Asset Remaining Life of any Station Assets to take account of the alteration to the Stations Conditions Methodology then the Secretary of State shall make such amendment to column 2 of the Minimum Asset Remaining Life Table as he reasonably considers appropriate to take account of the alterations to the Stations Conditions Methodology and such amendment shall be a Change.
- 2.4** Where the Franchisee fails to achieve the Minimum Asset Remaining Life in respect of any Station Asset Group and:
- (a) the Franchisee is not acting as a reasonable ISO 55001 accredited asset manager in relation to its management of a Station Asset Group; or
  - (b) the Asset Remaining Life of such Station Asset Group is more than three (3) percentage points lower than the Minimum Asset Remaining Life,
  - (h) such failure to achieve the Minimum Asset Remaining Life in respect of such Station Asset Group shall be treated as a contravention of the Franchise Agreement.
- 2.5** The Franchisee shall maintain appropriate, accurate, readily accessible and transferable information about the asset at the Stations, including their condition and function.
- 2.6** The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of monitoring the obligations of the Franchisee in relation to Stations.
- 2.7** At the Secretary of State's request, the Franchisee shall commission and pay for an independent audit of any information submitted to the Secretary of State under paragraph 2.6 and shall provide a copy of the audit report to the Secretary of State.

### **3 Station Condition Account**

- 3.1** The Franchisee will set up a separate, dedicated interest bearing bank account by the Start Date ("**Station Condition Account**") with a reputable bank and will notify the Secretary of State of the identity of such bank and the account number of the Station Condition Account.
- 3.2** The sums standing to the credit of the Station Condition Account (including accrued interest) (the "**Station Condition Fund**") shall be held on trust by the Franchisee on behalf of the Secretary of State on the terms of the Trust Deed for the purpose of discharging the entitlements of the Secretary of State and/or the Franchisee to payments from the Station Condition Account as and when they fall due in accordance with this paragraph 3 and the Station Condition Account will accordingly be set up so as to ensure that in the event of the insolvency of the Franchisee, monies standing to credit of the Station Condition Account are not at risk of being applied for the benefit of creditors or otherwise applied for a different purpose to that intended to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State. For the avoidance of doubt the obligations of the Franchisee in relation to the maintenance, repair and renewal of Stations whether pursuant to its obligations under this Agreement or

otherwise are in no way limited by reference to the availability of funds in the Station Condition Fund.

**3.3** Prior to the first date upon which any monies are required to be deposited in the Station Condition Account under this paragraph 3, the Franchisee will procure that the bank with whom the Station Condition Account is held undertakes to the Secretary of State (on terms satisfactory to the Secretary of State) that:

- (a) it acknowledges that the credit balance from time to time on the Station Condition Account does not belong solely to the Franchisee but is held on trust for the Secretary of State on the terms of the Trust Deed; and
- (b) such bank will not set-off sums standing to the credit of the Station Condition Account against any amount owing from the Franchisee or any other person to such bank.

**3.4** The Franchisee will operate the Station Condition Account in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph 3.

**3.5** On each Payment Date, the Franchisee shall pay the Station Condition Amount calculated as follows into the Station Condition Account:

$SCA = ((RPD/FYD) \times ASCA)$ <p>Where:</p>	
SCA	means the Station Condition Amount for such Reporting Period;
FYD	is equal to 365, or if February 29 falls during the Franchisee Year in which that Reporting Period falls, 366;
RPD	means the number of days in that Reporting Period; and
ASCA	<p>means the Annual Station Condition Amount for the Franchisee Year in which that Reporting Period falls determined as follows:</p> <p><math>(CA \times RPI)</math></p> <p>where:</p> <p>CA is the amount shown in the respect of the relevant Franchisee Year in column 2 of the table set out in Appendix 4 (Figures for Calculation of Annual Station Condition Amount) of this Schedule 1.7; and</p> <p>RPI has the meaning given to such term in Appendix 1 (Annual Franchise Payments) to Schedule 8.1 (Franchise Payments).</p>

**3.6** During the Franchise Period the Franchisee may withdraw the funds properly required to meet Actual Station Condition Expenditure that has properly fallen due for payment by the Franchisee as set out in the Station Asset Management Plan (or the Previous Franchisee’s Asset Management Plan, as the case may be) and in respect of which funds have not previously been withdrawn from the Station Condition Account without the consent of the Secretary of State provided that:

- (a) the Franchisee may not make any withdrawal from the Station Condition Account pursuant to this paragraph 3.6 that would reduce the Station Condition Fund to less than zero (0);
- (b) the Franchisee shall not make any withdrawal from the Station Condition Account pursuant to this paragraph 3.6 where the amount to be withdrawn is in relation to expenditure not provided or planned for under the Station Asset Management Plan (or the Previous Franchisee's Asset Management Plan, as the case may be) without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State;
- (c) where the Franchisee requires such consent pursuant to paragraph 3.6(b) it shall provide to the Secretary of State with its request for consent a written confirmation from a director of the Franchisee certifying that the information provided to the Secretary of State is, in all material respects, true, accurate, complete and not misleading and identifying the amount proposed to be withdrawn, the purpose of the proposed withdrawal from the Station Condition Account and that such proposed expenditure will be properly expended for satisfying the Standard of Repair in respect of the Stations; and
- (d) if requested by the Secretary of State the Franchisee agrees to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the written confirmation is true and accurate. It shall be a contravention of the Franchise Agreement if any such written confirmation is, in any material respect, found to be untrue, inaccurate and/or misleading.

**3.7** The Franchisee shall maintain records of the following:

- (a) a breakdown in relation to each Reporting Period of all Actual Station Condition Expenditure actually incurred in the Reporting Period together with such further details of each relevant item of expenditure as the Secretary of State may reasonably require;
- (b) a breakdown of all funds withdrawn from the Station Condition Account in each Reporting Period and the reason for that withdrawal;
- (i) and provide such records to the Secretary of State as may reasonably be requested from time to time together with:
- (c) written confirmation from a director of the Franchisee certifying that:
  - (i) the information provided to the Secretary of State is, in all material respects, true, accurate, complete and not misleading;
  - (ii) all Actual Station Condition Expenditure has been properly expended for satisfying the Standard of Repair in respect of the Stations; and
  - (iii) all withdrawals from the Station Condition Account made by the Franchisee were properly due to the Franchisee under paragraph 3.6 and have been applied for the purposes for which they were withdrawn.

**3.8** If requested by the Secretary of State the Franchisee agrees to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the written confirmation is a true and accurate confirmation of the Franchisee's compliance with its relevant obligations. It shall be a contravention of the Franchise Agreement if any such written confirmation is, in any material respect, found to be untrue, inaccurate and/or misleading.

- 3.9** In the event that the Secretary of State determines that any monies have been withdrawn from the Station Condition Account improperly he shall notify the Franchisee of the same specifying the relevant amount and requiring the Franchisee to repay the relevant amount into the Station Condition Account on or prior to such Weekday as the Secretary of State shall notify to the Franchisee.
- 3.10** On expiry or early termination of the Franchise Agreement, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to all sums then standing to the credit of the Station Condition Account. The Franchisee shall take all steps as may be necessary so as to authorise any sums then standing to the credit of the Station Condition Account to be paid to the Secretary of State to such account as the Secretary of State shall, at that time, notify to the Franchisee (which may be the account of a Successor Operator).
- 3.11** If:
- (a) any revised Station Asset Management Plan delivered by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraphs 1.6 or 1.7 provides for the bringing forward of any works intended to ensure that the Franchisee complies with its obligation in relation to the Standard of Repair;
  - (b) the additional cost incurred by the Franchisee in the Franchisee Year in which such costs are now to be incurred exceeds the amount that the Franchisee is required to pay into the Station Condition Account in such Franchisee Year by more than 10%; and
  - (c) the Franchisee can demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the effect of bringing forward such works is to achieve the Standard of Repair in a more efficient or cost effective manner or to otherwise achieve real and demonstrable whole rail industry or passenger benefits in either case in a way that has no adverse financial or other impacts on the Secretary of State,

1.2 then the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the reprofiling of the amounts specified in Appendix 4 (Figures for Calculation of Annual Station Condition Amount) to this Schedule 1.7 to reasonably take account of the bringing forward of the relevant works provided that the total of the amounts specified in Appendix 4 (Figures for Calculation of Annual Station Condition Amount) to this Schedule 1.7 shall not reduce overall as a result of such reprofiling.

#### **4 Uninsured Events and Latent Defects Liability**

- 4.1** If any Station and/or Equipment comprised in a Station is (1) damaged or destroyed due to the occurrence of an Uninsured Event (2) any Station and/or Equipment comprised in a Station is discovered to contain a Latent Defects Liability or (3) an Environmental Liability arises at a Station (each such event to be known as a "**Special Event**") then the Secretary of State may (at his absolute discretion) elect to:
- (a) require the Franchisee to undertake the works necessary to repair, reinstate or make good to his satisfaction such Station or Equipment which is the subject of a Special Event (the "Reinstatement Works"). Any such requirement by the Secretary of State to carry out Reinstatement Works shall be a Qualifying Change and in these circumstances:

- (i) notwithstanding the Qualifying Change, the Franchisee shall be liable for the first [REDACTED<sup>8</sup>] of any Reinstatement Costs (the "**Franchisee Excess Amount**") in respect of each Special Event that occurs at each Station provided that the Franchisee's maximum liability in relation to Reinstatement Costs shall not exceed [REDACTED<sup>9</sup>] in aggregate (the "**Franchisee Excess Amount Cap**") for the duration of the Franchise Period:
- (ii) where Reinstatement Works or the effects of the Special Event pending completion of the Reinstatement Works result in the Franchisee not being able to operate the Station (or part thereof) or provide Passenger Services which call at such Station, any such Qualifying Change pursuant to this paragraph 4.1 shall take account of any costs savings made by the Franchisee as a result of it not being able to provide Passenger Services which call at such Station or operate such Station (or part thereof) (including as a result of it not being required to maintain and repair such Station (or any part thereof) or any Equipment pending its repair, reinstatement or making good (the "**Cost Savings**"));
- (iii) the Franchisee shall: (1) consult on and agree with the Secretary of State the Reinstatement Works and the programme for the carrying out of the Reinstatement Works; and (2) carry out the Reinstatement Works in accordance with the programme as agreed (or on failing to agree, as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State) and the Franchise Agreement shall be amended to reflect the carrying out of such Reinstatement Works, if required; and
- (iv) the Franchisee shall ensure that the Reinstatement Cost is as low as reasonably practicable and shall use all reasonable endeavours to minimise any Environmental Liability;
- (b) require the Franchisee not to undertake the Reinstatement Works (including because he would require a Successor Operator to undertake such works) and in these circumstances a Qualifying Change shall occur;
- (c) require the Franchisee to use all reasonable endeavours to secure other sources of grant funding, such as Local Authority grants, for the purposes of carrying out the Reinstatement Works; and/or
- (d) seek to utilise other alternative funding mechanisms for the purposes of the release of the funds required for carrying out the Reinstatement Works by:
  - (i) requiring the Franchisee, to source the funds for carrying out such works through an adjustment to the Franchisee's Integrated Station Asset Management Plan; and/or
  - (ii) requiring the Franchisee not to undertake certain Committed Obligations at Stations such that any capital expenditure allocated to such Committed Obligations can be utilised by the Franchisee for the purposes of undertaking the Reinstatement Works. In these circumstances, a Qualifying Change shall occur and there shall be an amendment to the Franchise Agreement to reflect the fact that the Franchisee would no longer be required to carry out the affected Committed Obligations but would

<sup>8</sup> 5 October 2016 (Date of Redactions Approval) – Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>9</sup> 5 October 2016 (Date of Redactions Approval) – Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

instead be required to utilise any capital expenditure so released in undertaking the Reinstatement Works.

**4.2** If the Secretary of State elects that the funding of the Reinstatement Works should be undertaken using any of the alternative funding mechanisms set out in paragraph 4.1(d) then any such funding shall be on the basis that the Franchisee shall be liable for the Franchisee Excess Amount after the deduction of any Cost Savings and subject to the Franchisee Excess Amount Cap.

**4.3** In respect of the second and each subsequent Franchisee Year, the Franchisee Excess Amount and the Franchisee Excess Amount Cap shall be adjusted in accordance with the following formula:

1.3	FA x RPI	
1.4	Where:	
1.5	FA	1.6 is the Franchisee Excess Amount or the Franchisee Excess Amount Cap (as the case may be);
1.7	RPI	1.8 has the meaning given to it in Appendix 1 (Annual Franchise Payments) to Schedule 8.1 (Franchise Payments).

**5 Registration of Title**

The Franchisee shall as soon as reasonably practicable upon receipt of the relevant documentation from the Train Operator party to the Previous Franchise Agreement, lodge, procure the lodging of properly completed applications for the registration of Station Leases at HM Land Registry in accordance with the required time limits for making such applications. The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that registration of the title is obtained in relation to each Station as soon as reasonably practicable and to the highest standard reasonably obtainable.

**6 Grey Assets**

**6.1** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree with Network Rail by no later than two (2) years following the Start Date the allocation of responsibility under the relevant Station Leases for all the Grey Assets with Network Rail during the first eighteen (18) months following the Start Date.

**6.2** The Franchisee shall where it discovers any Grey Asset not covered by paragraph 6.1:

**6.2.1** consult with Network Rail and, where reasonably necessary and agreed by Network Rail, carry out a joint inspection of each such Grey Asset; and

**6.2.2** use all reasonable endeavours to agree with Network Rail the allocation of responsibility under the relevant Station Lease as soon as reasonably practicable.

**6.3** Where the Franchisee is unable to agree with Network Rail the proper allocation of responsibility under the relevant Station Lease in relation to any Grey Asset pursuant to paragraph 6.2.2 the Franchisee shall refer such matter to the dispute resolution process under the terms of the relevant Station Lease.



## **7 Station Social and Commercial Development Plan**

**7.1** From the Start Date, the Franchisee shall implement and comply with the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan .

**7.2** Any amendments to the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan must be agreed by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 7.

**7.3** The Franchisee shall revise the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan by no later than the end of the first Franchisee Year (and on each subsequent anniversary of this date) and shall submit it to the Secretary of State for review and approval.

**7.4** Subsequent updated versions of the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan shall

**7.4.1** incorporate a schedule of any revisions to the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan and a brief summary of the rationale supporting any change for review and approval by the Secretary of State;

(b) reflect changed and developing circumstances where relevant; and

(c) reflect the outcomes of, and the Franchisee's responses to, the stakeholder consultation process described in paragraph 9 .The Franchisee shall ensure that the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan shall be updated so that following each update it continues to cover at least a period of ten (10) years from the date of the update.

**7.5** If:

**7.5.1** the Secretary of State approves an updated draft Station Social and Commercial Development Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 7.3, such document shall become the then current Station Social and Commercial Development Plan; or

**7.5.2** the Secretary of State does not approve an updated draft Station Social and Commercial Development Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 7.3, then the Franchisee shall:

(i) make such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and

(ii) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require,

it being agreed that it will be unreasonable for the Secretary of State to make amendments that increase cost and risk to the Franchisee beyond parameters specified in the Record of Assumptions.

## **8 Consultations**

On or before the annual submission of the Station Asset Management Plan or the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan pursuant to the provisions of this Schedule 1.7, the Franchisee shall conduct consultations with relevant Stakeholders (including ACoRP, passengers, users of Stations, members of relevant local communities, Network Rail and the British Transport Police) in relation to the potential risks, opportunities and priorities for investment and operational efficiencies in relation to Stations. The Franchisee shall act reasonably in determining the scope of the specification of such consultations including the Stations to be considered.



**9 NOT USED.****10 Security at Stations**

**10.1** The Franchisee shall during the Franchise Period, monitor and record all reported and observed incidents of:

- (a) anti-social behaviour; and
- (b) criminality (including assaults on passengers and Franchise Employees, theft, criminal damage to railway property and graffiti vandalism),

which occur at Stations, and shall use all reasonable endeavours to address, minimise and avoid future instances of anti-social behaviour and criminality at Stations taking account of such data. The Franchisee may comply with its obligations to monitor and record incidents under this paragraph by providing copies of relevant information provided by the Franchisee to the British Transport Police where such information is relevant.

**10.2** The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State upon request such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require from time to time in respect of the Franchisee's compliance with the requirements of paragraph 11.1.

**10.3** The Franchisee shall maintain for the duration of the Franchise Period the Secure Stations Accreditation for the Stations already achieved by the Train Operator under the Previous Franchise Agreement as set out in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.7.

**10.4** In this paragraph 11:

- (c) **“Secure Stations Accreditation”** and means Stations which have achieved accreditation under the Secure Stations Scheme; and
- (d) **“Secure Stations Scheme”** means the certification scheme which is managed by the Department for Transport and British Transport Police and sets station design and management safety standards for crime reduction at railway stations.

**11 Information about Station Improvement Measures**

**11.1** The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Period maintain records in relation to the measures taken by it to improve the Station environment at each of the Stations, covering the areas and the information set out in Appendix 2 to this Schedule 1.7.

**11.2** The Franchisee shall, subject to paragraph 11.3, provide to the Secretary of State the information set out in Appendix 2 to this Schedule 1.7:

**11.2.1** within one (1) Reporting Period of each anniversary of the Start Date during the Franchise Period.

**11.3** When so requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall, within such reasonable period as the Secretary of State may specify, make such information available for review by the Secretary of State by reference to:

**11.3.1** such level of disaggregation as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State; and

**11.3.2** any particular Station as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State.

**11.4** The information to be provided by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State within the timescales stipulated are set out in Appendix 2 to this Schedule 1.7.

**12 Termination**

- 12.1** On the date that is the earlier of eighteen (18) months prior to the end of the Franchise Period or the date upon which a Termination Notice is served upon the Franchisee, the Secretary of State and the Franchisee shall agree (or the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine) the amendments to be made to the Statement of Condition (as such term is defined in the Station Lease) so as to ensure that the Statement of Condition accurately evidences the state of repair and condition of each Station as at that date.
- 12.2** At the end of the Franchise Period and, upon the assignment, transfer or novation of the Station Leases to a Successor Operator (whether pursuant to a Transfer Scheme or otherwise) the Franchisee shall ensure that the condition of each Station so transferred, assigned or novated is in a state of repair and condition which is no worse than that evidenced in the Statement of Condition as amended pursuant to paragraph 13.1.

**13 Station Investment**

- 13.1** On or before the date that is the earlier of the end of the Franchise Period or the date upon which a Termination Notice is served upon the Franchisee, the Secretary of State and the Franchisee shall agree (or the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine) the amendments to be made to the Statement of Condition (as such term is defined in the Station Lease) so as to ensure that the Statement of Condition accurately evidences the state of repair and condition of each Station as at that date.
- 13.2** In co-operating with the Secretary of State and/or any nominated third party in developing any such financing opportunities, the Franchisee shall:
- 13.2.1** attend meetings with the Secretary of State and/or such third party to discuss such opportunities;
  - 13.2.2** provide the Franchisee's opinion on those opportunities;
  - 13.2.3** review and comment on implementation timetables and programmes for any such opportunities; and
  - 13.2.4** where requested by the Secretary of State to do so use all reasonable endeavours to engage with Network Rail for the purposes of ascertaining the feasibility and costs of making amendments to any Station Leases in order to facilitate the implementation of those opportunities.

**14 Station Toilet Access**

The Franchisee shall ensure that access to toilet facilities at all Stations is provided free of charge.

**Appendix 1 to Schedule 1.7**  
**List of Stations with Secure Stations Accreditation**

**1. Secure Stations Accreditation**

Audley End	Saxmundham
Billericay	Shenfield
Bishops Stortford	Silver Street
Brimsdown	Southend Victoria
Broxbourne	St Margarets
Bury St Edmunds	Stansted Airport
Cambridge	Stansted Mountfitchet
Chelmsford	Stowmarket
Cheshunt	Tottenham Hale
Clacton-on-Sea	Waltham Cross
Colchester	Ware
Colchester Town	Wickford
Diss	Woodbridge
Elsenham	Ipswich
Ely	
Enfield Lock	
Halesworth	
Harlow Town	
Harwich International	
Hatfield Peverel	
Hertford East	
Ingatestone	
Kelvedon	
Lowestoft	
Manningtree	
Marks Tey	
Newport	
Northumberland Park	
Norwich	
Ponders End	
Rayleigh	

Rye House

Sawbridgeworth

**Appendix 2 to Schedule 1.7  
Information about Station Improvement Measures**

Information to be provided as per paragraph 11.2 but subject to paragraph 11.3.

Information to be provided			Information format													
Dashboard	Delivery element	Performance indicator	Output measure	Station level	Category level	Committed?	Targets for Year (Y)									
							Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y7	Y8	Y9	Y10
<b>Customer Experience</b>																
Pass Satisfaction	CEPM	Cleanliness of the station	% score	y	y	✓	88.6	89.2	89.8	90.4	91	91	91	91	91	91
		Upkeep & repair station	% score	y	y	✓	79.8	80.8	81.4	82.2	83	83	83	83	83	83
		NRPS	% score	y	y	✓	66.2	67.4	68.6	69.8	71	72.2	72.2	72.2	72.2	72.2
	Customer Feedback	Complaints	#	y	y	✓	baseline	-3%	-4%	-4%	-5%	-5%	-5%	-5%	-5%	-5%
<b>Station Facilities</b>																
Facilities &	Seating	Additional	#	y	y	✓		531	1062		1167					
	Waiting room	Upgrades/ new	#	y	y	✓		8	16							
	Shelters	Additional	#	y	y	✓		7	13		16					
	Toilets	Additional	#	y	y	✓		3	5		9					

Information to be provided			Information format													
Dashboard	Delivery element	Performance indicator	Output measure	Station level	Category level	Committed?	Targets for Year (Y)									
							Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y7	Y8	Y9	Y10
	AEA standards	Compliance	% stations	y	y	✓				100	100	100	100	100	100	100
	Major schemes	Progress against plan	5 schemes	y	y	✓	0	0	4	5	5	review	tba	tba	tba	tba
<b>Community</b>																
Community	Community uses	Number of occupations	Community tenants	n	y		Base-line	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba
	Community needs	CCIF spend pa	£m	n	y	✓					tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba
<b>Cost &amp; Revenue</b>																
Retail Activity	Station advertising	Total revenue	£k	y	y	✓	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]
	Retail & Catering	Total revenue	£m	y	y	✓	[REDACTED <sup>10</sup> ]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]
	Car parking	Additional spaces	#	y	y	✓			1081	1782						

<sup>10</sup> 5 October 2016 (Date of Redactions Approval) – Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

Information to be provided			Information format														
Dashboard	Delivery element	Performance indicator	Output measure	Station level	Category level	Committed?	Targets for Year (Y)										
							Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y7	Y8	Y9	Y10	
Cost of services	Car parking	ANPR systems	Total revenue	n	y	✓		[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]								
	Station presentation	Cleaning cost/pax	Total cost	y	y	✓	Baseline	0%	-5%	-5%	Review	tbc	tbc	tbc	tbc	tbc	
	Maintenance	Reactive callouts	Number	y	y	✓	Baseline	0%	-2%	-5%	Review	tbc					
	Renewals	Renewals	Total cost £ k/m	n	y	✓	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	
<b>Inclusivity &amp; Accessibility</b>																	
Levels of accessibility	Accessibility	% step-free platforms	% accessible	y	y		baseline	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	
		Secure cycle facilities	Capacity	y	y	✓		500	1000	1500	2000						
		Multimodal CIS	Number	y	y	✓		30									
	Security	Stations with HD CCTV	Number	y	y	✓		558	1253	1809							
		Reported crimes	No. crimes	y	y		baseline	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	tba	
	STPs	STPs full + lite	Number	y	y	✓	10	25	13	8							

Information to be provided			Information format													
Dashboard	Delivery element	Performance indicator	Output measure	Station level	Category level	Committed?	Targets for Year (Y)									
							Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y7	Y8	Y9	Y10
<b>Environmental</b>																
Environmental	Non traction energy	Total energy consumption	kwh	n	y	✓	baseline	-2%	-2%	-2%	-2%	-2%	-2%	-2%	-2%	-2%
	Waste	Waste recycled	% recycled	n	y	✓		90%	90%	90%	90%	90%	90%	90%	90%	90%



**Appendix 3 to Schedule 1.7  
Minimum Asset Remaining Life Table**

Column 1	Column 2
<b>Category of Station Asset Group</b>	<b>Minimum Asset Remaining Life (calculated as a percentage in accordance with NR/ARM/M17PR or such other standards as may be notified from time to time) as an average of asset remaining life across each Station Asset Group at all Stations (%)</b>
Platforms	47.50
Footbridges	49.91
Canopies	45.99
Buildings	39.38

**Appendix 4 to Schedule 1.7**  
**Figures for Calculation of Annual Station Condition Amount**

Column 1	Column 2
Year 1	[REDACTED <sup>11</sup> ]
Year 2	[REDACTED]
Year 3	[REDACTED]
Year 4	[REDACTED]
Year 5	[REDACTED]
Year 6	[REDACTED]
Year 7	[REDACTED]
Year 8	[REDACTED]
Year 9	[REDACTED]
Year 10	[REDACTED]

---

<sup>11</sup> 5 October 2016 (Date of Redactions Approval) – Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

**Appendix 2 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*)**

**Schedule 6.3**  
**ERMA Specific Obligations**

<b>Part 1</b> <i>(Cooperation)</i>	Paragraph 1: Development, Design and Implementation of Future Initiatives
	Paragraph 2: Incentive Regimes
	Paragraph 3: Improvement Initiatives
	Paragraph 4: One Team Stations Initiative
	Paragraph 5: Integrated Control Centres Initiative
	Paragraph 6: Co-operation
	Paragraph 7: Operational Planning
	Paragraph 8: Infrastructure Projects
	Paragraph 9: Sharing Data with Network Rail
	Paragraph 10: Sharing on-train data with Network Rail
	Paragraph 11: Station Accessibility Data Collection
	Paragraph 12: Compensation
	Paragraph 13: TD Academy
<b>Part 2</b> <i>(Pay and Industrial Relations and Dispute Handling)</i>	Paragraph 1: Notification of the Secretary of State
	Paragraph 2: Reward and People Principles
	Paragraph 3: Terms of Employment
	Paragraph 4: In-Scope Matters
	Paragraph 5: Industrial Action
	Paragraph 6: Reform
	Paragraph 7: Duties of the Franchisee
	Paragraph 8: Cooperation
	Paragraph 9: Disallowable Costs
	Paragraph 10: Workers

**PART 1 – CO-OPERATION****1. Development, Design and Implementation of Future Initiatives**

- 1.1 The Franchisee shall, at the request of the Secretary of State, fully and effectively co-operate with the Secretary of State in connection with the development, design, and implementation of future initiatives which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) are likely to:
- (a) improve outcomes for passengers on any or all parts of the railway network;
  - (b) improve cost-efficiency and/or reduce costs in relation to any or all parts of the railway network;
  - (c) generate additional revenue for all or part of the railway network; or
  - (d) deliver any other benefits or support any government policy objective,
- (each a “**Future Initiative**”).
- 1.2 The Secretary of State may from time to time (and at all times acting reasonably) issue a notice to the Franchisee specifying any assistance that the Secretary of State requires from the Franchisee in relation to the development, design and/or implementation of a Future Initiative and the date by when any deliverable required pursuant to this paragraph 1.2 must be undertaken or delivered (a “**Future Initiative Notice**” or “**FIN**”). Without limiting the foregoing, a Future Initiative Notice may, but shall not be required to, request the Franchisee to, among other things:
- (a) prepare and submit to the Secretary of State a proposal or proposals in relation to achieving any of the outcomes described in paragraphs 1.1(a) to 1.1(d) of this part 1 of this Schedule 6.3;
  - (b) prepare and submit to the Secretary of State an implementation plan and cost and revenue forecasts in relation to the relevant Future Initiative;
  - (c) prepare and submit to the Secretary of State any relevant data, reports, feasibility studies, business cases or other information that is held by the Franchisee or which the Franchisee can reasonably be expected to obtain (including any such documents or information prepared or procured pursuant to paragraph 1.2(d) of this part 1 of this Schedule 6.3);
  - (d) identify, develop, design, assess and/or advise on options or proposals for delivering specified outputs or outcomes in connection with a Future Initiative, including undertaking or commissioning feasibility studies; developing implementation plans; analysing financial, operational, practical and other impacts and risks; developing business cases; reviewing and commenting on documents; and participating in meetings or other discussions; and
  - (e) collaborate and co-operate with the Secretary of State, Network Rail, other Train Operators, industry bodies and other relevant third parties to undertake any of the above activities jointly.
- 1.3 The Secretary of State may (acting reasonably) issue to the Franchisee:
- (a) any number of FINs in relation to a Future Initiative; and
  - (b) FINs in relation of any number of Future Initiatives at any given time.
- 1.4 The Secretary of State may at any time, by proposing a Variation pursuant to paragraph 1.1(a)

of Schedule 9.3 (*Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes*), require the Franchisee to develop, design and/or implement any changes to the Franchise Services or any provision of the Franchise Agreement in connection with a Future Initiative.

- 1.5 In consultation with the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall assign a Franchise Employee with appropriate seniority to oversee and facilitate the Franchisee's compliance with its obligations pursuant to this paragraph 1 (a "Franchisee FI Contact"). The Franchisee shall confirm the identity of such Franchisee FI Contact to the Secretary of State by no later than as soon as reasonably practicable after the ERMA Start Date, and in any event by 16 October 2020.
- 1.6 The Franchisee FI Contact shall act as the Franchisee's primary point of contact with the Secretary of State in relation to all matters contemplated by this paragraph 1.
- 1.7 The Franchisee shall procure that the Franchisee FI Contact shall be supported from time to time by such other Franchisee Employees as shall be reasonably required to ensure the Franchisee's compliance with this paragraph 1.
- 1.8 This paragraph 1 is subject to the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to clause 7 (*Additional Services*) of the ERMA.

## 2. Incentive Regimes

- 2.1 The Franchisee shall, as required by the Secretary of State, fully and effectively co-operate with the Secretary of State to design, develop and (as applicable) implement and provide to the Secretary of State such data as the Secretary of State may require in relation to potential new incentive regimes (which may be used in future contracts with Train Operators and/or may be introduced into the Franchise Agreement by means of a Variation, provided that no such new incentive regime may be introduced into the calculation of the Performance Based Fee pursuant to Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) without the prior written agreement of the Parties), including designing:
  - (a) new models for assessing customer satisfaction and sentiment;
  - (b) new measures of Operational Performance;
  - (c) alternative cost or other financial incentive mechanisms;
  - (d) a new regime for assessing service quality standards delivered by the Franchisee; and/or
  - (e) a new regime for assessing the Franchisee's performance in relation to deterring and preventing ticketless travel.
- 2.2 The Franchisee's obligations pursuant to paragraph above may include:
  - (a) developing, reviewing and/or commenting on proposals in relation to such new incentive regimes;
  - (b) providing advice on the feasibility, costs and other implications of any such proposals made by the Secretary of State;
  - (c) attending meetings to discuss such proposals and any related matters; and
  - (d) supporting the Secretary of State in preparing to implement such new incentive mechanisms, including by collecting and providing relevant data to the Secretary of State in accordance with any requirements specified by the Secretary of State from time to time.

### 3. Improvement Initiatives

#### 3.1 In this paragraph 3:

**“Franchisee Initiatives”** means any Improvement Initiatives which are identified by the Franchisee and which relate specifically to the Franchise Services.

**“Further Industry Initiatives”** means any Improvement Initiatives (other than Specified Industry Initiatives) which are intended to secure improvements on a railway industry wide basis.

**“Improvement Initiatives”** means any measures or initiatives which may apply to any aspect of the railway industry which are intended to secure improvements in relation to passenger outcomes, cost-efficiency and/or environmental outcomes or otherwise support the achievement of government policy objectives, including any Franchisee Initiatives, Specified Industry Initiatives and Further Industry Initiatives.

**“Specified Industry Initiatives”** means such Improvement Initiatives which are intended to secure improvements on a railway industry wide basis as the Secretary of State and/ or Network Rail may, from time to time, notify the Franchisee, which may include (but shall not be limited to) measures or initiatives in relation to:

- (a) improving level crossing safety and risk mitigation;
- (b) prevention of suicide, trespass and vandalism on the railway;
- (c) improving track worker safety;
- (d) promoting decarbonisation and other environmental improvements;
- (e) improving passenger information including during perturbation;
- (f) the reopening of disused or freight-only railway routes to passenger services;
- (g) Network Rail’s long-term strategy and planning activities; and
- (h) reforming the manner in which train service requirements are specified by funders and procurers;

#### 3.2 Subject to paragraph 3.4, the Franchisee shall:

- (a) proactively identify, develop, assess the business case for and implement Franchisee Initiatives;
- (b) co-operate and collaborate with, any or all of, the Secretary of State, Network Rail, Train Operators, freight operators, railway industry bodies and any other relevant third parties (as may be applicable), to jointly plan, develop and fully participate in the implementation of Specified Industry Initiatives; and
- (c) proactively co-operate and collaborate with, any or all of, the Secretary of State, Network Rail, Train Operators, freight operators, railway industry bodies and any other relevant third parties (as may be applicable), to jointly identify, plan, develop and fully participate in the implementation of Further Industry Initiatives.

#### 3.3 For the purposes of paragraphs 3.2(b) and 3.2(c), the Franchisee’s obligation to co-operate and collaborate may require the Franchisee to use all reasonable endeavours to support the planning, development and implementation of the relevant Improvement Initiative in a manner satisfactory to the Secretary of State. In particular, this may require the Franchisee to:

- (a) provide advice to, or otherwise share its expertise with, the Secretary of State or Network Rail, including inputting into the business case for the relevant Improvement Initiative;
- (b) collect, analyse, share and/or report on certain information and data as may be necessary to inform the relevant Improvement Initiative;
- (c) attend and participate in relevant meetings or workshops in relation to the relevant Improvement Initiative;
- (d) implement such actions as may be agreed with relevant stakeholders in respect of the relevant Improvement Initiative, unless such actions cannot reasonably be expected to be implemented by the Franchisee taking account of the resources available to it and what could reasonably be expected of a competent and efficient operator; and
- (e) collaborate with, and respond to requests from, relevant stakeholders in respect of the relevant Improvement Initiative, unless such collaboration or responses (as the case may be) cannot reasonably be expected of the Franchisee taking account of the resources available to it and what could reasonably be expected of a competent and efficient operator.

3.4 Notwithstanding any other provision of this paragraph 3, if the Franchisee reasonably considers that pursuing the implementation of any Improvement Initiative or otherwise actioning any requests in connection with the planning, development or implementation of any Improvement Initiative would, or is reasonably likely to, result in:

- (a) it incurring additional costs, over and above those a Good and Efficient Operator would incur; or
- (b) in the case of Specified Industry Initiatives or Further Industry Initiatives, it being required to increase its staffing resources,

it shall notify the Secretary of State of the same and shall not proceed unless (i) the Secretary of State so directs or gives consent for it to do so or (ii) such additional staffing resources or costs were contemplated when the Secretary of State agreed or reasonably determined the Franchisee's most recent business plan and cost budget in accordance with the terms of Schedule 8.1A, and Schedule 11.2. If the Secretary of State directs or gives consent in relation to an Improvement Initiative pursuant to this paragraph 3.4, the Franchisee shall plan, develop or implement (as applicable) such Improvement Initiative in accordance with the Secretary of State's instructions.

3.5 Any notice issued pursuant to paragraph 3.4 shall include:

- (a) details of the proposed Improvement Initiative;
- (b) the Franchisee's assessment of the wider benefits for passengers, the wider economy, the environment and others;
- (c) the Franchisee's assessment of any financial or other benefits to Network Rail or other industry parties; and
- (d) the Franchisee's reasonable estimate of the associated cost or staffing requirements (as applicable).

#### 4. **One Team Stations Initiative**

4.1 In this paragraph 4:



**“NR Managed Stations”** means each station which is served by Passenger Services and where Network Rail is the Station Facility Owner.

**“One Team Stations Implementation Plan”** means a detailed plan jointly produced between Network Rail and the Franchisee setting out how and when they will implement the One Team Stations Initiative.

**“One Team Stations Initiative”** means measures and initiatives to promote a ‘one team’ culture and approach between Network Rail and the Franchisee through collaborative working, unified policies and organisational delivery models such that customers are not able to distinguish between Network Rail and Franchisee employees at NR Managed Stations, resulting in improved passenger and cost efficiency outcomes.

- 4.2 During the Franchise Term, the Franchisee shall, including as may be requested by the Secretary of State or Network Rail, consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with Network Rail and other Train Operators (as applicable) in respect of the planning, development and implementation of the One Team Stations Initiative.
- 4.3 Subject always to paragraph 4.7, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree a One Team Stations Implementation Plan with Network Rail by 28 February 2021 and shall update this as necessary for consistency with the One Team Stations Initiative from time to time.
- 4.4 If the Franchisee and Network Rail fail to agree a One Team Stations Implementation Plan in accordance with paragraph 4.3, the Franchisee shall promptly notify the Secretary of State and the Franchisee agrees that it shall accept such One Team Stations Implementation Plan as the Secretary of State may specify (acting reasonably and having due regard to the information provided by the Franchisee in its notice). In any notice issued to the Secretary of State pursuant to this paragraph 4.4, the Franchisee shall include reasonable details of the points of difference between the Franchisee and Network Rail, together with its reasons for not accepting any proposal made by Network Rail.
- 4.5 In developing the One Team Stations Initiative pursuant to paragraph 4.2, the Franchisee shall collaborate and cooperate with Network Rail and, where applicable, any other Train Operators to identify and assess the business case for any alternative operational delivery models, including joint management structures designed to improve customer service, operations and cost efficiency.
- 4.6 As soon as practicable following agreement of any One Team Stations Implementation Plan under paragraph 4.3 or otherwise following any instructions from the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.4, the Franchisee shall take such action as may be necessary to discharge its obligations under this plan and shall promptly notify the Secretary of State of any material failure to discharge such obligations.
- 4.7 If the Franchisee reasonably considers that any provision of this paragraph 4 requires, or is likely to require, it do anything inconsistent with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, it shall notify and consult with the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following becoming aware of the same and proceed in accordance with any guidance or directions that the Secretary of State may reasonably provide or direct (which may include a direction or guidance to agree and implement a proposal on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify).

## 5. Integrated Control Centres Initiative

- 5.1 During the Franchise Term, the Franchisee shall, where required to do so in accordance with this Franchise Agreement or where requested to do so by the Secretary of State or Network Rail, consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with Network Rail and other Train Operators (as applicable) in respect of the planning, development and/or implementation (as applicable) of the Integrated Control Centres Initiative at such Control Centres as the Secretary of State or Network Rail may specify.
- 5.2 If required to do so in accordance with paragraph 5.1, and subject always to paragraph 5.6, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree an Integrated Control Centres Implementation Plan with Network Rail within such timescale as the Secretary of State or Network Rail may reasonably specify and shall update this as necessary for consistency with the Integrated Control Centres Initiative from time to time.
- 5.3 If the Franchisee and Network Rail fail to agree an Integrated Control Centres Implementation Plan in accordance with paragraph 5.2, the Franchisee shall promptly notify the Secretary of State and the Franchisee agrees that it shall accept such Integrated Control Centres Implementation Plan as the Secretary of State may specify (acting reasonably and having due regard to the information provided by the Franchisee in its notice). In any notice issued to the Secretary of State pursuant to this paragraph 5.3, the Franchisee shall include reasonable details of the points of difference between the Franchisee and Network Rail, together with its reasons for not accepting any proposal made by Network Rail.
- 5.4 If required to do so in accordance with paragraph 5.1, the Franchisee shall collaborate and cooperate with Network Rail and, where applicable, any other Train Operators to:
- (a) identify any alternative operational delivery models which could be developed and implemented to promote an integrated approach to joint control at any Control Centres; and
  - (b) assess the business case for the industry (as a whole) for implementing any such proposals.
- 5.5 As soon as practicable following agreement of any Integrated Control Centres Implementation Plan under paragraph 5.2 or otherwise following any instructions from the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 5.3, the Franchisee shall take such action as may be necessary to discharge its obligations under this plan and shall promptly notify the Secretary of State of any material failure to discharge such obligations.
- 5.6 If the Franchisee reasonably considers that any provision of this paragraph 5 requires, or is likely to require, it do anything inconsistent with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, it shall notify and consult with the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following becoming aware of the same and proceed in accordance with any guidance or directions that the Secretary of State may reasonably provide or direct (which may include a direction or guidance to agree and implement a proposal on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify).

## 6. Co-operation

- 6.1 In this paragraph 6:

**“Delay Attribution Principles and Rules”** means the version of the document known as the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules referenced in the Network Code;

**“Performance Improvement Management System”** means the rail industry framework for the management of performance risks;

**“Reactionary Minutes Delay”** means the minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are attributed as ‘Reactionary Delay’ in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules, disregarding any minutes of delay that are imputed to Passenger Services that were cancelled; and

**“RM3P”** means the ‘Risk Management Maturity Model for Performance’ system to monitor and manage operational performance within the rail industry.

6.2 The Franchisee shall work fully and effectively with Network Rail as required to:

- (a) analyse Reactionary Minutes Delay and develop and deliver performance improvement plans to address areas of underperformance, focusing on improving Timetable robustness and contingency planning;
- (b) record, monitor and reduce sub-threshold delay;
- (c) implement industry best practice approaches to improving performance, including, if requested by the Secretary of State, the deployment of the RM3P and the Performance Improvement Management System; and
- (d) review ‘TRUST Delay Codes’ (as set out in the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules) and identify opportunities to improve the delay attribution process set out in the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules.

## 7. Operational Planning

7.1 In this paragraph 7:

**“Event Steering Groups”** has the meaning given to it in the Network Code.

**“Required Establishment”** means the number of train crew required in order to operate the Passenger Services, which in the case of drivers shall be calculated in accordance with the Rail Delivery Group’s “Guidance Note on Driver Establishment Calculation (December 2013)” and otherwise in accordance with an equivalent methodology.

**“Train Crew Numbers Data”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 7.3.

7.2 The Franchisee shall consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with Network Rail and any relevant Train Operators in respect of the planning, development and implementation of proposals to support the continuous improvement of train timetabling and train planning functions. Amongst other things, this shall include developing improvements to:

- (a) the quality of the Franchisee’s and Network Rail’s timetable planning activities, through, amongst other things:
  - (i) adequate resourcing of train planning and diagramming activities for both rolling stock and traincrew;
  - (ii) collaborative working between the Franchisee’s and Network Rail or other Train Operators’ planning teams;
  - (iii) the timely sharing of plans for rolling stock and traincrew, including ancillary moves;
  - (iv) timely sharing of rolling stock characteristics required to support timetable simulation and performance modelling; and

- (v) an increased focus on the advance development of major timetable changes, including through Event Steering Groups;
  - (b) the robustness and resilience of the Franchisee's and Network Rail's train plans through collaborative working, to ensure jointly developed train regulation policies, contingency and service recovery plans including but not limited to data in relation to, and plans for:
    - (i) diversionary route availability (including traincrew knowledge and rolling stock clearance); and
    - (ii) traincrew flexibility (including route and traction knowledge, and spare cover).
- 7.3 The Franchisee shall, as soon as reasonably practicable following any request, provide Network Rail with such information as it may reasonably request, including:
- (a) information in relation to current and projected future numbers of train crew employed, in aggregate and in respect of each individual train crew depot or link, and distinguishing in each case between different types of train crew and between fully qualified individuals and trainee (the "**Train Crew Numbers Data**"); and
  - (b) a comparison of the Train Crew Numbers Data against the Franchisee's most recent assessment of the current and expected future Required Establishment in each case.

## 8. **Infrastructure Projects**

The Franchisee shall, throughout the Franchise Term, consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with Network Rail and any relevant Train Operators in respect of the planning, development and/or implementation (as applicable) of such renewals, enhancements and associated possessions as Network Rail may notify to the Franchisee. In particular, the parties shall work collaboratively to:

- (a) identify opportunities to coordinate and combine the delivery of infrastructure enhancements and planned renewals; and
- (b) plan possessions,

in each case, in such manner as achieves the optimum compromise between outcomes for passengers and cost-efficiency for the railway industry as a whole.

## 9. **Sharing Data with Network Rail**

9.1 In this paragraph 9:

**"Financial and Commercial Data"** means financial and commercial data and information in respect of:

- (a) the number of passengers using the Passenger Services, including as may be sourced from MOIRA, Lennon, passenger counts, yield management data and gate line data; and
- (b) operating costs.

**"NR Data Sharing Objectives"** means the aims and objectives of data sharing as may be agreed between the Franchisee and Network Rail and documented in the NR Data Sharing Strategy, including for the purposes of improving the planning and delivery of the day to day operational activities, supporting business planning, supporting train planning, informing service

change and timetabling proposals, planning access and possessions, assessing the railway industry business case for specified proposals and to support strategic planning.

**“NR Data Sharing Strategy”** means the data sharing strategy to be developed in accordance with paragraph 9.2, as may be updated from time to time.

**“Operational Data”** means data and information in relation to the day to day operation of the passenger services including in relation to traincrew diversionary route and traction knowledge, Train Plan, rolling stock configuration, stock and crew diagrams and fleet reliability data.

9.2 By no later than 31 January 2021, the Franchisee shall, jointly with Network Rail, develop and use all reasonable endeavours to agree a strategy, which sets out the basis on which the Franchisee will, subject to any guidance or instructions that the Secretary of State may provide or issue from time to time, share specified operational, financial and commercial data and information with Network Rail. As a minimum, the strategy will include:

- (a) the agreed NR Data Sharing Objectives;
- (b) the types of data to be shared by the Franchisee and Network Rail (including Operational Data and Financial and Commercial Data);
- (c) the format and frequency of the data sharing;
- (d) how the Franchisee and Network Rail intend to receive, use and safely store the data;
- (e) approach to cost-sharing and apportionment in respect of the data sharing; and
- (f) approach to overcoming any confidentiality or other restrictions in respect of data sharing or storage which may arise (including as matter of law).

9.3 If the Franchisee:

- (a) is unable to agree the NR Data Sharing Strategy with Network Rail by 31 January 2021; or
- (b) reasonably considers that any proposal pursuant to this paragraph 9 requires, or is likely to require, it to do anything inconsistent with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator,

it shall notify and consult with the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following becoming aware of the same and proceed in accordance with such guidance or directions as the Secretary of State may reasonably provide or direct (which may include a direction or guidance to agree and implement a proposal on such terms as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify).

9.4 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement the NR Data Sharing Strategy in accordance with its terms, and shall continue to consult, collaborate and co-operate with Network Rail to agree any reasonable amendments or updates to the NR Data Sharing Strategy from time to time.

9.5 The Franchisee shall propose and use all reasonable endeavours to agree with Network Rail suitable amendments to the NR Data Sharing Strategy to ensure compliance with any guidance or instructions issued or provided by the Secretary of State from time to time.

9.6 The Franchisee shall not unreasonably withhold or delay its consent to any amendments which Network Rail may reasonably propose to the NR Data Sharing Strategy, provided that the Franchisee shall not agree to any amendments which would not be in compliance with any guidance the Secretary of State may provide or issue from time to time.

9.7 Notwithstanding any other term of this paragraph 9, the Franchisee shall not be required to do anything which would put it in breach of any obligation on the Franchisee arising under applicable Law or the terms of its Licences.

10. **Sharing on-train data with Network Rail**

10.1 The Franchisee shall, to the extent reasonably requested by Network Rail, share with Network Rail all relevant data including GPS data and data derived from geometry measurement systems, forward facing CCTV, driver advisory systems and train condition monitoring systems fitted to any rolling stock within the Train Fleet. Any such data provided to Network Rail shall be provided in such format as Network Rail may reasonably request without charge.

10.2 The Franchisee shall, if so requested by Network Rail, provide advice to Network Rail on the feasibility, costs and associated practicalities of providing Network Rail with access to real-time (or near-real-time) footage from on-train forward-facing CCTV systems.

11. **Station Accessibility Data Collection**

The Franchisee shall comply with any reasonable request by the Secretary of State in connection with the development and implementation of a station accessibility data collection which may include (but shall not be limited to):

- (a) supporting the Secretary of State in developing and designing the methodology for data collection;
- (b) completing questionnaires and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner completes the relevant questionnaire;
- (c) providing information in relation to Station accessibility and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner provides such information; and
- (d) providing access to Stations to facilitate accessibility data collection and/or using reasonable endeavours to procure that the relevant station Facility Owner provides such access,

in each case, in a timely manner.

12. **Compensation**

Save with the prior written consent (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) of the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall not:

- (a) enter into any new agreement, contract or other arrangement which relates to the receipt, review, response to, or processing of passengers' compensation claims;
- (b) materially amend, vary or waive the terms of any existing agreement, contract or other arrangement which relates to the receipt, review, response to, or processing of passengers' compensation claims;
- (c) extend the term of any agreement, contract or other arrangement which relates to the receipt, review, response to, or processing of passengers' compensation claims; or
- (d) make any material change to the Franchisee's system(s) relating to the receipt or processing of passengers' compensation claims.

13. **TD Academy**

13.1 In this paragraph 13 of part 1 of Schedule 6.3:

"**TD Academy Board**" means the board of the TD Academy.

"**TD Academy Objectives**" means:

- (i) improving the consistency and quality of driver training;
- (ii) improving and increasing driver training throughout with the objective of eliminating the shortage of drivers;
- (iii) improving driver skills and qualifications, including through increased uptake of the Train Driver Apprenticeship (Level 3) (as supported by the Institute for Apprenticeships and Technical Education);
- (iv) improving, increasing and promoting diversity of drivers in the industry in accordance with the Approved D&I Strategy;
- (v) providing information to the TD Academy Board for assurance on training quality to stakeholders; and
- (vi) promoting synergies, efficiencies and consistency through collaboration between TD Academy Stakeholders on driver training programmes and initiatives,

(each, a "**TD Academy Objective**").

"**TD Academy Plan**" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 13.3(b), including as updated from time to time.

"**TD Academy Stakeholders**" means the Franchisee, the Secretary of State, Train Operators, the RDG, any other relevant rail industry bodies and any other stakeholders which the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee of from time to time.

"**Train Driver Academy**" or "**TD Academy**" means the scheme to promote driver training programmes (including through online learning platforms) which was originally established by the RDG in 2019, including as it may be amended, supplemented or replaced from time to time."

- 13.2 During the term of the ERMA, the Franchisee shall consult, co-ordinate and co-operate with the TD Academy Stakeholders as appropriate (or as may be required by the Secretary of State) from time to time in respect of the planning, development and/or implementation (as applicable) of the Train Driver Academy and/or in connection with promoting the TD Academy Objectives.
- 13.3 By no later than 30 November 2020, the Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with a report:
- (a) setting out how it is currently engaging with the TD Academy and/or promoting the TD Academy Objectives; and
  - (b) how it intends to engage with the TD Academy and/or promote the TD Academy Objectives during the term of the ERMA, including its proposed timing for achieving any key milestones (the "**TD Academy Plan**"), together with an assessment of the costs and practicalities involved in implementing the TD Academy Plan.
- 13.4 Following the report referred to in paragraph 13.2, the Franchisee shall implement its TD Academy Plan and shall promptly notify the Secretary of State of any material departures or failure to do so.
- 13.5 The Secretary of State may, from time to time:



- (a) recommend specified changes to the Franchisee's TD Academy Plan as it considers reasonable to promote the achievement of the TD Academy Objectives; and
  - (b) direct the Franchisee to comply with and or implement instructions which the Secretary of State considers necessary to promote the achievement of the TD Academy Objectives.
- 13.6 The Franchisee shall:
- (a) take account of, and update its TD Academy Plan in respect of, any Secretary of State recommendations pursuant to paragraph 13.5(a) and implement its TD Academy Plan (as amended); and
  - (b) implement and or comply with any Secretary of State instructions pursuant to paragraph 13.5(b) and update its TD Academy Plan accordingly.
- 13.7 During the term of the ERMA, the Franchisee shall not enter into any new contracts or other arrangements which may materially adversely affect the Franchisee's ability to comply with this paragraph 13, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.



**PART 2 – PAY AND INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS AND DISPUTE HANDLING****1. Notification of the Secretary of State****1.1** In this part 2 of Schedule 6.3:

“**Collective Agreement**” has the meaning given to it in the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992.

“**Dispute Handling Policy**” means the policy issued by the Secretary of State with the same name on, on or about the ERMA Start Date, as may be amended, supplemented or replaced from time to time.

“**Employment Agreement**” means the terms and conditions of employment of any Franchise Employee whether contained in or otherwise incorporated or implied, including by way of custom or practice, into any Collective Agreement, individual contract of employment, employee handbook or otherwise, in each case whether or not in writing.

“**Employment Policy Framework**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3.

“**In-Scope Matters**” means any of the following matters in relation to any Franchise Employees:

- (i) pay negotiation strategies;
- (ii) changes to any remuneration strategy, pension arrangements or staff benefits;
- (iii) any proposed restructuring or redundancy plans;
- (iv) any proposed changes affecting Franchise Employees (including to proposed changes to the terms of any Employment Agreement, any proposed changes to working practices or procedures, howsoever these are recorded or have become established, and whether these apply nationally or locally) which either party reasonable believes (a) is likely to give rise to material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) could have a material negative impact on productivity; and/or (c) would not be in train passengers’ interests;
- (v) any other matter notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State from time to time; and/or
- (vi) any negotiation or consultation strategies regarding any of the matters at (i) to (v) above,

(each, an “**In-Scope Matter**”).

“**Mandate**” means in relation to any In-Scope Matter any mandate formally agreed from time to time in writing (other than through email or other informal correspondence unless the email in question includes express confirmation from the Secretary of State that its content (or stipulated part of it) is to form a Mandate) between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State regarding: (i) the objective or objectives of negotiations or consultation; (ii) any parameters or constraints on such objective(s), or the substance of such negotiations or consultation; and/or (iii) how such negotiations or consultation are to be approached, structured or handled.

“**Relevant Employer**” means any of the Franchisee’s Affiliates to whom the Franchise Services or services which are in support of or ancillary to the Franchise Services have been

subcontracted (at any tier) or delegated by the Franchisee, which employs Franchise Employees performing or in support of or ancillary to the Franchise Services.

**“Reward and People Principles”** means any policy or policies, high level objectives, principles, instructions or guidance issued to the Franchisee or any Relevant Employer by the Secretary of State (a) with the title “Reward and People Policy”, “Reward Policy” and/or “People Policy”; and/or (b) which relates to remuneration, pensions, benefits, working arrangements, working practices or terms and conditions of employment in respect of any Franchise Employee, in each case (a) and (b) as may be amended, supplemented or replaced by the Secretary of State from time to time.

**“Trade Union”** means any trade union(s) recognised by the Franchisee or any Relevant Employer in respect of Franchise Employees.

**“Unrepresented Employees”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.7(a) of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3.

**“Workers”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 10 of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3.

- 1.2 The Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer, shall:
- (a) as soon as reasonably practicable prior to engaging with any Trade Union or other employee representative body in relation to any In-Scope Matter; or
  - (b) promptly and in any event three (3) Weekdays following any communication from any Trade Union or other employee representative body to the Franchisee (or the Relevant Employer, as applicable) in relation to any potential In-Scope Matter which is not covered by an existing Mandate,

and where reasonably practicable in each case in good time to allow for proper engagement with the Secretary of State, inform the Secretary of State of all relevant information relating to any such matters and any other information the Secretary of State may request from time to time in relation to such matters. Where there is any doubt as to whether a matter requires notification in accordance with this paragraph 1.2, the Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer shall, make a notification in any event. In determining whether to make a notification and/or what information must be provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee, the Franchisee shall have regard to its obligations under paragraph 7.1 of this Part 2 of Schedule 6.3.

- 1.3 Following notification to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.2 above, the Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, prior to any further communication with any Trade Union or other employee representative body in relation to the applicable In-Scope Matter, consult with the Secretary of State with a view to reaching agreement with the Secretary of State on a Mandate.

- 1.4 If:
- (a) a Mandate cannot be agreed and the Franchisee or a Relevant Employer acts or omits to act in respect of a relevant In-Scope Matter without a Mandate;
  - (b) the Secretary of State determines that the Franchisee or a Relevant Employer has incorrectly treated a matter as not being an In-Scope Matter and the Franchisee or a Relevant Employer acts or omits to act in respect of that matter without a Mandate; or
  - (c) the Franchisee or a Relevant Employer breaches a Mandate or acts outside the scope of a Mandate in relation to the relevant In-Scope Matter,

and, in any such case, in doing so incurs costs, or loses revenue, then the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's sole discretion direct that:

- (i) any loss of revenue shall be treated as Revenue Foregone; and
- (ii) any increase in costs shall be treated as a Disallowable Cost,

in each case where the Secretary of State in the Secretary of State's sole discretion determines that such loss of revenue or increased costs (as the case may be) arises in connection with actions taken (or omitted to be taken) by the Franchisee or a Relevant Employer in relation to the relevant In-Scope Matter.

1.5 Once a Mandate has been agreed, the Franchisee shall and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall:

- (a) act in accordance with the Mandate; and
- (b) act in accordance with paragraph 2 below,

in relation to the In-Scope Matter to which that Mandate relates.

1.6 For the purposes of this paragraph 1, communications shall include any verbal discussions or written communications, in each case of a formal or informal nature.

1.7 Where any Franchise Employees are not subject to collective representation (whether by a Trade Union or any other employee representative body):

- (a) any issue which would require notification in paragraphs 1.2(a) and 1.2(b) in relation to an In-Scope Matter shall require notification if the issue arises in respect of any group of more than one such unrepresented Franchise Employees ("**Unrepresented Employees**"); and
- (b) when paragraph 1.7(a) applies, once a Mandate is required, the provisions of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 shall apply in full in respect of the relevant Unrepresented Employees.

## 2. **Reward and People Principles**

2.1 In relation to any In-Scope Matter (and whether or not a Mandate has been agreed in respect of that matter)\_the applicable principles for reward and working arrangements will be set out in Reward and People Principles and the Parties intend that these shall take precedence over other arrangements between the Secretary of State and the Franchisee which are in place immediately prior to the ERMA Start Date, subject to the remainder of this paragraph 2.1. Specifically:

- (a) the Franchisee agrees that the Reward and People Principles and any other policies, high level instructions or guidance that the Secretary of State may reasonably introduce or direct from time to time (including in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 6 below) (together, the "**Employment Policy Framework**"), shall, in the case of any conflict or inconsistency, take precedence over any arrangements which form the substance of an In-Scope Matter between the Secretary of State and the Franchisee which are in place immediately prior to the ERMA Start Date, including:
  - (i) any multi-year pay awards;
  - (ii) staffing budgets (whether pre-approved or otherwise, and including where any assumptions relating to pay growth may have been made); and

- (iii) any other agreement or arrangement relating to any In-Scope Matters, in each case which may take effect following the ERMA Start Date; however
  - (b) without prejudice to paragraph 2.2, the Employment Policy Framework shall not take precedence over any such In-Scope Matters which, prior to the ERMA Start Date, have become legally binding on the Franchisee or Relevant Employer (whether by reason of individual contract of employment, collective agreement or by custom and practice) and, for the avoidance of doubt, including agreements made which have not yet taken effect at the ERMA Start Date or any changes which the Franchisee or Relevant Employer is required to make by law.
- 2.2 Nothing in this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 shall prevent the Franchisee or Relevant Employer from seeking to reach agreement with any Trade Union, other employee representative body or Relevant Employees or taking such other steps as are appropriate or necessary regarding new or revised terms and conditions of employment in order to seek to implement the Employment Policy Framework or any Mandate.
- 2.3 The Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State, conduct any negotiations or consultation with any Trade Union, other employee representative body or group of employees (within paragraph 1.7(a)) regarding the subject of a Mandate in accordance with the Employment Policy Framework.
- 2.4 Subject to paragraph 2.3, the Franchisee shall, or shall procure that the Relevant Employer shall, lead and have full day to day conduct of the relevant negotiations or consultation and implementation of any Mandate.
- 3. **Terms of Employment**
- 3.1 In addition to the obligations set out in paragraph 1 above but subject to the provisions of paragraph 3.2 below, the Franchisee shall not, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer shall not, without the Secretary of State's consent (which shall not be unreasonably withheld) effect, or purport or promise to effect, or otherwise implement any In-Scope Matter other than in accordance with the relevant Mandate.
- 3.2 Without limiting paragraph 3.1, subject to paragraph 3.4, the Franchisee shall not, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall not, without the prior consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), vary, or purport or promise to vary the terms or conditions of employment with any Franchise Employee (in particular, the Franchisee shall not, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall not, promise to make any additional payment or provide any additional benefit or vary any term or condition relating to holiday, leave or hours to be worked) where the revised terms of employment of any existing Franchise Employee may take effect on or after the ERMA Start Date if and to the extent that such terms or conditions are more favourable than the standard terms or conditions of employment of the equivalent or nearest equivalent Franchise Employee role at the date on which such revised terms and conditions are scheduled to take effect.
- 3.3 Without limiting paragraph 3.1, subject to paragraph 3.4, the Franchisee shall not, and shall procure that each other Relevant Employer shall not, without the prior consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed), create or grant, or promise to create or grant, terms or conditions of employment for any prospective Franchise Employee where the employment of such prospective Franchise Employee by the Franchisee or such other Relevant Employer may commence on or after the ERMA Start Date if and to the extent that:

- (a) such terms or conditions are more favourable than the standard terms or conditions of employment of the equivalent or nearest equivalent Franchise Employee role at the date on which such employment is scheduled to commence; and
  - (b) if such terms or conditions were granted to such equivalent Franchise Employee already employed by the Franchisee by way of variation to their terms or conditions of employment, the Franchisee would be in contravention of paragraph 3.2.
- 3.4 For the purposes of matters falling within paragraphs 3.2 and , no consent will be required from the Secretary of State in respect of any changes or proposed changes made or proposed in the ordinary course of business in accordance with human resources policies (in relation to the day to day management of the Franchisee's or Relevant Employer's business) which exist prior to the ERMA Start Date which: (a) are not likely to give rise to material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) will not have a material negative impact on productivity; and/or (c) are not contrary to train passengers' interests.

#### 4. **In-Scope Matters**

- 4.1 The Secretary of State may at any time, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, determine that a matter is, or is not, an In-Scope Matter. Save where either paragraph 4.4 or 4.5 applies, a determination that a matter is an In-Scope Matter will be final and conclusive but will not prevent the Parties agreeing that a matter is no longer an In-Scope Matter.
- 4.2 Without prejudice to paragraphs 3.2 and 3.3, if a matter is not an In-Scope Matter, no Mandate is required. For these purposes, matters in respect of which a Mandate is not required will include changes to working practices made in the ordinary course of business in accordance with human resources policies (in relation to the day to day management of the Franchisee's or Relevant Employer's business) prior to the ERMA Start Date which: (a) are not likely to give rise to material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) will not negatively impact on productivity; and/or (c) are not be contrary to train passengers' interests.
- 4.3 Where a Franchisee (or a Relevant Employer) is in any doubt as to whether any matter is an In-Scope Matter requiring a Mandate, it must, or must procure that the Relevant Employer shall, inform the Secretary of State in good time prior to steps being taken to implement such matter or change and the Franchisee must, or must procure that the Relevant Employer shall, if requested by the Secretary of State, provide an explanation of why it believes the proposed matter or change is not an In-Scope Matter requiring a Mandate. Thereafter, the Secretary of State may make a determination in accordance with paragraph 4.1. Provided the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, is satisfied that the Franchisee complied with its obligations under this paragraph 4.3 and paragraph 7.1, the Secretary of State's determination shall, subject to paragraph 4.5, be final and conclusive. Where the Secretary of State has determined that a matter is an In-Scope Matter, nothing will prevent the Parties subsequently agreeing that the matter is no longer an In-Scope Matter.
- 4.4 Where a matter is not an In-Scope Matter, the Parties acknowledge and agree that further developments in relation to, and/or escalation of, that matter may be such that it could result in (a) material industrial relations risks (including a risk of Industrial Action); and/or (b) a material negative impact on productivity; and/or (c) be contrary to train passengers' interests. In any such event, the Franchisee will make a notification to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.3 with a view to seeking a determination from the Secretary of State as to whether the matter has become an In-Scope Matter.
- 4.5 Any determination by the Secretary of State that any matter is an In-Scope Matter is conditional on the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, being and remaining satisfied that the Franchisee

and, where relevant, the Relevant Employer have disclosed all relevant information relating to such matter and complying and continuing to comply with the duty in paragraph 7.1. If, in the Secretary of State's opinion, acting reasonably, there is or has been any material non-disclosure of relevant information or a material breach of paragraph 7.1 by the Franchisee or Relevant Employer, the Secretary of State may determine that the Mandate is void in which case for the purposes of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3, costs, losses and revenues shall be treated as if that Mandate had never been agreed and paragraph 1.4(a) of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 shall apply in respect of any acts or omissions of the Franchisee or the Relevant Employer in relation to that matter. The Parties acknowledge and agree that where this paragraph 4.5 applies, the Secretary of State may take such action and/or instruct such changes as it considers reasonably necessary to correct the apportionment of costs, losses and revenues between the Parties.

## 5. Industrial Action

5.1 The Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, comply with the Dispute Handling Policy. Without prejudice to any obligations under the Dispute Handling Policy, to the extent the Franchisee, acting reasonably, believes that Industrial Action is likely to occur as a result of its (or any Relevant Employer's) compliance with any aspect of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 (including any Mandate agreed pursuant to it), or for any other reason, it shall promptly notify the Secretary of State of its reason for that belief and the effect, or the anticipated effect, of such event on the performance of the Franchise Services and provide the Secretary of State with such further information as the Secretary of State may request.

5.2 As soon as reasonably practicable following a notification set out in paragraph 5.1 above, and in any event within three (3) Weekdays following such notification, the Franchisee shall propose a process it intends to adopt to deal with the relevant Industrial Action in accordance with and subject to the Dispute Handling Policy. The Franchisee and the Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to agree how the relevant Industrial Action shall be handled, bearing in mind the Dispute Handling Policy, provided however that the Franchisee's handling of such Industrial Action will be subject always to the Secretary of State's direction, such agreement and/or direction being the "**Dispute Handling Plan**". The Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, act in accordance with the Dispute Handling Plan.

5.3 If:

- (a) agreement is not reached regarding how relevant Industrial Action is to be handled; or
- (b) in the event that Industrial Action occurs which, the Secretary of State determines (at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, acting reasonably), has arisen as a result of the Franchisee or any Relevant Employer not complying with its or their obligations under this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 including any Mandate agreed pursuant to it, to any failure to act in accordance with the Dispute Handling Plan, to make a notification required by paragraph 1.2 or to provide all relevant information in relation to such notification and or to comply with paragraphs 7.1 and 7.3,

either of which has resulted in a loss of revenue, an increase or decrease in costs, or a combination of the foregoing, as a consequence (direct or otherwise) of the disruption to Passenger Services (however so related), the Secretary of State may in the Secretary of State's sole discretion:

- (c) if the Cost Target Methodology or the Profit Target Methodology applies to the Financial Performance Fee during the PBF Assessment Period in which such event occurs, designate such event as a Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event;



- (d) direct that any such increase in costs shall be treated as Disallowable Costs and the Franchisee shall not, in any circumstances, be entitled to claim back such costs from the Secretary of State whether pursuant to Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) or otherwise; and/or
- (e) direct that any such lost revenue shall be treated as Revenue Foregone.

5.4 To the extent that the Franchisee:

- (a) has complied with this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 (including any applicable Mandate); and
  - (b) has complied with the Dispute Handling Plan,
- then
- (c) the Secretary of State, will not treat any increase in costs or loss of revenue of the Franchisee arising from the relevant Industrial Action (however caused and of whatever nature) as a Disallowable Cost or Revenue Foregone (respectively); and
  - (d) if the Cost Target Methodology or the Profit Target Methodology applies to the Financial Performance Fee during the PBF Assessment Period in which the relevant Industrial Action occurs, the occurrence of such Industrial Action shall constitute a Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event,

in circumstances where the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee has acted reasonably in taking all reasonable steps (and procuring that any Relevant Employer has taken all reasonable steps) to avoid the Industrial Action and that, Industrial Action having nevertheless occurred, the Franchisee has taken all reasonable steps (and has procured that any Relevant Employer has taken all reasonable steps) to mitigate its effects.

## 6. Reform

6.1 The Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall:

- (a) co-operate with the Secretary of State as may be required by the Secretary of State from time to time in respect of the planning, development and/or implementation (as applicable) of industry reform with respect to the Employment Policy Framework and the Dispute Handling Policy, including co-operating and collaborating with other Train Operators and other organisations in respect of planning, developing and implementing such reforms to the extent permitted by applicable laws; and
- (b) provide to the Secretary of State, such information and data in relation to the Employment Policy Framework and/or the Dispute Handling Policy (or any aspect of it/them) as the Secretary of State may require from time to time.

6.2 The Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, use all reasonable endeavours to introduce, implement and comply with such amendments to the Dispute Handling Policy, the Employment Policy Framework generally and any other applicable industry agreements (including any successor arrangements or any other agreement between the Franchisee and one or more third parties relating to the sustainability of the Franchisee's staffing model, people practices, engagement with related industry stakeholders or any related matter) as may be directed by the Secretary of State from time to time.

6.3 During the term of this ERMA, the Franchisee shall not, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall not, enter into any new Employment Agreements otherwise than in accordance with the terms of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3(including any applicable Mandate) and the Employment Policy Framework without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

## 7. **Duties of the Franchisee**

- 7.1 In relation to any matters dealt with in this part 2 of Schedule 6.3, the Franchisee shall, and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall, deal with the Secretary of State in an open and cooperative way, and must disclose to the Secretary of State on an ongoing basis anything relating to the Franchise Employees (and any Trade Union or other employee representative body representing any such employees) of which the Secretary of State would reasonably expect notice in respect of anything which might reasonably be expected to be relevant to an In-Scope Matter.
- 7.2 The Franchisee shall (and shall procure that each Relevant Employer shall) act within the spirit of this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 in its communications and dealings with any Trade Union, employee representative body or any Franchise Employee, both locally and nationally.
- 7.3 The Franchisee's duty to act as a Good and Efficient Operator shall apply to the discharge of its obligations under this part 2 of Schedule 6.3.

## 8. **Cooperation**

Where the Franchisee or Relevant Employer reasonably considers that complying with any aspect of this Schedule 6.3, including any aspect of the Employment Policy Framework or any Mandate, will cause it to breach any legal obligation of the Franchisee or Relevant Employer in their capacity as employer (whether arising under legislation or at common law) including to breaches of legislation relating to unlawful discrimination or equal pay, the Secretary of State and Franchisee shall work in cooperation (and/or, as appropriate, the Secretary of State shall, and the Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to procure that the Relevant Employer shall, work in cooperation) with a view to agreeing an approach to, as the case may be, compliance with such obligations under this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 or avoidance or mitigation of the risk of such breach by the Franchisee or Relevant Employer. Once such an approach is agreed, the Franchisee shall, and will procure that the Relevant Employer shall, implement it on its terms.

## 9. **Disallowable Costs**

Save as provided in this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 or as expressly agreed with the Secretary of State, any losses and liabilities (including costs, charges, penalties, compensation or similar payments) incurred as result of termination of a contract of employment of, or reaching any settlement or compromise with, a Franchisee Employee shall be Disallowable Costs.

## 10. **Workers**

To the extent that the Franchisee or any Relevant Employer engages individuals to work on the Franchise Services as workers (howsoever "workers" is defined in relevant English employment legislation from time to time, but excluding "agency workers" as defined in the Agency Worker Regulations 2010, as amended from time to time) ("**Workers**") rather than employees, the provisions in this part 2 of Schedule 6.3 shall be deemed to cover such Workers. In such circumstances, the engaging party shall be the Franchisee or the Relevant Employer, as applicable, and references to terms and conditions of employment shall be construed as references to terms and conditions of engagement and reference to Franchise Employees shall include such workers.



**Appendix 3 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 7.1 (*Performance Benchmarks*)**

## SCHEDULE 7.1

## OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE

**1 Definitions and Track Access Agreement**

**1.1** For the purposes of this Schedule 7.1 only, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings unless otherwise set out in Clause 3 (*Definitions*):

<b>"Cancellations Re-Calculation"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(b) of this Schedule 7.1;
<b>"Draft Action Plan"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.1(b)(i) of this Schedule 7.1;
<b>"Initial Cancellations Calculation"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1(a) of this Schedule 7.1;
<b>"Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(a) of this Schedule 7.1;
<b>"Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 9.1(a)(ix)9.1(a)(ix) of this Schedule 7.1;
<b>"TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1(b) of this Schedule 7.1;
<b>"Undisputed Cancellation"</b>	means a Cancellation that is not a Disputed Cancellation;
<b>"Undisputed Network Rail Cancellation"</b>	means a Network Rail Cancellation that is not a Disputed Cancellation;
<b>"Undisputed Network Rail Partial Cancellation"</b>	means a Network Rail Partial Cancellation that is not a Disputed Partial Cancellation; and
<b>"Undisputed Partial Cancellation"</b>	means a Partial Cancellation that is not a Disputed Partial Cancellation.

**1.2** [Not used.]

**1.3** [Not used.]

**1.4** [Not used.]

**1.5** [Not used.]

**1.6** [Not used.]

**1.7** [Not used.]

**1.8** [Not used.]

**1.9** [Not used.]

**1.10** [Not used.]

**1.11** [Not used.]

### 1.12 Track Access Agreement

The Franchisee agrees with the Secretary of State to comply with the requirements of the Track Access Agreement in respect of cancellations attribution (Cancellations, Partial Cancellations, Network Rail Cancellations and Network Rail Partial Cancellations) and Minutes Delay attribution.

### 1.13 [Not used.]

### 1.14 Notice of Performance Results

As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each Reporting Period and each PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the results of the calculations performed pursuant to this Schedule 7.1.

## 2 Reporting Requirements

The Franchisee shall at the end of each Reporting Period and in accordance with the relevant requirements of Appendix 2 (*Operational Performance Information*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) report to the Secretary of State the operational information as specified in Appendix 2 (*Operational Performance Information*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) and such further information as may be required for the purposes of the Secretary of State undertaking any of the calculations required to be performed by the Secretary of State pursuant to this Schedule 7.1.

## 3 Cancellation Calculation

### 3.1 For each Reporting Period during the term of the ERMA the Secretary of State shall:

- (a) calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of Cancellations (and, if applicable, calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of Cancellations against the OP Target for Cancellations) in accordance with the formula set out in Table 1 below (each an "**Initial Cancellations Calculation**"); and
- (b) other than for the first and second Reporting Periods following the ERMA Start Date, re-calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of Cancellations (and, if applicable, re-calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of Cancellations against the OP Target for Cancellations) for the two (2) Reporting Periods immediately preceding the relevant Reporting Period using the formula set out in Table 1 below (each a "**Cancellations Re-Calculation**").

### 3.2 In the event that a Cancellations Re-Calculation demonstrates that the Initial Cancellations Calculation or an earlier Cancellations Re-Calculation was incorrect, the Initial Cancellations Calculation and/or the relevant earlier Cancellations Re-Calculation shall, for the relevant Reporting Period, be replaced with the latest Cancellations Re-Calculation.

### 3.3 If the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Cancellations Operational Performance Component for the relevant PBF Assessment Period is calculated using the Quantified Target Methodology, the Franchisee shall not be entitled to receive payment of such element of the Performance Based Fee for the relevant PBF Assessment Period until the Secretary of State has undertaken all Cancellations Re-Calculations in relation to that PBF Assessment Period.

<b>Table 1</b>	
<b>A</b>	$= \frac{B}{C} \times 100$
<b>where:</b>	
<b>B</b>	<p>is the total number of Cancellations or Partial Cancellations of Passenger Services scheduled to be operated in the Enforcement Plan of the Day for that Reporting Period, on the basis that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a Cancellation shall count as one (1);</li> <li>(b) a Partial Cancellation shall count as zero point five (0.5); and</li> <li>(c) any Cancellations or Partial Cancellations during that Reporting Period which were caused by:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or</li> <li>(ii) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event,</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>shall, if the Franchisee has complied with paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 7.1, be disregarded in determining such total number of Cancellations and Partial Cancellations;</p>
<b>C</b>	<p>is the total number of Passenger Services scheduled to be operated in the Enforcement Plan of the Day for that Reporting Period, disregarding, if the Franchisee has complied with paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 7.1, any Cancellations or Partial Cancellations during that Reporting Period which were caused by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or</li> <li>(b) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event.</li> </ul>

**4 TOC Minutes Delay Calculations**

**4.1** For each Reporting Period during the term of the ERMA the Secretary of State shall:

- (a) calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of TOC Minutes Delay (and, if applicable, calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of TOC Minutes Delay against the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay) in accordance with the formula set out in Table 2 below (each an "**Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation**"); and
- (b) other than for the first and second Reporting Periods following the ERMA Start Date, re-calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of TOC Minutes Delay (and, if applicable, re-calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of TOC Minutes Delay against the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay) for the two (2) Reporting Periods immediately preceding the relevant Reporting Period using the formula set out in Table 2 below (each a "**TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation**").

**4.2** In the event that a TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation demonstrates that the Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation or an earlier TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation was incorrect, the Initial TOC Minutes Delay Calculation and/or the relevant earlier TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation shall, for the relevant Reporting Period, be replaced with the latest TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculation.

**4.3** If the Performance Based Fee attributable to the TOC Minutes Delay Operational Performance Component for the relevant PBF Assessment Period is calculated using the Quantified Target Methodology, the Franchisee shall not be entitled to receive payment of such element of the Performance Based Fee for the relevant PBF Assessment Period until the Secretary of State has undertaken all TOC Minutes Delay Re-Calculations in relation to that PBF Assessment Period.

<b>Table 2</b>	
$\frac{MD_{SRP}}{H_{SRP}}$	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>MD<sub>SRP</sub></b>	is the sum of Minutes Delay that are attributable to the Franchisee in that Reporting Period.
<b>H<sub>SRP</sub></b>	is ascertained as follows:  $\frac{V}{1000}$
	<b>where:</b>
	<b>V</b> is the sum of Actual Train Mileage in that Reporting Period.

**5 Short Formations**

**5.1 Short Formation Calculation**

For each Reporting Period during the Franchise Term the Secretary of State shall calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of Short Formations (and, if applicable, calculate the Franchisee's performance in respect of Short Formations against the OP Target for Short Formations) in accordance with the following formula:

<b>Table 3</b>		
<b>A<sup>SF</sup></b>	=	$\frac{B_{SF}}{C_{SF}} \times 100$
<b>where:</b>		
<b>B<sub>SF</sub></b>	is the total number of Short Formation Peak Passenger Services in that Reporting Period operated with less Passenger Carrying Capacity than that specified for each such Short Formation Peak Passenger Service in the Train Plan disregarding, if the Franchisee has complied with paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 7.1, any such Short Formation Peak Passenger Services which were operated in that way as a result of:	
	(a) the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or	
	(b) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event; and	

<b>C<sub>sf</sub></b>	<p>is the total number of Short Formation Peak Passenger Services scheduled to be operated in that Reporting Period disregarding, if the Franchisee has complied with paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 7.1, any such Short Formation Peak Passenger Service operated with less Passenger Carrying Capacity than that specified for each such Short Formation Peak Passenger Service in the Train Plan as a result of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period; or</li> <li>(b) the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event.</li> </ul>
-----------------------	--

**5.2** For the purposes of the calculation to be undertaken by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 5.1 above:

- (a) if and to the extent that any Short Formation Peak Passenger Service is operated in excess of the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified for that Short Formation Peak Passenger Service in the Train Plan, the excess capacity shall be disregarded; and
- (b) any Short Formation Peak Passenger Service that is the subject of a Cancellation or a Partial Cancellation shall be disregarded.

**6 Calculations**

The Secretary of State shall perform the calculations referred to in paragraphs 3.1, 4.1 and 5.1 of this Schedule 7.1 rounded to two (2) decimal places with the midpoint (that is, 11.115) rounded upwards (that is, 11.12).

**7 Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure**

**7.1** The Franchisee shall, within eight (8) weeks of the end of each Reporting Period for which a Service Recovery Plan has been implemented (or such other period as may be agreed by the Secretary of State), submit to the Secretary of State all the comprehensive records (as more particularly described in the "relevant paragraph of the Service Recovery Plan) which relate to the implementation of such Service Recovery Plan during that Reporting Period.

**7.2** In performing the calculations pursuant to paragraph 4.1 of this Schedule 7.1 the Secretary of State shall disregard any Minutes Delay that are caused by the occurrence or continuing effect of a Force Majeure Event.

**8 Consequences for Poor Performance – Benchmarks**

**8.1** The Franchisee shall ensure that its performance in each Reporting Period as calculated by the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements of this Schedule 7.1, **is not equal to or worse than** each Breach Performance Level in respect of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**8.2** Without limiting the provisions of paragraph 8.4 below, if in any Reporting Period the Franchisee's performance, as calculated by the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements of this Schedule 7.1, is **equal to or worse than** any Breach Performance Level relating to an Enforcement Benchmark in respect of the relevant Reporting Period, then a contravention of the Franchise Agreement shall occur and the Secretary of State may serve a Remedial Plan Notice in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 3 (*Remedies for Contraventions of the Franchise Agreement*) of Schedule 10.1 (Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement).

- 8.3** For the purposes of paragraph 4.2(c) (*Remedial Plans*) of Schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*) the steps to be proposed by the Franchisee pursuant to that paragraph are those which ensure that the Franchisee's performance against the relevant Enforcement Benchmark will be **better than** the Breach Performance Level relating to such Enforcement Benchmark.
- 8.4** Certain consequences of the Franchisee's performance being **equal to or worse than** the Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels relating to each Enforcement Benchmark are set out in Schedule 10 (*Remedies, Events of Default and Termination Events*).
- 8.5** This paragraph 8 shall only apply if the Parties have agreed (or the Secretary of State has determined, if applicable) that the Quantified Target Methodology shall apply to the Operational Performance Fee pursuant to paragraph 4 (*Calculation of the Performance Based Fee for each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period*) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*).

## **9 Consequences for Poor Performance**

### **9.1 Action Plans**

- (a) If in any three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods the:
- (i) Franchisee's performance against the OP Target for Cancellations is worse than the OP Target for Cancellations; and/or
  - (ii) Franchisee's performance against the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay is worse than the OP Target for TOC Minutes Delay; and/or
  - (iii) Franchisee's performance against the OP Target for Short Formations is worse than the OP Target for that Short Formations; and/or
  - (iv) Actual T-3 Performance Level is worse than the OP Target for T-3; and/or
  - (v) Actual T-15 Performance Level is worse than the OP Target for T-15; and/or
  - (vi) Actual All Cancellations Performance Level is worse than the OP Target for All Cancellations; and/or
  - (vii) Secretary of State considers the Franchisee's performance on a Route or group of Routes (as applicable) to be unacceptably poor notwithstanding the fact that the Franchisee's overall performance in respect of any applicable target or level measured pursuant to this Schedule 7.1 meets the relevant target or threshold,
- then the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request from the Franchisee a plan in order to secure:
- (viii) in respect of paragraphs 9.1(a)(i) to (vi) above, a Required Performance Improvement; and
  - (ix) in respect of paragraph 9.1(a)(vii) above, an improvement of the Franchisee's performance level on a Route or group of Routes (as applicable) to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) (a "**Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement**").
- (b) Within one (1) month of the Secretary of State's request pursuant to paragraph 9.1(a) above, the Franchisee shall:

- (i) produce, at its own cost (which cost shall be a Disallowable Cost pursuant to Appendix 1 (*Disallowable Costs*) to Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*)), and deliver to the Secretary of State its draft plan for securing a Required Performance Improvement and/or Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement (as applicable) (the "**Draft Action Plan**"); and
- (ii) subject to paragraph 9.1(d)(iv) below:
  - A. obtain the Secretary of State's approval of the Draft Action Plan in accordance with paragraph 9.1(d) below; and
  - B. commence the implementation of a resulting Action Plan.
- (c) The Draft Action Plan shall contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
  - (i) how that action will contribute to achieving the Required Performance Improvement and/or Route-Specific Required Performance Improvement (as applicable);
  - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
  - (iii) when the action is to be commenced and by when it is to be implemented provided always that where any action is expressed to be ongoing the Draft Action Plan shall include specific review dates;
  - (iv) how performance of the action is to be measured; and
  - (v) set out the additional expenditure associated with each action.
- (d) The Secretary of State shall be entitled to:
  - (i) request further information from the Franchisee with respect to its Draft Action Plan and the Franchisee shall submit such further information to the Secretary of State within the timescales as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State; and/or
  - (ii) propose amendments to the Draft Action Plan and the Parties shall agree and, in the absence of agreement, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amendments to the Draft Action Plan, in which case paragraph 9.1(e) below shall apply; or
  - (iii) accept the Draft Action Plan, in which case paragraph 9.1(e) below shall apply; or
  - (iv) not accept the Draft Action Plan, in which case the Franchisee shall not be obliged to undertake any further action with respect to its Draft Action Plan.
- (e) The Draft Action Plan as agreed, determined or accepted by the Secretary of State (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 9.1(d) above, shall be referred to as the "**Action Plan**". The Franchisee shall implement the Action Plan in accordance with its terms.
- (f) The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that the approval or lack of approval by the Secretary of State of each Draft Action Plan as contemplated in this paragraph 9.1 shall not relieve the Franchisee of its obligations under this Schedule 7.1 or any other provisions of the Franchise Agreement.



**9.2** Except where an Action Plan is required and implemented pursuant to paragraph 9.1(a)(vii), this paragraph 9 shall only apply if the Parties have agreed (or the Secretary of State has determined, if applicable) that the Quantified Target Methodology shall apply to the Operational Performance Fee pursuant to paragraph 4 (*Calculation of the Performance Based Fee for each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period*) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*).

**10 Allocation of Disputed Cancellations/Disputed Partial Cancellations**

**10.1** For the purpose of performing the calculations referred to in paragraph 3.1 of this Schedule 7.1 and/or paragraph 2 (*Operational Performance*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) the Secretary of State shall allocate any Disputed Cancellations and/or Disputed Partial Cancellations between the Franchisee and Network Rail at the end of a Reporting Period in the following ratio of:

<b>Table 4</b>	
<b>F: G</b>	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>F</b>	is the total number of Undisputed Cancellations and/or Undisputed Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods including any Disputed Cancellations or Disputed Partial Cancellations which were resolved or determined (and attributed to the Franchisee) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods; and
<b>G</b>	is the total number of Undisputed Network Rail Cancellations and/or Undisputed Network Rail Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods including any Disputed Cancellations or Disputed Partial Cancellations which were resolved or determined (and attributed to Network Rail) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods.

**11 Allocation of Disputed Minutes Delay**

**11.1** Where the attribution of any Minutes Delay is in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee at the end of a Reporting Period the Secretary of State shall for the purpose of performing the calculations referred to in paragraph 4.1 of this Schedule 7.1 and/or paragraph 2 (*Operational Performance*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*), allocate any disputed Minutes Delay between the Franchisee and Network Rail in the ratio of:

<b>Table 5</b>	
<b>FF: GG</b>	
<b>where:</b>	
<b>FF</b>	is the total number of undisputed Minutes Delay, in each case, from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods that are attributable to the Franchisee including any disputed attributions which were resolved or determined (and attributed to the Franchisee) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods; and

<b>GG</b>	is the total number of undisputed Minutes Delay, in each case from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods that are attributable to Network Rail including any disputed attributions which were resolved or determined (and attributed to Network Rail) during such twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods.
-----------	--

**Appendix 4 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 8.1A(*Franchise Payments*)**

## Schedule 8.1A Franchise Payments

### 1A Definitions

For the purposes of this Schedule 8.1A only, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings unless otherwise set out in Clause 3 (*Definitions*):

<b>"Accrued Claims"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 9.10 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Accrued Disallowable Costs"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 9.10 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Accrued Revenue Foregone"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 9.10 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Actual EMA Capex"</b>	has the meaning given to "Actual Capex" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Actual Capex" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Capital Expenditure</b> " shall have the meaning given to that term in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
<b>"Actual EMA Costs"</b>	has the meaning given to "Actual Costs" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Actual Costs" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Costs</b> " shall have the meaning given to that term in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
<b>"Actual EMA Revenue"</b>	has the meaning given to "Actual Revenue" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Actual Revenue" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Revenue</b> " shall have the meaning given to that term in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
<b>"Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 9.11 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Annual Adjustment" or "AADJ"</b>	means an adjustment determined in accordance with paragraph 11 ( <i>Annual Adjustments</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Base Cash Position"</b>	means <b>[REDACTED<sup>12</sup>]</b> (excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) or such

---

<sup>12</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

	other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 12.8 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Budget"</b>	means together: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the periodic cost and revenues budget; and</li> <li>(b) the periodic capex budget,</li> </ul> in relation to the period from the beginning of the seventh Reporting Period during Franchisee Year 2020/21 to the end of the thirteenth Reporting Period during Franchisee Year 2021/22 or the end of the Extended Term (if applicable), as agreed between the Secretary of State and the Franchisee on or around the ERMA Start Date or (if the Parties have not been able to agree the Budget by the ERMA Start Date) as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State, as such Budget may be updated and/or extended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 8 ( <i>Revisions to the Budget</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Budgeted EMA Capex"</b>	has the meaning given to "Budgeted Capex" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Budgeted Capex" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Capital Expenditure</b> " and " <b>Budget</b> " shall have the meaning given to those terms in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
<b>"Budgeted EMA Costs"</b>	has the meaning given to "Budgeted Costs" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Budgeted Costs" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Costs</b> " and " <b>Budget</b> " shall have the meaning given to those terms in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
<b>"Ceiling Cash Position"</b>	means <b>[REDACTED<sup>13</sup>]</b> (excluding the value of Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities) or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 12.8 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"EMA Budget"</b>	has the meaning given to the term "Budget" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;
<b>"EMA Disallowable Costs"</b>	has the meaning given to the term "Disallowable Costs" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the

---

<sup>13</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

	EMA, and for the purposes of this definition and the definition of term "Disallowable Costs" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Costs</b> " and " <b>Capital Expenditure</b> " shall have the meanings given to those terms in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
"EMA Emergency Working Capital Payments"	has the meaning given to the term "Emergency Working Capital Payments" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;
"EMA Estimated Revenue" or "EER"	has the meaning given to the term "Estimated Revenue" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Estimated Revenue" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Revenue</b> " shall have the meaning given to that term in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
"EMA Final Adjustment"	has the meaning given to the term "Final Adjustment" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;
"EMA Final Reviewed Accounts"	has the meaning given to the term "Final Reviewed Accounts" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;
"EMA Periodic Adjustment Payment"	means, in relation to the Franchise Payment payable in respect of the second and third Reporting Periods during the term of the ERMA, a sum calculated in accordance with Appendix 2 ( <i>EMA Periodic Adjustment Payment</i> ) payable to either the Secretary of State or the Franchisee, as applicable;
"EMA Revenue Foregone"	has the meaning given to "Revenue Foregone" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA (and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Revenue Foregone" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Revenue</b> " and " <b>Good and Efficient Operator</b> " shall have the meanings given to those terms in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA);
"EMA Working Capital Payments"	has the meaning given to the term "Working Capital Payments" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Working Capital Repayment" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, " <b>Franchise Payment Component</b> " and any related definitions shall each have the meanings given to those terms in in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;

<b>"EMA Working Capital Repayments"</b>	has the meaning given to the term "Working Capital Repayment" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA and, for the purposes of this definition and the definition of "Working Capital Repayment" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA, <b>"Franchise Payment Component"</b> and any related definitions shall each have the meanings given to those terms in in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;
<b>"Emergency Working Capital Payment"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 12.5 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Estimated Capital Expenditure"</b>	means the Capital Expenditure estimated by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the estimation;
<b>"Estimated Costs"</b>	means the Costs reasonably estimated by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the estimation;
<b>"EWCR"</b>	has the meaning given to "WCR" in schedule 8.A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) of the EMA;
<b>"Final Working Capital Adjustment" or "FWCA"</b>	means the adjustment determined in accordance with paragraph 14.1 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"First Franchise Payment" or "FFP"</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 1.2 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"First Reporting Period"</b>	means the first Reporting Period during the term of the ERMA;
<b>"Fixed Fee"</b>	means [REDACTED <sup>14</sup> ] exclusive of VAT in respect of each Reporting Period in the relevant period;
<b>"Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee" or "FFPBF"</b>	means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 15 ( <i>Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Franchise Payment Component"</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) each of the components of "£FFP" as described in paragraph 1.2 of this Schedule 8.1A;</li> <li>(b) each of the components of "£FP" as described in paragraph 1.3 of this Schedule 8.1A; and</li> <li>(c) any component or element, described in the relevant provisions of this Schedule 8.1A and Schedule 8.1B (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>), as the case may be, which is used in</li> </ul>

---

<sup>14</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

determining or calculating the value of those components described in paragraph (a) above;

<b>"Periodic Adjustment"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 10.2 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Periodic Budgeted Capex Payment" or "PBCP"</b>	means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 1.3 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Periodic Franchise Payment" or "PFP"</b>	means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 1.3 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Periodic Finance Review Meeting"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 9.1 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Quarter"</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) a period of three consecutive Reporting Periods, in each case ending at the end of the third, sixth and ninth Reporting Periods in a Franchisee Year; or</li> <li>(b) a period of four consecutive Reporting Periods ending at the end of the 13th Reporting Period of a Franchisee Year,</li> </ul> <p>(and <b>"Quarterly"</b> shall be construed accordingly);</p>
<b>"Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 8.1 of this Schedule 8.1A;
<b>"Reporting Period 13"</b>	means 1 March 2020 to 31 March 2020 (inclusive);
<b>"Residual Components"</b>	means the net value of the components of the Franchise Payments under Schedule 8.1 ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> ) which: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) relate to any periods prior to Reporting Period 13; and</li> <li>(b) become payable during the relevant Reporting Period.</li> </ul> <p>For the purposes of this Schedule 8.1A (<i>Franchise Payments</i>), such net value shall be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) if payable by the Secretary of the State to the Franchisee, a positive number; or</li> <li>(b) if payable by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State, a negative number;</li> </ul>
<b>"Revenue"</b>	means the gross total revenue of the Franchisee received or receivable and properly accrued during the term of the ERMA and relating to the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement as stated in the Franchisee's profit and loss account but excluding:



- (a) Franchise Payments (which shall include the value of any Performance Based Fee and/or Fixed Fee (if applicable)); and
- (b) any accounting transaction included in the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts or Annual Audited Accounts but which does not result in the Franchisee receiving a cash payment, including notional pensions accounting adjustments and the accounting impact of financial instruments revaluations;

**"Revenue Foregone"**

means an amount equal to the amount of revenue or other value which was not received or receivable by the Franchisee, including:

- (a) the:
  - (i) debts or other receivables waived, not collected or written off; and/or
  - (ii) value of any other asset not realised in whole or in part,

but which would have been receivable and received or otherwise realised by the Franchisee if it had acted as a Good and Efficient Operator; and

- (b) subject always to paragraph 6.1 (*No Double Recovery*) of this Schedule 8.1A, the amount by which the Purchase Price (as defined in clause 2.1 of the Supplemental Agreement) receivable by the Franchisee is lower than it would have been but for the Franchisee:
  - (i) incurring Disallowable Costs; and/or
  - (ii) otherwise acting other than as Good and Efficient Operator;

save where, in respect of both paragraphs (a) and (b) above, such Revenue or other value is not received or receivable as a result of the Franchisee acting in accordance with the instructions of the Secretary of State;

**"SoS Claim"**

means all losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that the Secretary of State does or will incur or suffer (including any such losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that are unliquidated or which are contingent):

- (a) as a consequence of any breach, negligence or other default of the Franchisee under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement and/or any agreement

ancillary to this Franchise Agreement, the ERMA and/or the EMA, including the Supplemental Agreement; and/or

- (b) in respect of any matter for which the Franchisee is to indemnify the Secretary of State pursuant to this Franchise Agreement, the ERMA and/or the EMA or any agreement ancillary to this Franchise Agreement, the ERMA and/or the EMA, including the Supplemental Agreement;

**"Supporting Materials"** means any materials explaining or supporting the Budget which have been produced by the Franchisee;

**"Working Capital Payment"** means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 12.3 of this Schedule 8.1A; and

**"Working Capital Repayment"** means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 13.2 of this Schedule 8.1A.

## 1 Franchise Payments

### 1.1 The Parties acknowledge and agree that:

- 1.1.1 the provisions of schedule 8.1 (*Franchise Payments*) of the Franchise Agreement were suspended during the term of the EMA and shall continue to be suspended during the term of the ERMA;
- 1.1.2 the EMA FWCA shall not be payable at any time;
- 1.1.3 any Residual Components shall be addressed in accordance with paragraphs 1.2 and 1.3 of this Schedule 8.1A;
- 1.1.4 for the purposes of paragraph 1.3 of this Schedule 8.1A and paragraph 11 of Schedule 8.A of the EMA, limb (a) of the PPADC element of the EMA MFPP in paragraph 11.1 of Schedule 8.A of the EMA shall be calculated on the basis of the relevant Audited Accounts Reconciliation and other relevant financial information provided to the Secretary of State, including in accordance with paragraph 9.4 of Schedule 11.2 in relation to the period from 1 March 2020 to the end of the EMA Term or otherwise, rather than the EMA Final Reviewed Accounts; and
- 1.1.5 the EMA MFPP shall be payable following:
- (i) the receipt by the Secretary of State of the Audited Accounts Reconciliation and other relevant financial information provided to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 9.4 of Schedule 11.2 in relation to the period from 1 March 2020 to the end of the EMA Term; and
  - (ii) the determination of the Management Fee and Performance Payment in accordance with Paragraph 11 of Schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) of the EMA.

1.2 The Franchise Payment for the First Reporting Period (the "**First Franchise Payment**") shall be an amount equal to:

<b>£FFP =</b>	$FPFP + FPBCP + FWCP + RCP$
---------------	-----------------------------

where:

<b>FPFP (First Periodic Franchise Payment)</b>	means an amount equal to: $FPFP = BC - EER$ where:	
	<b>BC</b>	means the Budgeted Costs for the First Reporting Period. BC may only be a positive number; and
	<b>EER</b>	means an amount equal to the EMA Estimated Revenue for the Reporting Period that ends on the day immediately before the ERMA Start Date. EER may only be a positive number.
<b>FPBCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Budgeted Capex for the First Reporting Period. FPBCP may only be a positive number.	
<b>FWCP</b>	means an amount equal to: $FWCP = BCP - FCCP$ (and FWCP may be a positive or negative number) where:	
	<b>BCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Base Cash Position; and
	<b>FCCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Forecast Closing Cash Position for the final Reporting Period of the term of the EMA.
<b>RCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Residual Components for the Reporting Period that ends on the day immediately before the ERMA Start Date. RCP may be a positive or negative number.	

1.3 The Franchise Payment for any Reporting Period in relation to the term of the ERMA other than the First Reporting Period shall be an amount equal to:

<b>£FP =</b>	$PFP + PBCP + PADJ + WCP - WCR + AADJ + FFPBF - FWCA + RCP + EMA MFPP$
--------------	--

where:

<b>PFP</b>	means an amount equal to: $PFP_n = BC_n - ER_{n-1}$ Where:
------------	--

	PFP <sub>n</sub>	means the Periodic Franchise Payment for the current Reporting Period.
	BC <sub>n</sub>	means the Budgeted Costs for the current Reporting Period (if any). BC <sub>n</sub> may only be a positive number.
	ER <sub>n-1</sub>	means the Estimated Revenue for the preceding Reporting Period("n-1") (if any), provided such Reporting Period occurs after the ERMA Start Date. ER <sub>n-1</sub> may only be a positive number.
	PFP may be a positive or negative number.	
<b>PBCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Budgeted Capex for the current Reporting Period (if any). PBCP may only be a positive number.	
<b>PADJ</b>	<p>means:</p> <p>(a) in relation to the second and third Reporting Periods during the term of the ERMA, an EMA Periodic Adjustment Payment; or</p> <p>(b) in relation to all other Reporting Periods during the term of the ERMA, any Periodic Adjustment,</p> <p>to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. PADJ may be a positive or negative number.</p>	
<b>WCP</b>	means any Working Capital Payment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. WCP may only be a positive number.	
<b>WCR</b>	means any Working Capital Repayment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. WCR may only be a positive number.	
<b>AADJ</b>	means any Annual Adjustment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. AADJ may be a positive or negative number.	
<b>FFPBF</b>	<p>means:</p> <p>(a) in relation to the Payment Date following the calculation of the Fixed Fee for the first Franchisee Year during the term of the ERMA and the Performance Based Fee for the relevant Franchisee Year the Fixed Fee for the first Franchisee Year during the term of the ERMA, determined in accordance with paragraph 15.1 of this Schedule 8.1A and the Performance Based Fee for the relevant Franchisee Year calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1B (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>) to be paid on the first Payment Date following the determination of the Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee in accordance with paragraph 15 (<i>Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee</i>) of this Schedule 8.1A, which the Parties acknowledge may be after the expiry of the term of the ERMA; or</p> <p>(b) in relation to the Payment Date following the calculation of the Fixed Fee for the second Franchisee Year during the term of the ERMA including any Extended Term and the Performance Based Fee for the relevant Franchisee Year, the Fixed Fee for the second Franchisee Year including any relevant Extended Term determined in accordance with paragraph 15.1 of this</p>	

	<p>Schedule 8.1A and the Performance Based Fee for the relevant Franchisee Year calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1B (<i>Performance Based Fee</i>) to be paid on the first Payment Date following the determination of the Fixed Fee for the second Franchisee Year including any relevant Extended Term and the Performance Based Fee for the relevant Franchisee Year in accordance with paragraph 15 (<i>Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee</i>) of this Schedule 8.1A, which the Parties acknowledge shall be no earlier than the release of the Annual Audited Accounts for Franchisee Year 2021-2022, unless the Secretary of State decides (in the Secretary of State's sole discretion) that Final Accounts shall also be used for the determination, and in each instance, may be after the expiry of the term of the ERMA;</p> <p>(c) in relation to any other Payment Date, zero.</p> <p>Subject to paragraph 15.2 of this Schedule 8.1A, for the purposes of paragraph (a) above FFPBF may only be a positive number.</p>
<b>FWCA</b>	means the Final Working Capital Adjustment to be made in the Reporting Period immediately following the expiry of the term of the ERMA. FWCA may be a positive or negative number.
<b>RCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Residual Components for the preceding Reporting Period. RCP may be a positive or negative number.
<b>EMA MFPP</b>	<p>means:</p> <p>(a) in relation to the first Payment Date following:</p> <p>(i) the receipt by the Secretary of State of the relevant Audited Accounts Reconciliation and other relevant financial information provided in accordance with paragraph 9.4 of Schedule 11.2 covering the period 1 March 2020 to the end of the EMA Term; and</p> <p>(ii) the determination of the Management Fee and Performance Payment in accordance with Paragraph 11 of Schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments),</p> <p>the Management Fee and Performance Payment, determined in accordance with paragraph 11.1 of Schedule 8.A (Franchise Payments) of the EMA (and, subject to paragraph 11.2 of schedule 8.A of the EMA, EMA MFPP may only be a positive number); or</p> <p>(b) in relation to any other Payment Date, zero.</p>

#### 1.4 The Parties agree that:

- 1.4.1 where £FP or £FFP is a positive number, the Secretary of State shall pay that amount to the Franchisee on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period (or, in the case of the

first Reporting Period following the ERMA Start Date, as soon as reasonably practicable);

1.4.2 where £FP or £FFP is a negative number, the Franchisee shall pay the corresponding positive amount to the Secretary of State on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period (or, in the case of the first Reporting Period following the ERMA Start Date, as soon as reasonably practicable); and

1.4.3 where £FP or £FFP is zero, neither Party shall make a payment to the other Party on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period.

## **2 Payment of Franchise Payments**

2.1 The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee, no less than seven days prior to the start of each Reporting Period (or, in the case of the first Reporting Period following the ERMA Start Date, as soon as reasonably practicable), of the amount of the Franchise Payment payable in respect of that Reporting Period.

2.2 Each such notification shall set out in reasonable detail how the Franchise Payment has been calculated.

2.3 The Payment Date for a Reporting Period shall be the first Weekday of that Reporting Period (or, in the case of the first Reporting Period following the ERMA Start Date, as soon as reasonably practicable).

2.4 Each Franchise Payment shall be payable by the Franchisee or, as the case may be, the Secretary of State in the amount notified by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 2.1 of this Schedule 8.1A on the Payment Date of the Reporting Period to which it relates (or, in the case of the first Reporting Period following the ERMA Start Date, as soon as reasonably practicable).

2.5 Each Franchise Payment shall be made:

(a) by automatic electronic funds transfer in pounds sterling to such bank account in the United Kingdom as the payee of such payment may have previously specified to the payer in writing; and

(b) so that cleared funds are received in that account on or before the due date for payment.

## **3 Interest**

If:

(a) the Franchisee fails to pay any amount to the Secretary of State on its due date; or

(b) the Secretary of State fails to pay to the Franchisee the Franchise Payment on its due date,

that Party which has failed to pay shall in addition pay interest on such amount at the Interest Rate, calculated on a daily basis, from the due date for payment to the date on which payment is made.

## **4 Disputes under Schedule 8**

If either the Franchisee or the Secretary of State disputes the amount of a Franchise Payment, the dispute shall, unless the Franchisee and the Secretary of State otherwise agree, be resolved in accordance with the provisions of Clause 17 (*Governing Law and Jurisdiction*) of the

Franchise Agreement. Any such dispute shall not affect the obligation of either Party to pay a Franchise Payment notified in accordance with this Schedule 8.1A.

## 5 Not Used

## 6 No Double Recovery

6.1 Neither Party shall be entitled to recover (by way of an adjustment to Franchise Payments or otherwise) more than once in respect of the same amount. In particular:

6.1.1 no amount shall be categorised as both Capital Expenditure and as a Cost for the purpose of this Schedule 8.1A, or inconsistently with the accounting treatment assumed for the same capital expenditure in calculating the Franchise Payments under the Franchise Agreement prior to and after the implementation of the EMA and the ERMA; and

6.1.2 neither Party shall be entitled to recover pursuant to the terms of the ERMA a sum that has already been recovered pursuant to the terms of the EMA and *vice versa*.

6.2 In the event that the Franchisee is successful in obtaining any governmental support or support from any local authority or other such body that is offered in relation to the impact of and/or recovery from the impacts of COVID-19, this shall be taken into account in relation to the relevant payment and adjustments in this Schedule 8.1A such that the Franchisee does not benefit from double recovery or double counting.

## 7 Force Majeure and Payments

Following the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event, the payment of Franchise Payments shall continue to be calculated in accordance with this Schedule 8.1A and the payment of such Franchise Payments shall continue unaffected.

## 8 Revisions to the Budget

8.1 Without limiting the requirement for any other meeting, the Parties shall, subject to paragraph 9.14 of this Schedule 8.1A, hold a forecast Budget review meeting at least once in each Quarter (a "**Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting**") at a time and location notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State following provision of the information referred to in paragraph 8.2 of this Schedule 8.1A. The purpose of the meeting shall be to review and seek to agree:

- (a) revisions (if any) to the Budget for the remaining Reporting Periods of the Budget, including inserting such additional information as may be required in relation to the period of any possible Extended Term;
- (b) the content of any necessary or desirable corresponding addendum to the Supporting Materials;
- (c) whether and (if applicable) the extent to which the provisions of Schedule 9.1 (*Financial and Other Consequences of Change*) apply to any such revisions agreed in accordance with this paragraph 8.1 of this Schedule 8.1A;
- (d) any new contracts with an Affiliate which the Franchisee proposes to enter into or renew, any existing contracts with an Affiliate which the Franchisee proposes to amend or extend and details of any contract procurement process (pursuant to which the Franchisee proposes to enter into a contract with the successful bidder) in which the Franchisee reasonably expects an Affiliate to participate; and

- (e) whether any adjustment to the value(s) of Base Cash Position, Ceiling Cash Position and/or Floor Cash Position is necessary.

The Franchisee shall ensure that the representatives of the Franchisee at the Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting shall include the Finance Director of the Franchisee or a suitable representative of the Finance Director as may reasonably be approved for this purpose by the Secretary of State.

- 8.2** The Franchisee shall, prior to the date of each Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting provide to the Secretary of State the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.3 (*Quarterly Financial Information*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*), together with a draft periodic budget prepared using the cost and revenue categories within (and to the same level of disaggregation at) the "P&L2" tab of the Financial Model, updated to reflect Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenues as reflected in the latest Management Accounts and revised Budgeted Costs and Budgeted Capex and Estimated Revenue (or EMA Estimated Revenue, as applicable) for the period to which such forecast relates, in accordance with the timescales set out therein, and shall provide the Secretary of State with all further information as the Secretary of State may request from time to time for the purposes of the operation of this paragraph 8.2, within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for that purpose (and this paragraph 8 shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).
- 8.3** If the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraphs 8.1(a) to 8.1(e) of this Schedule 8.1A at the relevant Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine such matters.
- 8.4** Such revisions to the Budget and addenda to the Supporting Materials as agreed or determined shall take effect from the first day of the Reporting Period immediately following the date on which the Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting (at which such matters were discussed) took place, provided that, if such revisions or addenda are not agreed by the first day of that Reporting Period, the relevant revisions and addenda shall take effect from the first day of the Reporting Period which falls at least 10 Weekdays after those revisions and addenda are agreed or determined.
- 8.5** Each revision to the Budget and/or addendum to the Supporting Materials shall (unless the Parties otherwise agree):
  - 8.5.1** adopt the same format and structure as the original version in agreed terms (or where the preceding version has included any changes from that format and structure expressly agreed by the Parties for this purpose) from the preceding version;
  - 8.5.2** make no assumptions or include any costs, revenue or other adjustments which are not consistent with the definitions of Costs, Capital Expenditure and Revenue or which represent Disallowable Costs or Revenue Foregone or liabilities in respect of SoS Claims (except as may be otherwise expressly agreed by the Parties for that purpose);
  - 8.5.3** adopt the same accounting principles and standards as the original version (as these may be expressly varied by agreement between the Parties for this purpose or, in the case of accounting standards, as these may be reasonably revised by the Secretary of State to take account of changes to GAAP in the United Kingdom); and



- 8.5.4** otherwise facilitate easy comparison with the definitions of Costs, Capital Expenditure, Revenue, Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone and with the information reported in the Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts, the Annual Audited Accounts and the Final Accounts.
- 8.6** Each time it is agreed or determined that the Budget is to be revised and/or an addendum is to be added to the Supporting Materials, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to:
- 8.6.1** make the agreed or determined revisions to the Budget and/or Supporting Materials (or procure this is done on the Secretary of State's behalf) and provide copies of those revised documents to the Franchisee; or
- 8.6.2** require the Franchisee to provide the agreed or determined revisions to the Budget and/or Supporting Materials for approval by the Secretary of State, which the Franchisee shall do and provide revised versions to the Secretary of State within such time as the Secretary of State shall specify for this purpose.
- 8.7** The Franchisee shall not enter into any contract or arrangement with an Affiliate (including entering into a new contract or arrangement and/or renewing or amending an existing contract or arrangement) unless:
- 8.7.1** the Secretary of State has, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion (and for this purpose Clause 6.4 of the Franchise Agreement shall not apply) first consented to the terms of such contract and to it being entered into on those terms (which shall be at least as favourable to the Franchisee as terms on an arm's length basis), whether at or following a Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting (where such contract forms part of the agenda for that meeting) or otherwise; and
- 8.7.2** the Franchisee has procured that any such contract or arrangement which has a term that is longer than seven Reporting Periods and/or which may extend beyond the ERMA Term or Extended Term is capable of being terminated in accordance with its terms upon the expiry of the ERMA Term or Extended Term such that the Franchisee shall not incur any liability or be required to make any termination payment to the relevant Affiliate if the Franchisee elects or is directed by the Secretary of State to exercise any such termination right in accordance with the terms of the relevant contract.
- 8.8** The Secretary of State may direct the Franchisee to re-procure (in accordance with the terms of such contract or arrangement) any:
- 8.8.1** contract or arrangement with an Affiliate that was entered into on or after the ERMA Start Date that has been entered into in breach of paragraph 8.7 above of this Schedule 8.1A;
- 8.8.2** contract or arrangement with an Affiliate that was entered into on or after the ERMA Start Date where the Secretary of State has directed the Franchisee to exercise the termination right outlined in paragraph 8.7.2 above of this Schedule 8.1A; or
- 8.8.3** contract or arrangement with an Affiliate that was entered into prior to the ERMA Start Date which has a remaining term that is longer than seven Reporting Periods as at the ERMA Start Date and/or which may extend beyond the ERMA Term or Extended Term, provided that the relevant contract is capable of being terminated by the Franchisee in accordance with its terms to allow the Franchisee to undertake such re-procurement without the Franchisee being in breach of the terms of such contract or incurring any liability or being required to make any termination payment to the relevant Affiliate.

- 8.9** For the purpose of this paragraph 8, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to consider any information provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee and any other sources of information which the Secretary of State considers to be relevant and the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request such information from the Franchisee as the Secretary of State requires in connection with the matters referred to in this paragraph 8. Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, in considering any revisions to the Budget, regard shall be had to the definitions of Costs, Revenue, Capital Expenditure, Good and Efficient Operator, Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone, so as to ensure that the revisions to the Budget are consistent with those definitions.
- 8.10** Subject to the Secretary of State's rights set out in paragraph 8.7 of this Schedule 8.1A, the Parties shall at all times act in good faith, reasonably and in a timely manner in the interpretation and application of the provisions for agreeing revisions to the Budget and any addendum to the Supporting Materials.

## **9 Review of Franchisee's performance against Budget**

### **Finance Review Meeting**

- 9.1** Without limiting the requirement for any other meeting, the Parties shall, subject to paragraph 9.14 of this Schedule 8.1A, hold a finance review meeting in every Reporting Period ("**Periodic Finance Review Meeting**") at such time(s) and location(s) notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State following the provision of the information referred to in paragraph 9.2 of this Schedule 8.1A and:

- 9.1.1** the purpose of the Periodic Finance Review Meeting shall be to review the financial performance of the Franchisee. This shall include:
- (i) a review and discussion of variances arising in the preceding Reporting Period between Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenue, and Budgeted Costs, Budgeted Capex and Estimated Revenue respectively, Actual Revenues to be received by the Franchisee and potential Revenue Foregone, and confirmation of the value of the Periodic Adjustment to be applied to the Franchise Payment to be paid in the Reporting Period following the Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place (or, in relation to the second and third Reporting Periods during the term of the ERMA, the EMA Periodic Adjustment Payment);
  - (ii) a review and discussion regarding any Actual Costs with respect to all payments made by the Franchisee under contracts or other arrangements with Affiliates (and any payments, costs or liabilities in connection with such contracts or arrangements which are not consistent with the Franchisee acting as a Good and Efficient Operator shall be Disallowable Costs);
  - (iii) a review of fees and payments (including bonuses) actually paid by the Franchisee to its directors and officers during the preceding Reporting Period as against the Budgeted Costs for such fees and payments as stated in the then current Budget;
  - (iv) a review and discussion of the Franchisee's management of its working capital and the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position for that Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place and any Working Capital Payment or Working Capital Repayment to be applied to the Franchisee

Payment to be paid in the Reporting Period following the Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place;

- (v) actions to be taken in respect of the Franchisee's financial performance;
- (vi) identification of any potential Non-Recoverable Costs, Disallowable Costs, Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims that may have been incurred within the preceding or current Reporting Period; and
- (vii) confirmation and valuation of any Disallowable Costs, Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 9.13 of this Schedule 8.1A, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable) which have been identified pursuant to sub-paragraph (vi) above in previous Periodic Finance Review Meetings;

**9.1.2** the Franchisee shall ensure that the representatives of the Franchisee at the meeting shall include the Finance Director of the Franchisee or a suitable representative of the Finance Director as may reasonably be approved for this purpose by the Secretary of State; and

**9.1.3** the Secretary of State shall ensure that the representatives of the Secretary of State shall include a senior civil servant where the confirmation and valuation of any Disallowable Costs, Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and/or SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 9.13 of this Schedule 8.1A, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable) are to be considered as part of any Periodic Finance Review Meeting,

and the purpose of the Periodic Finance Review Meeting held in the first Reporting Period of the term of the ERMA (the "**EMA Finance Review Meeting**") shall be to discuss the financial performance of the Franchisee during the final Reporting Period during the term of the EMA and for the purposes of the EMA Finance Review Meeting, references in paragraph 9.1.1 to "Actual Costs", "Actual Capex", "Actual Revenue", "Budgeted Costs", "Budgeted Capex", "Estimated Revenue", "Disallowable Costs", "Revenue Foregone" and "SoS Claims" shall be construed to be references to Actual EMA Costs, Actual EMA Capex, Actual EMA Revenue, Budgeted EMA Costs, Budgeted EMA Capex, EMA Estimated Revenue, EMA Disallowable Costs, EMA Revenue Foregone and EMA SoS Claims (respectively).

**9.2** The Franchisee shall, prior to the date of each Periodic Finance Review Meeting, provide to the Secretary of State the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) (or, in relation to the EMA Finance Review Meeting, the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the EMA) in relation to the previous Reporting Period together with a statement of the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to that Reporting Period, in accordance with the timescales set out therein, and shall provide the Secretary of State with all further information as the Secretary of State may request from time to time for the purposes of the operation of paragraph 9.1 of this Schedule 8.1A, within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for that purpose (and this paragraph 9 shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).

**9.3** The Secretary of State shall be entitled to consider any information provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee and any other sources of information which the Secretary of State considers to be relevant and the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request such information from the Franchisee as the Secretary of State requires for the purposes of the operation of this paragraph 9. The Franchisee shall provide the information within such time as the Secretary of

State may reasonably specify for the purpose (and this paragraph 9 shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).

**9.4** If, within 10 Weekdays following the relevant Periodic Finance Review Meeting:

**9.4.1** the Parties have failed to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 9.1.1(vii) of this Schedule 8.1A; and

**9.4.2** such matters either individually or in the aggregate exceed [REDACTED<sup>15</sup>],

then each Party shall respectively procure that such matter or matters (as the case may be) shall be escalated to any senior civil servant within the Department for Transport's Rail Group (excluding the Passenger Services Group) on behalf of the Secretary of State and any statutory director of any Affiliate of the Franchisee on behalf of the Franchisee. Those representatives shall meet at the earliest convenient time and in any event within 20 Weekdays of the date of the relevant Periodic Finance Review Meeting and negotiate in good faith and attempt to agree the relevant matters.

**9.5** If:

**9.5.1** the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 9.1.1 of this Schedule 8.1A at the relevant Periodic Finance Review Meeting, in circumstances where paragraph 9.4 of this Schedule 8.1A does not apply;

**9.5.2** the representatives of the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 9.1.1(vii) of this Schedule 8.1A within 10 Weekdays of first meeting to agree such matters in accordance with paragraph 9.4 of this Schedule 8.1A, in circumstances where that paragraph applies; or

**9.5.3** the Franchisee fails to provide the relevant information required pursuant to Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) (or, in relation to the EMA Finance Review Meeting, the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the EMA, in accordance with the timescales set out therein, or otherwise in accordance with this paragraph 9,

the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the relevant matters in accordance with this paragraph 9 and all other applicable provisions of this Schedule 8.1A but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

#### **Accrued Disallowable Costs, Accrued Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims**

**9.6** Without prejudice to paragraphs 9.3 to 9.5 of this Schedule 8.1A, if subsequent to any Periodic Finance Review Meeting, the Secretary of State later identifies any item (applicable to that period to which the relevant Periodic Finance Review Meeting relates) which the Secretary of State considers is or may be a Disallowable Cost or an instance of Revenue Foregone or any SoS Claims (whether following a review of the Franchisee's Annual Audited Accounts, Final Accounts or otherwise) the Secretary of State shall within 28 days of identifying such item be entitled to:

**9.6.1** notify the Franchisee in writing, identifying the item concerned; and

---

<sup>15</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- 9.6.2 request further information from the Franchisee in connection with the item for the purposes of the operation of this paragraph 9.6 and paragraphs 9.7 to 9.9 of this Schedule 8.1A. The Franchisee shall provide the information within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for the purpose.
- 9.7 The Parties shall seek to agree the value of any Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Foregone and/or any SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 9.13 of this Schedule 8.1A, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable) identified by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 9.6 of this Schedule 8.1A within 20 Weekdays of the later of the Secretary of State's notice referred to in paragraph 9.6.1 of this Schedule 8.1A and the date specified by the Secretary of State for the delivery of further information in accordance with paragraph 9.6.2 (the "**Escalation Trigger Date**").
- 9.8 If:
- 9.8.1 the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 9.7 of this Schedule 8.1A; and
- 9.8.2 such matters either individually or in the aggregate exceed **[REDACTED<sup>16</sup>]**; then each Party shall respectively procure that such matter or matters (as the case may be) shall be escalated to any senior civil servant within the Department for Transport's Rail Group (excluding the Passenger Services Group) on behalf of the Secretary of State and any statutory director of the Franchisee or any Affiliate of the Franchisee on behalf of the Franchisee. Those representatives shall meet at the earliest convenient time and in any event within 20 Weekdays of the Escalation Trigger Date, negotiate in good faith and attempt to agree the relevant matters.
- 9.9 If:
- 9.9.1 the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 9.7 in circumstances where paragraph 9.8 does not apply;
- 9.9.2 the representatives of the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 9.7 within 10 Weekdays of first meeting to agree such matters in accordance with paragraph 9.8 or the Parties fail to meet to attempt to agree the relevant matters, in circumstances where that paragraph applies; or
- 9.9.3 the Franchisee fails to provide the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.6.2 in accordance with the specified timescales, then
- the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the value of any Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Foregone and/or any SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 9.13, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable).
- 9.10 The value of any Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Foregone and/or any SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 9.13, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts as applicable) as agreed or determined whether pursuant to paragraph 9.4, paragraph 9.5, paragraph 9.8, paragraph 9.9 or paragraph 9.13 shall be referred to as "**Accrued Disallowable Costs**" and "**Accrued Revenue Foregone**" and "**Accrued Claims**" (as applicable).
- 9.11 Subject to paragraph 9.12, the value of any Accrued Disallowable Costs and/or Accrued Revenue Foregone and/or Accrued Claims on each occasion accumulated pursuant to

---

<sup>16</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

paragraph 9.10 shall be aggregated with the total of all Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims which have been previously accumulated, such aggregated value from time to time being the "**Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities**".

**9.12** The value of the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities shall be limited to:

**9.12.1** in the event that there has been no extension to the term of the ERMA, the sum of:

- (i) the Fixed Fee payable for the Reporting Periods in that Franchisee Year (which shall take account of any early expiry or termination of the ERMA) calculated pursuant to paragraph 15.1;
- (ii) the maximum potential Performance Based Fees for the PBF Assessment Periods in that Franchise Year calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*); and
- (iii) any remaining amounts as a debt from the Franchisee which the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim in accordance with the Funding Deed or the Performance Bond on expiry or termination of this Franchise Agreement; or

**9.12.2** in the event that there has been an extension to the term of the ERMA, the sum of:

- (i) the Fixed Fee payable for the Reporting Periods in that Franchisee Year calculated pursuant to paragraph 15.1;
- (ii) the maximum potential Performance Based Fees for the PBF Assessment Periods in that Franchise Year calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*); and
- (iii) any remaining amounts as a debt from the Franchisee which the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim in accordance with the Funding Deed or the Performance Bond on expiry or termination of this Franchise Agreement.

**9.13** If any SoS Claim is a contingent or unliquidated claim (a "**Contingent SoS Claim**"), the Parties shall, pursuant to paragraph 9.4, paragraph 9.7 or paragraph 9.8 (as applicable) seek to agree (or in the absence of agreement, the Secretary of State may for the purposes of paragraph 9.5 and shall for the purposes of paragraph 9.9, reasonably determine) an initial value for such Contingent SoS Claim (the "**Initial SoS Claim Amount**") and the Initial SoS Claim Amount shall be deemed to be an Accrued Claim for the purposes of paragraph 9.10. If the value of Contingent SoS Claim once fully liquidated (that is, being agreed or determined through dispute resolution) is:

**9.13.1** in excess of the Initial SoS Claim Amount, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim such amount in excess of the Initial SoS Claim Amount from the Franchisee:

- (i) as an adjustment to the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities to be applied against the calculation of FFPBF, where Franchise Payments in favour of the Secretary of State remain to be paid after the date on which the Contingent SoS Claim has become fully liquidated; and/or
- (ii) as an adjustment to the Franchise Payment payable after the expiry of the term of the ERMA; and/or
- (iii) as a debt from the Franchisee which the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim in accordance with the Funding Deed or from the Performance Bond on expiry or termination of the Franchise Agreement; or



9.13.2 is less than the Initial SoS Claim Amount, the Secretary of State shall repay to the Franchisee the difference between the actual liquidated value of the relevant SoS Claim and the Initial SoS Claim Amount either:

- (i) as an adjustment to the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities to be applied against the calculation of FFPBF, where Franchise Payments remain to be paid after the date on which the Contingent SoS Claim has become fully liquidated; or
- (ii) where no Franchise Payment is payable after the date on which the Contingent SoS Claim becomes fully liquidated as a payment to the Franchisee.

9.14 The Secretary of State shall have the sole discretion (acting reasonably) to decrease (and subsequently increase) the required frequency of the Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meetings and/or the Periodic Finance Review Meetings, provided they shall be no more frequent than once a Reporting Period.

9.15 Any Quarterly Budget Forecast Review Meeting or Period Finance Review Meeting (or part thereof) may be held remotely with the prior agreement of the Parties.

**Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs**

9.16 If the value of any Disallowable Cost is agreed or determined pursuant to this paragraph 9, the Franchisee may (subject to the prior written consent of the Secretary of State) request that the Guarantor pay to the Franchisee within 10 Weekdays of receipt of such request a sum equal to the value as such Disallowable Cost (such sum, once paid to the Franchisee in accordance with this paragraph 9.16, being an “Unreimbursed Disallowable Cost”).

9.17 Paragraph 9.16 shall not apply in relation to Disallowable Costs specified in paragraph (e) or paragraph (k) of Appendix 1 (*Disallowable Costs*) to this Schedule 8.1A.

9.18 Any Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs shall be disregarded for the purposes of:

9.18.1 paragraph 1.17 (*Disallowable Costs*) of Schedule 10.2 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*); and

9.18.2 calculating any Costs for the purposes of any Franchise Payment.

**10 Periodic Adjustments**

10.1 The value of PADJ for the current Reporting Period ("n") (other than the second and third Reporting Periods during the term of the ERMA) shall be equal to the following

<b>PADJ for Reporting Period(n) =</b>	$(ACRP_{n-3} - BCRP_{n-3}) + (ACAP_{n-3} - BCAP_{n-3}) - (ARRP_{n-3} - ERRP_{n-3})$
---------------------------------------	---

Where:

<b>ACRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Actual Costs in the third preceding Reporting Period ("n-3") as set out in the Management Accounts for that preceding Reporting Period, provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the ERMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ACRP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
---------------------------	---

<b>BCRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Budgeted Costs in respect of the third preceding Reporting Period ("n-3") (based on the version of the Budget which applied for the purpose of the calculation of the Franchise Payment for that preceding Reporting Period (n-3)), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the ERMA Start Date shall be disregarded. BCRP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>ACAP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Actual Capex for the third preceding Reporting Period ("n-3"), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the ERMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ACAP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>BCAP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the Budgeted Capex in respect of the third preceding Reporting Period ("n-3") (based on the version of the Budget which applied for the purpose of the calculation of the Franchise Payment for that preceding Reporting Period (n-3)), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the ERMA Start Date shall be disregarded. BCAP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>ARRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Actual Revenue for the third preceding Reporting Period ("n-3"), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the ERMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ARRP may only be a positive number.
<b>ERRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Estimated Revenue in respect of the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the ERMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ERRP may only be a positive number.

- 10.2** The value of PADJ in respect of a Reporting Period (other than the second and third Reporting Periods during the term of the ERMA) shall be made as an adjustment to the second Franchise Payment payable after that calculation of PADJ is determined, provided that no such adjustment shall apply in respect of the first Reporting Period during the term of the ERMA (a "**Periodic Adjustment**"). A Periodic Adjustment shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3 of this Schedule 8.1A.
- 10.3** The Secretary of State agrees that, provided the Management Accounts (in a form consistent with the obligations of the Franchisee under Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*)) are received from the Franchisee within the timescale specified in paragraph 9.2(a) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*), the Secretary of State shall provide the Franchisee with the value of PADJ in sufficient time for the Periodic Adjustment to be included in the relevant Franchise Payment in accordance with paragraph 10.2 of this Schedule 8.1A above.
- 10.4** If the Franchisee fails to provide the Management Accounts in accordance with its obligations under Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*), the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of any Periodic Adjustment in accordance with this paragraph 10 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

## **11 Annual Adjustments**

- 11.1** AADJ shall be equal to the following:



<b>AADJ =</b>	$(\text{TotalAC} - \text{TotalAR}) + \text{TotalACAP} - (\text{TotalPFP} + \text{TotalPBCP}) - \text{TotalPADJ}$
---------------	--

Where, subject to paragraph 11.5 below:

<b>TotalAC</b>	means the total Actual Costs of the Franchisee for the relevant Franchisee Year as set out in the Annual Audited Accounts for the relevant Franchisee Year. TotalAC may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalAR</b>	means the total Actual Revenue for the relevant Franchisee Year as set out in the Annual Audited Accounts for the relevant Franchisee Year. TotalAR may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalACAP</b>	means the total Actual Capex for the relevant Franchisee Year as set out in the Annual Audited Accounts for the relevant Franchisee Year. TotalACAP may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalPFP</b>	means the total net value of the First Franchise Payment and all of the Periodic Franchise Payments paid to the Franchisee during the relevant Franchisee Year. TotalPFP may be positive or negative.
<b>TotalPBCP</b>	means the total net value of all of the FPBCP and the Periodic Budgeted Capex Payments paid to the Franchisee during the relevant Franchisee Year. TotalPBCP may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalPADJ</b>	means the total net value of PADJ paid in respect of each Reporting Period during the relevant Franchisee Year. TotalPADJ may be positive or negative.

- 11.2** The value of AADJ in respect of the relevant Franchisee Year (whether negative or positive) shall be made as an adjustment to the next Franchise Payment payable after the calculation of AADJ is determined (the "**Annual Adjustment**") and the Parties acknowledge this may be payable as part of the Franchise Payments following the completion of the term of the ERMA. The Annual Adjustment shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3 of this Schedule 8.1A.
- 11.3** If the Franchisee fails to provide the information required by paragraphs 9.4(b), 9.4(c) and 9.4A(m) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*), including Annual Audited Accounts, Final Accounts and the Audited Accounts Reconciliation by the date specified pursuant to that paragraph the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of any Annual Adjustment in accordance with this paragraph 11 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination, including any information contained in the latest cumulative, year to date Management Accounts or in the Annual Management Accounts.
- 11.4** The Parties agree that notwithstanding the provisions of the EMA, no EMA Final Adjustment shall be payable in respect of the term of the EMA and (unless otherwise so requested by the Secretary of State) the Franchisee shall not be required to provide the EMA Final Reviewed Accounts.

**11.5** The Secretary of State may, in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion, determine that the relevant information set out in the Final Accounts, as well as of the Annual Audited Accounts shall be used for the purposes of calculating the components of AADJ, as set out in this paragraph 11.

**12 Working Capital Payments**

**12.1** A Working Capital Payment shall become payable to the Franchisee as part of a Reporting Period’s Franchise Payment where the Forecast Closing Cash Position for the preceding Reporting Period is less than the Floor Cash Position. The value of the Working Capital Payment shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 12.3.

**12.2** The Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with a statement of the Franchisee’s Forecast Closing Cash Position prior to each Periodic Finance Review Meeting in accordance with paragraph 9.2.

**12.3** The Working Capital Payment, if payable in any Reporting Period, shall be equal to the following:

<b>WCP =</b>	BCP – FCCP
--------------	------------

**Where:**

<b>BCP</b>	the Base Cash Position.
<b>FCCP</b>	the Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to the preceding Reporting Period.

**12.4** If, during a Reporting Period, the Franchisee becomes aware that in its opinion (acting reasonably), prior to the payment of the Franchise Payment in respect of the following Reporting Period, the Franchisee’s available Cash Balance will be insufficient to meet its liabilities that will fall due prior to the payment of the Franchise Payment applicable to that Reporting Period (the **"Working Capital Shortfall"**), the Franchisee shall immediately:

**12.4.1** notify the Secretary of State that a Working Capital Shortfall is likely to occur during that Reporting Period;

**12.4.2** provide, in or with that notice, supporting information (including relevant accounts and calculations) evidencing the likely Working Capital Shortfall and the amount of additional working capital that the Franchisee considers it will require to ensure that the Working Capital Shortfall is remedied; and

**12.4.3** provide such further supporting information as the Secretary of State shall reasonably require.

**12.5** The Parties shall agree or (where the Parties fail to agree) the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amount required to remedy the Working Capital Shortfall (an **"Emergency Working Capital Payment"**) and when such Emergency Working Capital Payments are required to be paid for that purpose.

**12.6** The Secretary of State shall pay to the Franchisee any Emergency Working Capital Payment in accordance with the timescales agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 12.5 of this Schedule 8.1A.

- 12.7 If the Franchisee fails to provide any information required by this paragraph 12, or any information in accordance with its obligations in Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the amount of any Working Capital Payment or Emergency Working Capital Payment, the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of WCP in accordance with this paragraph 12 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.
- 12.8 The Secretary of State shall at any time on reasonable prior notice to the Franchisee be entitled to adjust the value of the Ceiling Cash Position, the Base Cash Position and/or the Floor Cash Position provided that the Secretary of State shall have first consulted the Franchisee as to any such adjustments as the Secretary of State is considering making.

**13 Working Capital Repayment**

- 13.1 A Working Capital Repayment shall become payable by the Franchisee as part of a Reporting Period's Franchise Payment where the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position in the preceding Reporting Period is greater than the Ceiling Cash Position. The value of the Working Capital Repayment shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 13.2 of this Schedule 8.1A.
- 13.2 A Working Capital Repayment, if payable in any Reporting Period, shall be equal to the following:

<b>WCR =</b>	FCCP – BCP
--------------	------------

Where:

<b>FCCP</b>	means the Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to the preceding Reporting Period.
<b>BCP</b>	means the Base Cash Position.

**14 Final Working Capital Adjustment**

- 14.1 The value of FWCA shall equal:

<b>FWCA =</b>	(TotalWCP – TotalWCR) + FWCP
---------------	------------------------------

Where:

<b>FWCP</b>	means an amount equal to the FWCP that was paid in the First Franchise Payment in accordance with paragraph 1.2 above.
<b>TotalWCP</b>	means the aggregate of all Working Capital Payments, EMA Working Capital Payments, Emergency Working Capital Payments and EMA Emergency Working Capital Payments paid to the Franchisee during the term of the ERMA and the EMA (as applicable).
<b>TotalWCR</b>	means the aggregate of all Working Capital Repayments and EMA Working Capital Repayments paid by the Franchisee during the term of the ERMA and the EMA (as applicable).

**14.2** The value of FWCA shall be payable as an adjustment to the Franchise Payment payable in the Reporting Period immediately following the expiry of the term of the ERMA. FWCA may be positive or negative.

**14.3** If the Franchisee fails to provide any information in accordance with its obligations in Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to enable the Secretary of State to calculate any Working Capital Repayment, EMA Working Capital Repayment or the Final Working Capital Adjustment, the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of WCR, EWCR or FWCA (as the case may be) in accordance with this paragraph 14 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

**15 Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee**

**15.1** Subject to paragraphs 15.2 to 15.4 (inclusive), the value of FFPBF shall equal:

FFPBF =	(FF+PBF) – ACRL
---------	-----------------

Where, subject to paragraph 15.5 below:

<b>FF</b>	means the Fixed Fee.
<b>PBF</b>	means the sum of all the Performance Based Fee for the PBF Assessment Periods in the relevant Franchisee Year calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1B ( <i>Performance Based Fee</i> ). PBF may only be a positive number.
<b>ACRL</b>	<p>Means, for the purposes of this paragraph 15, the sum of the total value of the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities in the relevant Franchisee Year:</p> <p>(d) calculated on the basis of the Franchisee's Audited Accounts Reconciliation and/or the Final Accounts, at the Secretary of State's sole discretion; and</p> <p>(e) as agreed or reasonably determined (in accordance with paragraphs 9.4 and 9.5 of this Schedule 8.1A) at the Payment Date for FFPBF pursuant to paragraph 15.3 of this Schedule 8.1A.</p> <p>ACRL may only be a positive number.</p>

**15.2** If the value of FFPBF is a negative amount:

**15.2.1** for the purposes of paragraph 1.2 of this Schedule 8.1A, FFPBF shall be deemed to equal zero; and

**15.2.2** the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim the value of FFPBF (expressed as a positive value) from the Franchisee as an adjustment to the Franchise Payment following determination of the amount of the relevant Franchise Payment.

**15.3** Subject to paragraph 15.4 of this Schedule 8.1A, the value of FFPBF may be made as an adjustment to the next Franchise Payment payable after:

**15.3.1** the value of the Performance Based Fee in relation to all PBF Assessment Periods in that Franchisee Year has been finally calculated pursuant to Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*); and

**15.3.2** the value of the Aggregate Costs and Revenue Liabilities have been agreed or determined for the purposes of this paragraph 15.

FFPBF shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3 of this Schedule 8.1A.

The Parties acknowledge that the adjustment referred to in this paragraph 15.3 may occur after the expiry of the term of the ERMA.

**15.4** Nothing in this paragraph 15 shall limit the rights and remedies of the Secretary of State in respect of any Disallowable Costs, Non-Recoverable Costs, Revenue Foregone and/or SoS Claims not taken into account in the calculation of ACRL. The Secretary of State's rights and remedies in respect of any Disallowable Costs, Non-Recoverable Costs, Revenue Foregone and/or SoS Claims not taken into account in the calculation of ACRL shall include claims pursuant to and in accordance with the Funding Deed and/or Performance Bond.

**15.5** The Secretary of State may, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, determine that the relevant information set out in the Final Accounts, as well as the Annual Audited Accounts or Audited Accounts Reconciliation, shall be used for the purposes of calculating the components of FFPBF, as set out in this paragraph 15.

## **16 Further Secretary of State's rights in relation to accounting matters**

**16.1** Where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that in calculating any matter which has an impact on the calculation of a Franchise Payment Component, any particular item or transaction has not been accounted for on a reasonable basis (including where the accounting treatment looks to the form rather than the substance of the item or transaction) and having regard to all circumstances, including GAAP (as may be amended from time to time), the Secretary of State shall be entitled to require it to be accounted for on such other basis as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine and notify to the Franchisee provided that the Secretary of State shall not be entitled pursuant to this paragraph to alter the accounting policies of the Franchisee from those set out in the Supporting Materials and applied through the Financial Model.

**16.2** Where the Annual Audited Accounts or Final Accounts are subject to adjustment or restatement, the Secretary of State shall have the sole discretion to require the recalculation of any affected Franchise Payment Component for the relevant Franchisee Year and to require that the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State the amount which is the difference between:

**16.2.1** any amount actually paid to the Secretary of State or adjusted in favour of the Secretary of State and the amount that would have been paid or adjusted had the affected Franchise Payment Component been originally calculated on the basis that such adjustment or revision was included in the Annual Audited Accounts or Final Accounts; and/or

**16.2.2** any amount actually paid by the Secretary of State or adjusted in favour of the Franchisee and the amount that would have been paid or adjusted had the affected Franchise Payment Component been originally calculated on the basis that such adjustment or revision was included in the Annual Audited Accounts or Final Accounts.

- 16.3** Any payment due to the Secretary of State shall be paid by the Franchisee within thirty (30) days of the Secretary of State notifying the Franchisee that the Secretary of State requires a payment to be made pursuant to this paragraph 16.

## **17 Indexation**

The Parties agree that the Franchise Payments and any sum shown in any Budget for any given Franchisee Year (or other period) shall not be subject to automatic indexation or adjustment to take into account the effect of inflation provided that this paragraph 17 is without prejudice to the adjustment of the Budget in accordance with paragraph 8 (*Revisions to the Budget*) of this Schedule 8.1A and/or the adjustment of the Franchise Payments in accordance with paragraph 10 (*Periodic Adjustments*) and paragraph 11 (*Annual Adjustments*) of this Schedule 8.1A.

## **18 Further obligations of the Franchisee**

- 18.1** Except to the extent otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall act as a Good and Efficient Operator in all respects in connection with the operation of this Schedule 8.1A and shall not act in a way that is contrary to the principles of the ERMA or the Franchise Agreement by using the existence or cessation of the ERMA to increase the profitability of the Franchisee.

- 18.2** The Franchisee warrants on a continuing basis and shall, if requested at any time by the Secretary of State, provide written confirmation from a statutory director of the Franchise confirming that the Franchisee is not (and, during the term of the ERMA, was not) party to any arrangement of any kind whatsoever (except if the Secretary of State provided prior written consent to such arrangement) under which:

**18.2.1** any amounts which the Franchisee might otherwise have received from a third party are reduced, waived or otherwise suppressed; and/or

**18.2.2** any amounts which the Franchisee might otherwise be properly obliged to pay or be liable are increased; and/or

**18.2.3** any amounts required to be paid or accounted for by the Franchisee become or are recorded as paid or accounted for during the term of the:

(i) ERMA, which might otherwise be paid or accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the ERMA; and/or

(ii) EMA, which might otherwise be paid or accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the EMA; and/or

**18.2.4** any amounts which the Franchisee might otherwise have received from a third party during the term of the:

(i) ERMA are recovered or accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the ERMA; and/or

(ii) EMA are recovered or accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the EMA; and/or

**18.2.5** Revenue and/or EMA Revenue is accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the:

(i) ERMA which should have been accounted for during the term of the ERMA; and/or

(ii) EMA which should have been accounted for during the term of the EMA.

**18.3** Without limiting any other constraints which operate by virtue of any other part of the Franchise Agreement or otherwise, no application shall be made or other step taken by or on behalf of the Franchisee in respect of the winding up or striking off of the Franchisee (or any similar or analogous process) and nor shall the Franchisee permit or facilitate the same:

**18.3.1** until all the adjustments and payments for which this Schedule 8.1A provides have been made and discharged in full; and/or

**18.3.2** without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

**18.4** The Secretary of State shall be entitled to notify the Franchisee of any future initiatives or proposals that the Secretary of State considers may have the potential to reduce certain Actual Costs below the applicable Budgeted Costs and the Franchisee shall, acting reasonably and in good faith, discuss with the Secretary of State all such matters as are relevant to the possible implementation of such initiatives.

**18.5** The Franchisee shall:

**18.5.1** upon the Secretary of State's direction, maintain an amount equal to the Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities in a separate bank account as the Secretary of State may nominate from time to time and the Franchisee shall secure the proceeds of any such account as chargor for the benefit of the Secretary of State as chargee under a relevant security agreement, as the Secretary of State may direct and to the Secretary of State's satisfaction; and

**18.5.2** within 10 Weekdays of the start of each Reporting Period, provide to the Secretary of State a written warranty from a Director that the value of the cash held in the account (if applicable) is equal to or more than the value of the Season Ticket Fare suspense liabilities, as reported to the Secretary of State in the previous Reporting Period.

## **19 Capex review**

**19.1** The Parties acknowledge and agree that:

**19.1.1** the provisions of paragraph 17 (*Capex Review*) of schedule 8.A (*Franchise Payments*) of the EMA shall not apply; and

**19.1.2** at the end of the term of the ERMA, the Secretary of State shall review the funding of capital expenditure assumed for the calculation of the contracted Annual Franchise Payments in the Financial Model that is Placed in Escrow. If the funding of such assumed capital expenditure through the Franchise Payments under Schedule 8.1 has been distorted by the implementation of the EMA and/or the ERMA, including by the implementation of the EMA and/or the ERMA in a part of a Franchisee Year in which the term of the EMA and/or the ERMA comes to an end, the Parties shall seek to agree an appropriate compensating amount. This amount may be payable either by the Secretary of State or by the Franchisee. In the event that this amount cannot be agreed, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amount and direction of this payment.



## Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1A Disallowable Costs

Any references in this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1A to costs, payments, expenses, fees, liabilities or other amounts shall be deemed to refer to Costs and/or Capital Expenditure as the context may require.

- (a) Any costs that were incurred otherwise than in accordance with those expected to be incurred by a Good and Efficient Operator. Variations between Actual Costs and Budgeted Costs and/or Actual Capex and Budgeted Capex (as the case may be) likely to be considered to be inconsistent with those expected of a Good and Efficient Operator include but are not limited to:
- (i) staff, director or officer costs in excess of the Budget (except where evidenced by the Franchisee as appropriate for delivery of the Franchise or of reasonable scale given the requirement for delivery of the Franchise, provided that any costs referred in to in paragraph (b) or paragraph (c) of this Appendix shall not in any circumstance be considered appropriate for the delivery of the Franchise or of a reasonable scale given the requirement for delivery of the Franchise);
  - (ii) costs that do not reflect the contracted position under existing contracts as at the EMA Start Date unless such change has been agreed by the Secretary of State (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed);
  - (iii) new contracts entered in to by the Franchisee which have not been procured in compliance with the Franchisee's usual procurement procedures;
  - (iv) variations to existing contracts which have not been made in accordance with the Franchisee's usual procurement procedures; or
  - (v) any Costs or Capital Expenditure where the Franchisee has been unable to provide evidence to the satisfaction of the Secretary of State that such costs or expenditure have been properly incurred and are consistent with the Franchisee acting as a Good and Efficient Operator.
- (b) Any bonuses, rewards or discretionary benefits paid to any staff, directors or officers under any schemes which have not previously been approved by the Secretary of State (in the Secretary of State's sole discretion) in writing.
- (c) Any expenses, disbursements or equivalent costs (to which the Franchisee's expenses policy would apply) which are incurred other than in compliance with the Franchisee's expenses policy.
- (d) Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Franchisee:
- (i) in relation to:
    - A.** developing any Remedial Plan put in place in respect of breaches which occurred on or after the EMA Start Date; or
    - B.** implementing any Remedial Plan put in place in respect of breaches which occurred on or after the EMA Start Date that:
      - I.** a Good and Efficient Operator would not have incurred; or
      - II.** are greater than the costs that the Franchisee would have incurred in connection with complying with the obligation to which the Remedial Plan relates had it acted as a Good and Efficient Operator prior to the implementation of the relevant Remedial Plan;



- (ii) in relation to Remedial Plans in respect of breaches which occurred prior to the EMA Start Date, cost in respect of implementing any such Remedial Plan unless such costs are specifically approved in writing by the Secretary of State; or
  - (iii) other costs in relation to Remedial Plans, NRPS Improvement Proposals or agreements unless such costs are specifically approved in writing by the Secretary of State;
  - (iv) in removing branding or Marks under paragraph 2.2 of Schedule 14.2 (*Maintenance of Operating Assets*) except for branding or Marks whose removal from particular assets the Secretary of State has explicitly agreed for the purpose of this provision should be an allowable cost;
  - (v) in relation to the inspection costs referred to in paragraph 6.4 of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*);
  - (vi) in meeting NS Groep N.V. and Mitsui & Co Ltd audit requirements to the extent these are additional to audit costs which would otherwise be incurred by the Franchisee; and/or
  - (vii) in relation to any reasonable enforcement costs incurred by the Secretary of State pursuant to Clause 14.7.
- (e) Any cost that the Franchisee may incur as a result of:
- (i) it failing to comply with its obligations under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement (including the grant thereof) save in respect of any failures which result from the Franchisee acting as a Good and Efficient Operator;
  - (ii) it failing to comply with its obligations under or in connection with any agreements which are ancillary to the Franchise Agreement save in respect of any failures which result from the Franchisee acting as a Good and Efficient Operator;
  - (iii) it failing to comply with any applicable Laws, if this gives rise to a criminal liability. Paragraph (a) above shall apply in respect of any other consequence of a failure by the Franchisee to comply with any applicable Laws; or
  - (iv) indemnifying the Secretary of State for any matter which the Franchisee is obliged to indemnify the Secretary of State pursuant to the Franchise Agreement or any agreements which are ancillary to the Franchise Agreement.
- (f) Any Facilitation Fee or Administration Fee pursuant to Clause 8 (*Change of Control and Facilitation Fee*).
- (g) Any costs incurred by the Franchisee arising out of or in connection with a lawful demand by the Secretary of State under the Performance Bond or Season Ticket Bond or under the Funding Deed or under the PCS Bond (as defined in the Funding Deed).
- (h) Any payments, costs or other liabilities owed to Affiliates save in respect of such payments costs or other liabilities which have been incurred by the Franchisee acting as a Good and Efficient Operator.
- (i) Costs of developing and protecting any intellectual property rights which are not owned by the Secretary of State or the Franchisee or are so owned, but where the costs are not ancillary to an activity included in the Budget.
- (j) Marketing or advertising costs incurred substantially to the benefit of wider group products or group brand recognition and which are not primarily for the benefit of Franchise Services.

- (k) Fines from government or regulatory bodies.
- (l) Costs of financial hedging, or gains/losses from hedging activity except with prior agreement from the Secretary of State or where such costs or gains/losses arise from the Franchisee's participation in an industry recognised hedging scheme or activity which has been agreed by the Secretary of State or which the Secretary of State reasonably considers have been made in good faith on an arm's length basis to any Affiliate in connection with fuel hedging instruments to help manage the exposure of the Franchisee to diesel fuel costs.
- (m) The amount by which the Purchase Price payable by the Franchisee to the successor operator under the Supplemental Agreement at the end of the Franchise Period is higher than it would have been but for the Franchisee:
  - (i) incurring Disallowable Costs; or
  - (ii) otherwise acting other than as Good and Efficient Operator.
- (n) Third party costs in relation to the development and preparation of any Remedial Plan or NRPS Improvement Proposal required by this Agreement, excluding such costs as approved by the Secretary of State, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, prior to such costs being incurred by the Franchisee.
- (o) The amount of any interest payable by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3 of this Schedule 8.1A.
- (p) Any costs incurred by the Franchisee in pursuing or defending any claim against the Secretary of State in respect of or in connection with the Franchise Agreement or otherwise.
- (q) Any costs incurred in relation to the period prior to the EMA Start Date which a Good and Efficient Operator would usually have discharged in the period prior to the EMA Start Date.
- (r) Any costs incurred in relation to the period prior to the expiry of the term of the ERMA which a Good and Efficient Operator would usually have discharged in the period following the expiry of the term of the ERMA.
- (s) Any costs incurred in relation to the discharge or carrying out of Committed Obligations which are in excess of the amounts a Good and Efficient Operator would ordinarily have expended on discharging the Committed Obligation in accordance with the contractual programme and to minimum specification contractually required.
- (t) Where costs are incurred during the term of the ERMA as the result of an obligation to incur expenditure from a fund required to be maintained pursuant to the Franchise Agreement (including, but not limited to, Minor Works and the CCI Amount), such expenditure shall be a Disallowable Cost except and to the extent that it relates to expenditure required to be incurred in relation to Franchisee Years beginning after 31 March 2020.

After the expiry of the ERMA, the Parties shall agree or the Secretary of State shall determine the remaining amounts in such funds with reference to the amounts available to be expended in the funds and the aggregate amount of expenditure incurred since the ERMA Start Date in relation to obligations related to those funds.
- (u) Interest paid or payable on PCS Advances (as defined in the Funding Deed).
- (v) Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld), any costs, charges, penalties, compensation or similar payments that the Franchisee may incur as a result of the termination of any contract or other arrangement.

- (w) Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State, losses on disposals of fixed or non-current assets.
- (x) Maintenance costs where the maintenance activity was previously scheduled to be undertaken prior to or after the term of the ERMA or where (and to the extent that) it would have been reasonable and/or prudent for the maintenance to have been carried out prior to or after the term of the ERMA.
- (y) Depreciation or Capital Expenditure to the extent that the capital cost of acquisition of the relevant assets was (or was assumed in the Financial Model) to be funded by a third party.
- (z) Costs of any audit pursuant to paragraph 9.7(b) or paragraph 9.9 of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).
- (aa) Legal, accountancy and other costs and expenses incurred in connection with the preparation and implementation of the ERMA (and any associated budgets, principles documents and other documents) and the EMA (and its associated heads of terms).
- (bb) Additional costs or expenses incurred by the Franchisee in procuring any new Performance Bond where required to do so pursuant to paragraph 4.3(c) of Schedule 12 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*).
- (cc) Costs incurred in relation to preparing and negotiating the direct award of a new contract to the Franchisee in relation to the Franchise.
- (dd) Compensating the Secretary of State for all reasonable costs incurred by the Secretary of State in carrying out enhanced monitoring of the Franchisee's performance of any relevant obligations pursuant to paragraph 7.1 of Schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for Remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*).
- (ee) Any costs incurred in connection with or otherwise attributable to discharging its obligations pursuant to Schedule 14 (*Preservation of Assets*) insofar as they relate to supporting the transfer of the franchise to a Successor Operator at the end of the Franchise Period.
- (ff) Any costs incurred in connection with discharging its obligations following termination in accordance with Schedule 15 (*Obligations Associated with Termination*).
- (gg) Any costs incurred in connection with conducting, or otherwise procuring, any surveys or statement of condition of leased property as may be required at the end of the Franchise Period in accordance with the terms of the relevant Property Lease and/or to otherwise establish the condition of any other asset at the end of the Franchise Period, except to the extent such survey is required to be carried out by the Franchisee to comply with paragraph 12.1 of Schedule 1.7 (*Stations*).
- (hh) Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, any costs incurred in connection with maintenance of the Franchisee's leased property and/or other assets (other than any lifecycle maintenance costs or costs incurred in ensuring the Standard of Repair is maintained in relation to the Stations pursuant to paragraph 2 of Schedule 1.7 (*Stations*)) if and to the extent that the aggregate of such costs exceeds one hundred and fifty per cent. (150 %) of maintenance costs incurred by the Franchisee in relation to such leased property and/or other assets (other than any lifecycle maintenance costs or costs incurred in ensuring the Standard of Repair is maintained in relation to the Stations pursuant to paragraph 2 of Schedule 1.7 (*Stations*)) in the Franchisee Year ending on 31 March 2020.

- (ii) Any lifecycle maintenance costs (other than lifecycle maintenance costs incurred in ensuring the Standard of Repair is maintained in relation to the Stations pursuant to paragraph 2 of Schedule 1.7 (*Stations*)) in respect of any leased property or other assets which the Secretary of State reasonably considers should have been incurred in the period prior to 1 March 2020.
- (jj) Any sums payable by the Franchisee to the Lessor (as defined in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*)) to the ERMA in respect of any Rolling Stock Dilapidations Liability (as defined in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*)) to the ERMA
- (kk) Any costs incurred in connection with ensuring the Standard of Repair is maintained in relation to the Stations pursuant to paragraph 2 of Schedule 1.7 (*Stations*), such costs to exclude the deposits into the Station Condition Account pursuant to paragraph 3 of Schedule 1.7 (*Stations*).
- (ll) Any legal, accountancy and other costs and expenses incurred in connection with determining or agreeing the Termination Sum, the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Updated Net Assets Amount and/or the Net Assets Reconciliation Amount, as applicable (and any associated models and other documents).
- (mm) Any costs incurred in relation to preparing, determining or agreeing any statements or amounts in connection with schedule 3 (*Early ERMA Termination*) to the ERMA.

### APPENDIX 2 TO SCHEDULE 8.1A EMA Periodic Adjustment Payment

The EMA Periodic Adjustment Payment shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula.

EMAPADJ for Reporting Period(n) =	$(AECRP_{n-3} - BECRP_{n-3}) + (AECAP_{n-3} - BECAP_{n-3}) - (AERRP_{n-3} - EERRP_{n-3})$
-----------------------------------	---

Where:

<b>AECRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Actual EMA Costs in the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3) as set out in the Management Accounts for that preceding Reporting Period. ACRP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>BECP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Budgeted EMA Costs in respect of the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3) based on the version of the EMA Budget which applied for the purpose of the calculation of the Franchise Payment for that preceding Reporting Period. BCRP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>AECAP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Actual EMA Capex for the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3). ACAP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>BECAP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the Budgeted EMA Capex in respect of the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3) based on the version of the EMA Budget which applied for the purpose of the calculation of the Franchise Payment for that Reporting Period. BCAP <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>AERRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Actual EMA Revenue for the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3). ARR <sub>n-3</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>EERRP<sub>n-3</sub></b>	means the total Estimated EMA Revenue in respect of the third preceding Reporting Period (n-3). ERRP may only be a positive number.

**Appendix 5 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*)**

**Schedule 8.1B**  
**Performance Based Fee**

**1 Definitions**

For the purposes of this Schedule 8.1B only, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings unless otherwise specified:

<b>"Amendable Financial Target"</b>	means a: (a) Target Cost; (b) Target Cost Cap; (c) Target Cost Floor; (d) Target Profit; (e) Target Profit Cap; and/or (f) Target Profit Floor, as the case may be;
<b>"Assumed Schedule of Contributions"</b>	means the schedule of contributions for a Franchise Section which as at the date of agreement or determination of the Target Cost Template or Target Profit Template (as applicable) applies for the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
<b>"Audited Accounts Reconciliation"</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 9.4(b)(ii) of Schedule 11.2 ( <i>Management Information</i> );
<b>"Budget Supporting Materials"</b>	means the supporting materials that were provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee in August and September 2020 in response to the Secretary of State's request for a budget forecast;
<b>"Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event"</b>	means: (a) in relation to a Target Cost, Target Cost Cap or Target Cost Floor an event listed in paragraph 1 ( <i>Target Cost Target Amendment Trigger Events</i> ) of Appendix 6 ( <i>Category A Target Amendment Trigger Events</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B; and (b) in relation to a Target Profit, Target Profit Cap or Target Profit Floor an event listed in paragraph 2 ( <i>Target Profit Target Amendment Trigger Events</i> ) of Appendix 6 ( <i>Category A Target Amendment Trigger Events</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Category B Target Amendment Trigger Event"</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 6.1.2 of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Category C Target Amendment Trigger Event"</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 6.1.3 of this Schedule 8.1B;

<b>"CB Components"</b>	means: (a) Network Rail Collaboration; (b) SoS Collaboration; and (c) Other Collaboration;
<b>"CE(NRPS)"</b>	means the element of the Customer Experience Fee that is calculated in accordance with the NRPS Methodology;
<b>"CE(SC)"</b>	means the element of the Customer Experience Fee that is calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology;
<b>"Collaborative Behaviour Fee" or "CB"</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the sum of: (a) Network Rail Collaboration; (b) SoS Collaboration; and (c) Other Collaboration;
<b>"Combined Scorecard/NRPS Methodology"</b>	means, in relation to the Customer Experience Fee, a combination of the Scorecard Methodology and the NRPS Methodology;
<b>"Cost Target Methodology"</b>	means the methodology set out in paragraph 4.3 ( <i>Calculation of FIN(CC)</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation"</b>	means guidance and/or regulation relating to COVID-19 as from time to time issued by the ORR, Public Health England or any other relevant government department, agencies or public bodies;
<b>"Customer Experience Component"</b>	means the NRPS Measures;
<b>"ERMA Evidence Report"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1 of Appendix 1 ( <i>PBF Assessment Period Review</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B (and <b>"ERMA Evidence Reports"</b> shall be construed accordingly);
<b>"Exceptional Event"</b>	means an event, the effect of which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), is that: (a) it would no longer be reasonably practicable to collect the data required to assess the Franchisee's performance against one or more of the QTM Targets in respect of a PBF Assessment Period; or (b) the degree of challenge involved in meeting any one or more of the QTM Targets is likely to be increased or decreased to such a significant extent that it would no longer be



	appropriate to assess the Franchisee's performance against such QTM Targets;
<b>"Final PBF Assessment Period"</b>	means the final PBF Assessment Period to occur during the term of the ERMA, being (subject to paragraph 7 ( <i>Effect of Extended Term and amendments to the PBF Assessment Period</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B) the PBF Assessment Period commencing on 1 April 2021 and ending at 01:59 on 19 September 2021
<b>"Financial Performance Fee" or "FIN"</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee, the purpose of which is to measure the Franchisee's effectiveness in controlling costs, and driving revenue growth (subject to the constraints of the Government's public health requirements) and deterring ticketless travel;
<b>"Financial Targets"</b>	means, as the case may be: (a) the Target Cost; and/or; (b) the Target Profit;
<b>"Initial PBF Assessment Period"</b>	means the PBF Assessment Period commencing on the ERMA Start Date and ending at 01:59 on 1 April 2021;
<b>"Maximum Performance Based Fee" or "MPBF"</b>	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 2 of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Network Rail Collaboration" or "NRC"</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee that relates to collaboration with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and industry bodies;
<b>"Notifying Party"</b>	means: (a) in relation to a Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event, either the Secretary of State or the Franchisee, as the case may be; (b) in relation to a Category B Target Amendment Trigger Event, the Franchisee; and (c) in relation to a Category C Target Amendment Trigger Event, the Secretary of State;
<b>"NRPS Methodology"</b>	means the methodology set out in paragraph 3.5 ( <i>Calculation of CE(NRPS)</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"NRPS Target"</b>	means the target, expressed as a range within which the Franchisee's performance is expected to fall, which applies to a NRPS Measure during the relevant PBF Assessment Period, as agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this Schedule 8.1B;

<b>"Other Collaboration" or "OC"</b>	means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to collaboration with applicable stakeholders, including those specified in paragraph 6.2 ( <i>Two (2): Acceptable</i> ) of Appendix 3 ( <i>Scorecard Criteria</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"PBF Assessment Period Review"</b>	means a review carried out (or to be carried out) with respect to a PBF Assessment Period in accordance with Appendix 1 ( <i>PBF Assessment Period Review</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist"</b>	means, in respect of a PBF Assessment Period Review, a checklist completed (or, as the case may be, to be completed) substantially in the form of that set out in Appendix 2 ( <i>PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting"</b>	means, in respect of a PBF Assessment Period Review, a meeting held between the Parties to discuss the performance of the Franchisee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
<b>"PBF Assessment Period Scorecard"</b>	means, in respect of a PBF Assessment Period, a scorecard completed (or, as the case may be, to be completed) by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 6 ( <i>PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring</i> ) of Appendix 1 ( <i>PBF Assessment Period Review</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"PBF Component"</b>	means each of the following components which shall be individually assessed to calculate the corresponding element of the PBF: (a) Operational Performance Fee; (b) Customer Experience Fee; (c) Financial Performance Fee; (d) Collaborative Behaviour Fee; and (e) any additional component to be implemented from time to time pursuant to paragraph 4.4.7 of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Primary Delay"</b>	means a delay that is attributed as "Primary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules;
<b>"Profit Target Methodology"</b>	means the methodology set out in paragraph 4.4 ( <i>Calculation of FIN(P)</i> ) of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"QTM Matters"</b>	has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.5.1 of this Schedule 8.1B;

"QTM PBF Components"	means each of the: (a) Operational Performance Fee; (b) Customer Experience Fee; and (c) Financial Performance Fee;
"QTM Targets"	means any: (a) OP Targets; (b) NRPS Targets; (c) <b>[Not used]</b> ; and/or (d) Financial Targets, as applicable;
"Quarterly Financial Information"	means the financial information provided by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 9.3 ( <i>Quarterly Financial Information</i> ) of Schedule 11.2 ( <i>Management Information</i> );
"Reactionary Delay"	means a delay that is attributed as "Reactionary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules;
"Relevant Threshold Amount"	means: (a) in relation to a Target Cost, the applicable non-indexed Threshold Amount multiplied by two; and (b) in relation to a Target Profit, an amount reasonably determined by the Secretary of State prior to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
"Revenue"	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 1A of Schedule 8.1A ( <i>Franchise Payments</i> );
"Scorecard Criterion"	means each criterion set out in Appendix 3 ( <i>Scorecard Criteria</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B, in respect of which the Franchisee's performance is measured (in whole or in part) in relation to a PBF Assessment Period and for which a score shall be awarded in the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard (and " <b>Scorecard Criteria</b> " means the plural of Scorecard Criterion);
"Scorecard Methodology"	means, in relation to a PBF Component, the methodology set out in Appendix 4 ( <i>Scorecard Methodology</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
"SoS Collaboration" or "SC"	means the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to collaboration with the Secretary of State;

<b>"Subsequent CE Methodologies"</b>	means, in relation to the Customer Experience Fee: (a) the Scorecard Methodology only; or (b) the Combined Scorecard/NRPS Methodology; (c) <b>[Not used]</b> ; (d) <b>[Not used]</b> ;
<b>"Subsequent FP Methodologies"</b>	means, in relation to the Financial Performance Fee: (a) the Scorecard Methodology as applied in whole or in part; and/or (b) the Cost Target Methodology; and/or (c) <b>[Not used]</b> (d) the Profit Target Methodology, and <b>"Subsequent FP Methodology"</b> shall be construed accordingly;
<b>"Subsequent PBF Assessment Period"</b>	means each PBF Assessment Period that falls after the end of the Initial PBF Assessment Period;
<b>"Target Amendment Trigger Event"</b>	means a: (a) Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event; (b) Category B Target Amendment Trigger Event; or (c) Category C Target Amendment Trigger Event, as the case may be;
<b>"Target Cost Cap" or "TCC"</b>	means the value in relation to the Target Cost agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 5.1 ( <i>Target Cost</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Target Cost Floor" or "TCF"</b>	means the value in relation to the Target Cost agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 5.1 ( <i>Target Cost</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Target Profit Cap" or "TPC"</b>	means the value in relation to the Target Profit agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 5.2 ( <i>Target Profit</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"Target Profit Floor" or "TPF"</b>	means the value in relation to the Target Profit agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 5.2 ( <i>Target Profit</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"W<sub>CB</sub>"</b>	means twenty-two point five per cent (22.5%), or such alternative percentage as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4.8 of this Schedule 8.1B;
<b>"W<sub>CC</sub>"</b>	means the weighting applied to the Cost Target Methodology pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 4.4.4 of this Schedule 8.1B;

"W <sub>CE</sub> "	means twenty-two point five per cent (22.5%), or such alternative percentage as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4.8 of this Schedule 8.1B;
"W <sub>CESC</sub> "	(a) in relation to the Initial PBF Assessment Period means one hundred per cent (100%); and (b) in relation to each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 3.3.1 of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
"W <sub>FIN</sub> "	means thirty per cent (30%), or such alternative percentage as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4.8 of this Schedule 8.1B;
"W <sub>NRPS</sub> "	has the meaning given to that term in paragraph 3.3.3 of Appendix 5 ( <i>Quantified Target Methodology</i> ) of this Schedule 8.1B;
"W <sub>OP</sub> "	means twenty-five per cent (25%), or such alternative percentage as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4.8 of this Schedule 8.1B;
"W <sub>P</sub> "	means the weighting applied to the Profit Target Methodology pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 4.4.4 of this Schedule 8.1B;

**2 Maximum Fee**

The Performance Based Fee attributable to any given PBF Assessment Period shall not exceed £M\*N (the "**Maximum Performance Based Fee**" or "**MPBF**"), where:

<b>M</b>	means [REDACTED <sup>17</sup> ]; and
<b>N</b>	means the number of Reporting Periods that fall within the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**3 Calculation of the Performance Based Fee for the Initial PBF Assessment Period**

**3.1** The Performance Based Fee in relation to the Initial PBF Assessment Period shall be calculated in accordance with this paragraph 3.

**3.2** The Performance Based Fee for the Initial PBF Assessment Period shall be calculated as the sum of the individual PBF Components calculated and weighted in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology in accordance with the following formula:

£PBF =	OP + CE + FIN + CB
--------	--------------------

<sup>17</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

where:

<b>£PBF</b>	shall have a value between zero and the Maximum Performance Based Fee in relation to the Initial PBF Assessment Period;
<b>OP</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number in relation to the Operational Performance Fee calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology;
<b>CE</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number in relation to the Customer Experience Fee calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology;
<b>FIN</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number in relation to the Financial Performance Fee calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology; and
<b>CB</b>	means the sum (in pounds sterling) that is zero or a positive number in relation to the Collaborative Behaviour Fee calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology.

#### 4 Calculation of the Performance Based Fee for each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period

- 4.1 Subject to the inclusion of any additional PBF Component(s) pursuant to paragraph 4.4.7 below, the Performance Based Fee for each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period shall be calculated as the sum of the individual PBF Components for that period assessed using the Quantified Target Methodology and/or the Scorecard Methodology (as applicable) in accordance with the following formula:

<b>£PBF =</b>	<b>OP + CE + FIN + CB</b>
---------------	---------------------------

where:

<b>£PBF</b>	shall have a value between zero and the Maximum Performance Based Fee in relation to the applicable PBF Assessment Period;
<b>OP</b>	means the sum in pounds sterling calculated in relation to the Operational Performance Fee in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology or the Quantified Target Methodology (as applicable during that PBF Assessment Period);
<b>CE</b>	means the sum in pounds sterling calculated in relation to the Customer Experience Fee in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology or the Quantified Target Methodology (as applicable during that PBF Assessment Period);
<b>FIN</b>	means the sum in pounds sterling calculated in relation to the Financial Performance Fee in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology or the Quantified Target Methodology (as applicable during that PBF Assessment Period); and;
<b>CB</b>	means the sum in pounds sterling calculated in relation to the Collaborative Behaviour Fee in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology.

**4.2** In relation to each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period:

**4.2.1** two months prior to the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee whether:

- (i) the Scorecard Methodology shall apply in relation to all of the PBF Components; or
- (ii) the Secretary of State is minded to apply the Quantified Target Methodology to one or more of the QTM PBF Components during that PBF Assessment Period,

and set out the information that the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to provide (and the date by when the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to provide such information) to enable the Parties to agree (or the Secretary of State to determine, as the case may be) the applicable matters set out in paragraph 4.4 below (a "**Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification**");

**4.2.2** after the Secretary of State issues a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification to the Franchisee, the Parties shall seek to agree the applicable matters set out in paragraph 4.4 below, each acting reasonably and in a timely manner. If, by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Parties have not agreed the matters set out in paragraph 4.4 below, the Secretary of State may:

- (i) reasonably determine such matters and notify the Franchisee accordingly prior to the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period; or
- (ii) in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, notify the Franchisee that the Scorecard Methodology will continue to apply to any or all of the QTM PBF Components; and

**4.2.3** the Collaborative Behaviour Fee shall be assessed in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology.

**4.3** If:

**4.3.1** the Secretary of State does not issue a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification to the Franchisee pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 4.2.1 above (and paragraph 7.4 below, if applicable), the Scorecard Methodology shall apply to each of the PBF Components during the relevant Subsequent PBF Assessment Period; and

**4.3.2** the Secretary of State issues a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification to the Franchisee which proposes that the Quantified Target Methodology shall apply to some (but not all) of the QTM PBF Components, the Scorecard Methodology shall continue to apply to each of the QTM PBF Components in relation to which the Secretary of State has not proposed to apply the Quantified Target Methodology.

**4.4** Not later than ten (10) Weekdays before the commencement of a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period in relation to which the Secretary of State has issued a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification to the Franchisee pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 4.2.1 above, the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner) as applicable:

- 4.4.1 whether the Quantified Target Methodology shall be applied to any or all of the QTM PBF Components;
- 4.4.2 in accordance with the provisions set out in paragraph 4.5 below, the OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels in respect of Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations, the NRPS Service Groups that apply, NRPS Targets and/or Improvement Plan Levels that shall apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- 4.4.3 which, if any, of the:
- (i) Subsequent CE Methodologies shall apply to the Customer Experience Fee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
  - (ii) Subsequent FP Methodologies shall apply to the Financial Performance Fee during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- 4.4.4 if more than one Subsequent FP Methodology applies to the Financial Performance Fee pursuant to paragraph 4.4.3(ii) above, the weighting to be applied to each Subsequent FP Methodology, provided that the sum of such weightings shall equal one hundred per cent (100%);
- 4.4.5 the terms of the Passenger Survey Methodology, based upon the template provided in Appendix 8 (Passenger Survey Methodology Template) which shall include:
- (i) the NRPS indicators which make up each NRPS Measure;
  - (ii) the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels for each NRPS Measure (including any NRPS Improvement Plan Levels which will be set at a Service Group level); and
  - (iii) the calculation of the NRPS Measure scores from the surveys, including how this will be calculated where there is reporting at a Service Group level;
- 4.4.6 any amendments to the Scorecard Criteria, which such amendments may amend, insert or remove requirements but shall not materially:
- (i) change the overall purpose of the relevant Scorecard Criterion; and/or
  - (ii) improve or impede the ability of the Franchisee (acting as a Good and Efficient Operator) to achieve any particular score in accordance with the Scorecard Criteria;
- 4.4.7 whether any additional PBF Components shall apply for the purposes of calculating the Performance Based Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, provided that the aggregate weighting to be applied to such additional PBF Component(s) ("**W<sub>ADD</sub>**") shall not exceed fifteen per cent (15%) and the aggregate weighting to be applied to the PBF Components shall equal one hundred per cent (100%) and the calculation of any additional PBF Component (or PBF Components) shall provide the Franchisee with an opportunity to earn an amount of Performance Based Fee in respect of such additional component (or such additional components in aggregate) in the relevant PBF Assessment Period of up to  $W_{ADD} * MPBF$ ;
- 4.4.8 any changes to the weightings  $W_{NR}$ ,  $W_{SOS}$  and/or  $W_{OTH}$ , provided that the sum of such weightings shall equal one hundred per cent (100%); and



- 4.4.9 any changes to the weightings  $W_{OP}$ ,  $W_{CE}$ ,  $W_{FIN}$  and/or  $W_{CB}$ , provided that such weightings shall not fall below the minimum value or exceed the maximum value specified in the table below.

PBF Component	Weighting	Minimum Weighting	Maximum Weighting
Operational Performance Fee	$W_{OP}$	17.5%	32.5%
Customer Experience Fee	$W_{CE}$	15%	30%
Financial Performance Fee	$W_{FIN}$	25%	40%
Collaborative Behaviour Fee	$W_{CB}$	15%	30%

- 4.5 If the Quantified Target Methodology applies to any of the QTM PBF Components during the relevant PBF Assessment Period:

- 4.5.1 the Parties shall seek to agree:

- (i) the OP Targets that shall apply with respect to each Operational Performance Component and the Breach Performance Levels and the Default Performance Levels that shall apply with respect to Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations, during each Reporting Period which falls during the Final PBF Assessment Period; and/or
- (ii) the NRPS Service Groups that apply, the NRPS Targets that shall apply with respect to each Customer Experience Component, and the Improvement Plan Levels that shall apply for each NRPS Measure in each NRPS Service Group during the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
- (iii) the Passenger Survey Methodology,  
(the "**QTM Matters**") as applicable (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner, and by no later than the date falling ten (10) Weekdays before the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period);

- 4.5.2 each OP Target and/or NRPS Target (as applicable) shall be expressed as a range within which the Franchisee's performance is expected to fall and shall be expressed substantively in the format set out in Appendix 7 to this Schedule 8.1B (*Pro Forma Target Tables*);

- 4.5.3 each Breach Performance Level and Default Performance Level shall be expressed as a number beneath which the Franchisee's performance is not expected to fall and shall be expressed substantively in the format set out in Appendix 7 to this Schedule 8.1B (*Pro Forma Target Tables*);

- 4.5.4 if the Parties have agreed any of the QTM Matters in accordance with paragraph 4.5.1 above, prior to the date falling ten (10) Weekdays before the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, then such agreed QTM Matters shall apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;

- 4.5.5** if the Parties have not agreed any of the QTM Matters in accordance with paragraph 4.5.1 above prior to the date falling ten (10) Weekdays before the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, then the Secretary of State shall:
- (i) either:
    - (a) reasonably determine the relevant QTM Matters (if such QTM Matters have not been agreed by the Parties pursuant to paragraph 4.5.3 above) that shall apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and/or
    - (b) in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, notify the Franchisee that the Scorecard Methodology will continue to apply to any or all of the QTM PBF Components; and
  - (ii) notify the Franchisee of such decision not later than the commencement of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, in which case (unless the Secretary of State has notified the Franchisee that the Scorecard Methodology will continue to apply to the QTM PBF Components pursuant to sub-paragraph (i)(b) above) the QTM Matters determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 4.5.5 shall apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- 4.5.6** the range for each OP Target, and/or NRPS Target (in each case, as applicable), agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 4.5 shall comprise a range or value (as applicable) that:
- (i) a competent Train Operator, acting efficiently, can reasonably be expected to achieve in the circumstances that are prevailing for the relevant PBF Assessment Period (and in relation to each OP Target, having regard to normal seasonal variability of operating performance); and
  - (ii) a high-performing Train Operator could have a realistic prospect of exceeding and would therefore attain the maximum possible amount of Performance Based Fee attributable to the relevant QTM PBF Component during the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and
- 4.5.7** the value of each:
- (i) Breach Performance Level agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 4.5 shall be set at a level that a competent Train Operator, acting efficiently, can reasonably be expected not to fall below (and in relation to each OP Target, having regard to normal seasonal variability of operating performance); and
  - (ii) Default Performance Level agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 4.5 shall be set at a level that affords a reasonable opportunity for a competent Train Operator, having performed worse than the Breach Performance Level, to implement any necessary remedial actions to avoid performance deteriorating to that Default Performance Level (in relation to each OP Target, having regard to normal seasonal variability of operating performance).

## 5 Financial Targets

### 5.1 Target Cost

5.1.1 If the Secretary of State notifies the Franchisee that the Secretary of State is minded to apply the Cost Target Methodology in relation to the Financial Performance Fee pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of this Schedule 8.1B, no later than five (5) Weekdays following receipt of the relevant Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a spreadsheet setting out the Franchisee's proposed Target Cost, with lines of forecast expenditure for each Reporting Period of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, in at least the level of disaggregation of the most disaggregated of:

- (i) the Financial Formats;
- (ii) the "P&L2" tab of the Financial Model;
- (iii) any set of Management Accounts for any period of the EMA or the ERMA; or
- (iv) any previous Audited Accounts Reconciliation,

(the "**Target Cost Template**"). The Target Cost Template shall allocate forecast expenditure consistently with the most disaggregated of the items listed in paragraphs (i) to (iv) above with no netting off between lines. Unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State the Target Cost Template shall assume that employer pension contributions payable to each Franchise Section are at the rate(s) and/or amount(s) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions for that Franchise Section for the relevant period.

5.1.2 Within five (5) Weekdays of delivering the Target Cost Template to the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a Target Cost Record of Assumptions which shall include the Franchisee's proposed Target Cost Cap and Target Cost Floor based on benchmarking evidence gathered by the Franchisee consistent with the principles set out in paragraphs 5.1.4(ii) and 5.1.5(ii) below.

5.1.3 The Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives) the Target Cost, Target Cost Cap and Target Cost Floor for the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

5.1.4 The Target Cost Cap shall be set at a value:

- (i) lower than the value of the Target Cost; and
- (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a highly efficient Train Operator would have a realistic prospect of achieving.

5.1.5 The Target Cost Floor shall be set at a value:

- (i) greater than the value of the Target Cost; and
- (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a broadly competent Train Operator would be likely to achieve or exceed.

- 5.1.6 Within five (5) Weekdays of the Target Cost Cap and the Target Cost Floor being agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 5, the Franchisee shall apply the Target Cost Cap and the Target Cost Floor to the Target Cost Template which shall then be Placed in Escrow.

## 5.2 Target Profit

- 5.2.1 If the Secretary of State notifies the Franchisee that the Secretary of State is minded to apply the Profit Target Methodology in relation to the Financial Performance Fee pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of this Schedule 8.1B, no later than five (5) Weekdays following receipt of the relevant Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a spreadsheet setting out the Franchisee's proposed Target Profit, with lines of forecast revenue and expenditure for each Reporting Period of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, in at least the level of disaggregation of the most disaggregated of:

- (i) the Financial Formats;
- (ii) the "P&L2" tab of the Financial Model;
- (iii) any set of Management Accounts for any period of the EMA or ERMA; or
- (iv) any previous Audited Accounts Reconciliation,

(the "**Target Profit Template**"). The Target Profit Template shall allocate forecast revenue and expenditure consistently with the most disaggregated of the items listed in paragraphs (i) to (iv) above with no netting off between lines. Unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State the Target Profit Template shall assume that employer pension contributions payable to each Franchise Section are at the rate(s) and/or amount(s) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions for that Franchise Section for the relevant period.

- 5.2.2 Within five (5) Weekdays of delivering the Target Profit Template to the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a Target Profit Record of Assumptions which shall include the Franchisee's proposed Target Profit Cap and Target Profit Floor based on benchmarking evidence gathered by the Franchisee consistent with the principles set out in paragraphs 5.25.2.4(ii) and 5.25.2.5(ii) below.

- 5.2.3 The Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives) the Target Profit, Target Profit Cap and Target Profit Floor for the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

- 5.2.4 The Target Profit Cap shall be set at a value:

- (i) greater than the value of the Target Profit; and
- (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a highly efficient Train Operator maximising its financial return would have a realistic prospect of achieving.

- 5.2.5 The Target Profit Floor shall be set at a value:

- (i) lower than the value of the Target Profit; and

- (ii) that the Parties agree (or, if the Parties are unable to agree such value by the date falling ten (10) Weekdays prior to the start of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine) that a broadly competent Train Operator would be likely to improve upon.

5.2.6 Within five (5) Weekdays of the Target Profit Cap and the Target Profit Floor being agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 5, the Franchisee shall apply the Target Profit Cap and the Target Profit Floor to the Target Profit Template which shall then be Placed in Escrow.

### 5.3 Continued application of Scorecard Methodology

If the Parties have not agreed (or, if applicable, the Secretary of State has not determined) any or all of the Target Cost, Target Cost Cap, Target Cost Floor, Target Profit, Target Profit Cap and/or Target Profit Floor in accordance with paragraph 5.1 (*Target Cost*) or 5.2 (*Target Profit*), as applicable, then the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee that the Scorecard Methodology shall continue to apply unaltered in relation to the Financial Performance Fee.

## 6 Target Amendments

6.1 The Secretary of State may amend any Amendable Financial Target (in each case a "**Performance Fee Target Amendment**") during the relevant PBF Assessment Period following the occurrence of:

6.1.1 a Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event which one Party has notified to the other;

6.1.2 an event that:

- (i) is outside the control of the Franchisee and its Affiliates;
- (ii) the Franchisee has notified to the Secretary of State; and
- (iii) the Secretary of State has agreed (acting reasonably) on the basis of evidence provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee has caused the applicable Amendable Financial Target to require amendment to ensure that the Franchisee is no more and no less likely to achieve the Amendable Financial Target than if such event had not occurred,

(a "**Category B Target Amendment Trigger Event**"); or

6.1.3 an event that:

- (i) was caused by the Secretary of State; or
- (ii) is outside the control of the Franchisee and its Affiliates; and
- (iii) in either case:
  - (a) the Secretary of State has notified to the Franchisee; and
  - (b) in the opinion of the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, has caused the applicable Amendable Financial Target to require amendment to ensure that the Franchisee is no more and no less likely to achieve the Amendable Financial Target than if such event had not occurred,

(a "**Category C Target Amendment Trigger Event**"),

which either the Parties have agreed or the Secretary of State has reasonably determined pursuant to paragraphs 6.4 to 6.6 below has caused one or more of the Amendable Financial Targets to require amendment by a net financial value (an "**Amendment Amount**") that is equal to or greater than the Relevant Threshold Amount.

- 6.2** The Notifying Party may notify the other Party of the occurrence of a Target Amendment Trigger Event (and, if the Notifying Party is the Franchisee, shall provide sufficient evidence to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the impact of the Target Amendment Trigger Event on the Amendable Financial Target(s)) at any time between the date falling twenty (20) Weekdays prior to the commencement of a PBF Assessment Period and the date falling twenty (20) Weekdays following the end of a PBF Assessment Period, provided that the Notifying Party shall notify the other Party no later than ten (10) Weekdays following the day on which:
- 6.2.1** the Target Amendment Trigger Event occurs; or
  - 6.2.2** the Franchisee ought reasonably to have become aware of the occurrence of such Target Amendment Trigger Event.
- 6.3** Within ten (10) Weekdays of the Secretary of State receiving a notice pursuant to paragraph 6.2 above, the Secretary of State shall issue a provisional notice to the Franchisee confirming whether in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) a Target Amendment Trigger Event has occurred.
- 6.4** Within twenty (20) Weekdays of receipt of:
- 6.4.1** a notice from the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 6.2 above; or
  - 6.4.2** a provisional notice from the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 6.3 above,
- the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably and in a timely manner) whether a Target Amendment Trigger Event has occurred and the value of the relevant Performance Fee Target Amendment, if any. If the Franchisee does not respond to the relevant notice within five (5) Weekdays of receipt, then the Franchisee shall be deemed to have accepted the conclusions set out in the relevant notice and any Performance Fee Target Amendment proposed by the Secretary of State shall apply in accordance with paragraph 6.7 below.
- 6.5** If the Parties have agreed whether a Target Amendment Trigger Event has occurred and the value of the associated Performance Fee Target Amendment, if any, within twenty (20) Weekdays, then the Performance Fee Target Amendment (if any) agreed between the Parties shall apply in accordance with paragraph 6.7 below.
- 6.6** If the Parties have not agreed whether a Target Amendment Trigger Event has occurred and/or the value of the associated Performance Fee Target Amendment, if any, within twenty (20) Weekdays of receipt by the Franchisee of the provisional notice pursuant to paragraph 6.3 above, then the Secretary of State:
- 6.6.1** shall reasonably determine whether a Target Amendment Trigger Event has occurred and the value of the associated Performance Fee Target Amendment, if any; and
  - 6.6.2** shall promptly notify the Franchisee of such decision, in which case the Performance Fee Target Amendment, if any, determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 6.6 shall apply in accordance with paragraph 6.7 below.

**6.7** A Performance Fee Target Amendment shall apply retrospectively from the date on which the Target Amendment Trigger Event occurred and shall continue to apply until the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**6.8** A Target Amendment Trigger Event may trigger a Performance Fee Target Amendment in relation to two PBF Assessment Periods, if:

**6.8.1** the aggregate Amendment Amount across both relevant PBF Assessment Periods is greater than the Relevant Threshold Amount; and

**6.8.2** the Target for the later of the two PBF Assessment Periods has already been agreed or determined on the date on which the Target Amendment Trigger Event occurred,

in which case the Amendable Financial Target for each relevant PBF Assessment Period shall be amended accordingly.

**6.9** Within five (5) Weekdays of:

**6.9.1** the Parties agreeing (or the Franchisee being deemed to have agreed) a Performance Fee Target Amendment pursuant to paragraph 6.4 above; or

**6.9.2** the Secretary of State notifying the Franchisee of a Performance Fee Target Amendment pursuant to paragraph 6.6 above,

the Franchisee shall apply the Performance Fee Target Amendment to the Target Cost Template or Target Profit Template (as applicable) then Placed in Escrow in accordance with paragraph 10.1(d) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) and submit such amended Target Cost Template and/or Target Profit Template to the Secretary of State along with any applicable information in relation to the impact of such amendment(s) on the Financial Targets and an updated version of the Target Cost Record of Assumptions or the Target Profit Record of Assumptions (as applicable).

**6.10** Within ten (10) Weekdays of receipt of the amended Target Cost Template and/or Target Profit Template (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 6.9 above, the Secretary of State shall either:

**6.10.1** agree the amended Financial Targets; or

**6.10.2** reasonably determine any necessary amendments to the Target Cost Template and/or Target Profit Template (as appropriate) and associated Financial Targets to ensure the proper application of the Performance Fee Target Amendment,

and within five (5) Weekdays of such agreement or determination the updated Target Cost Template and/or Target Profit Template (as appropriate) shall be Placed in Escrow in accordance with paragraph 10.1(d) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).

**6.11** Nothing in this paragraph 6 shall automatically result in an amendment to any then-current Budget, Annual Business Plan or Quarterly Budget.

## **7 Effect of Extended Term and amendments to the PBF Assessment Period**

**7.1** If the Secretary of State elects to extend the term of the ERMA pursuant to clause 3.3 of the ERMA the Secretary of State shall promptly notify the Franchisee whether:

**7.1.1** the duration of the originally scheduled Final PBF Assessment Period shall be extended; or



7.1.2 an additional PBF Assessment Period shall apply which shall be deemed to be the Final PBF Assessment Period; and

**7.2** Following an amendment to the duration of a PBF Assessment Period for any reason, the Parties shall seek to agree (each acting reasonably, in a timely manner and through sufficiently senior representatives):

7.2.1 any necessary amendments to the applicable Amendable Financial Targets in respect of the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and

7.2.2 the OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels (as applicable) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period in respect of each of the additional Reporting Periods,

taking into consideration the amendment to the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period. If the Parties have agreed any amendment(s) to the applicable Amendable Financial Targets and/or the applicable OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and/or Default Performance Levels within twenty (20) Weekdays of the amendment to the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, then such agreed matters shall apply in accordance with paragraph 7.4 below.

**7.3** If the Parties have not agreed any necessary amendments to the applicable Amendable Financial Targets and/or the applicable OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and/or Default Performance Levels for the relevant PBF Assessment Period within twenty (20) Weekdays of the amendment to the duration of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, then the Secretary of State:

7.3.1 may reasonably determine any necessary amendments to the applicable Amendable Financial Targets for the relevant PBF Assessment Period;

7.3.2 may reasonably determine the OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels (as applicable) for the relevant PBF Assessment Period; and

7.3.3 shall promptly notify the Franchisee of such decision, in which case the amendment(s) to the applicable Amendable Financial Targets (if any) and the OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels (as applicable) determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 7.3 shall apply in accordance with paragraph 7.4 below.

**7.4** Any amendment(s) to the applicable Amendable Financial Targets (if any) and any new OP Targets, Breach Performance Levels and Default Performance Levels (as applicable) shall apply retrospectively from the date on which the amendment to the duration of a PBF Assessment Period occurred and shall continue to apply until the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**7.5** If the Secretary of State:

7.5.1 elects to extend the term of the ERMA pursuant to clause 3.3 of the ERMA; and

7.5.2 intends to notify the Franchisee that an additional PBF Assessment Period shall apply pursuant to paragraph 7.1.2 above,

the Secretary of State may (notwithstanding the requirement to issue a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification two months prior to the relevant PBF Assessment Period pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 above) issue a Subsequent PBF Assessment Period Notification no later than the Weekday following the date of the notice issued to the



Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 7.1.2 above, in which case the provisions of paragraph 4 (*Calculation of the Performance Based Fee for each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period*) shall apply.

## **8 Exceptional Events**

Following the occurrence of an Exceptional Event, the Secretary of State may, acting reasonably:

- 8.1.1** if the Quantified Target Methodology applies to any QTM PBF Component pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 4 (*Calculation of the Performance Based Fee for each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period*) of this Schedule 8.1B, notify the Franchisee that from the date of such notification (or such alternative date as may be specified in the notification) the Scorecard Methodology shall apply in lieu of the Quantified Target Methodology in relation to any or all of the QTM PBF Components during the relevant PBF Assessment Period;
- 8.1.2** suspend any applicable Amendable Financial Target, NRPS Target and/or OP Target and apply the Scorecard Methodology in a manner which, as far as is reasonably practicable, aligns with any suspended target which has already been set for that PBF Assessment Period; and
- 8.1.3** for the relevant PBF Assessment Period, calculate the Performance Based Fee attributable to each QTM PBF Component on a *pro-rata* basis according to the duration of the period for which each of the Quantified Target Methodology and the Scorecard Methodology applied to such QTM PBF Component.

**Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B**  
**PBF Assessment Period Review**

**1 Purpose of the PBF Assessment Period Review**

- 1.1** The purpose of a PBF Assessment Period Review is for the Secretary of State to undertake a review of the Franchisee's performance in relation to the Franchise Services over the course of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
- 1.2** The Secretary of State shall carry out a PBF Assessment Period Review with respect to each PBF Assessment Period.
- 1.3** At each periodic Franchise Performance Meeting, the Parties shall discuss and review:
- 1.3.1** without prejudice to the Secretary of State's right to determine each score that the Franchisee will achieve in accordance with Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*), the Franchisee's progress against the Scorecard Criteria and any other assessment criteria implemented pursuant to this Schedule 8.1B; and
- 1.3.2** the evidence to be included within an ERMA Evidence Report for the Reporting Period to which that Franchisee Performance Meeting relates and/or for any other Reporting Period.
- 1.4** Each PBF Assessment Period Review shall be carried out in accordance with the process set out in this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B.

**2 ERMA Evidence Report**

- 2.1** In advance of each Franchise Performance Meeting, the Secretary of State shall provide the Franchisee with a report detailing the information and evidence that the Secretary of State considers to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review and the assessment of the Franchisee's performance against the Scorecard Criteria (each, an "**ERMA Evidence Report**"). Each ERMA Evidence Report shall contain only new information and evidence and shall not repeat the information and evidence that was included in a previous ERMA Evidence Report, except if that information and evidence has changed.
- 2.2** The Franchisee shall, following receipt of an ERMA Evidence Report, notify the Secretary of State of any information or evidence, in addition to that set out in the ERMA Evidence Report, which the Franchisee considers to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review and the assessment of the Franchisee's performance against the Scorecard Criteria.
- 2.3** The Secretary of State shall, following receipt of a notice pursuant to paragraph 2.2 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B, provide written confirmation to the Franchisee of whether the Secretary of State considers such information or evidence to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review and, where the Secretary of State considers such information or evidence to be relevant, the Secretary of State shall either amend the relevant ERMA Evidence Report to include such information or evidence or include the information or evidence in the next, or any subsequent, ERMA Evidence Report.
- 2.4** The Parties acknowledge and agree that the ERMA Evidence Report is not intended to be the final record of all information or evidence in respect of the Reporting Period to which the Franchise Performance Meeting relates and the Parties shall be entitled to agree, at or in advance of any subsequent Franchise Performance Meeting, that additional evidence

relating to such Reporting Period may be added to that, or any subsequent, ERMA Evidence Report.

### **3 Notice of PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting**

- 3.1** The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the date, time and location for the relevant PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting (or, where the Secretary of State considers that more than one PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting is necessary, each PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting) by no later than the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, provided always that any PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting shall take place no earlier than the last day in the relevant PBF Assessment Period and no later than sixty (60) days after the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
- 3.2** Nothing in this Schedule 8.1B shall prevent the Parties from discussing any matter relevant to a PBF Assessment Period Review outside of any PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting.

### **4 PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist**

- 4.1** Not less than thirty (30) days prior to the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, shall notify the Franchisee in writing of any additional evidence or information that the Franchisee is required to submit at the same time as the completed PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist.
- 4.2** Not less than fifteen (15) days prior to the end of each PBF Assessment Period, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of any evidence or information in addition to that set out in the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist, each ERMA Evidence Report or the information notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.1 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B, which the Franchisee considers to be relevant for the PBF Assessment Period Review. The Secretary of State shall, within ten (10) days of receiving such notice, provide written confirmation to the Franchisee of whether the Secretary of State considers such matters to be relevant to the PBF Assessment Period Review.
- 4.3** As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each PBF Assessment Period, and in any event no later than ten (10) days after the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a duly completed copy of the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist in respect of that PBF Assessment Period.
- 4.4** The PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist delivered by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 4.3 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B shall include written commentary from the Franchisee in respect of the PBF Assessment Period covering:
- 4.4.1** each of the matters listed in the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist;
  - 4.4.2** the evidence and information included in the ERMA Evidence Reports;
  - 4.4.3** any other matter notified by the Secretary of State to the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 4.1 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B; and
  - 4.4.4** any other matter which the Secretary of State has confirmed as relevant for the PBF Assessment Period Review in accordance with paragraph 4.2 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B.

- 4.5** The Secretary of State shall provide the Franchisee with:
- 4.5.1** a written commentary on the completed PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist and the evidence and information included in the ERMA Evidence Reports (including any commentary provided by the Franchisee under paragraph 4.4 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B); and
  - 4.5.2** any evidence or information additional to that:
    - (i) contained in the ERMA Evidence Reports; or
    - (ii) contained in or submitted by the Franchisee at the same time as the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist (in accordance with paragraph 4.1 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B),which the Secretary of State has used or intends to use to assess the Franchisee's performance,

in each case, no later than ten (10) days prior to the relevant PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting.

## **5 PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting**

- 5.1** The PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting shall take place at the date, time and location notified by the Secretary of State to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B and shall be attended by representatives of each of the Secretary of State and the Franchisee.
- 5.2** The Franchisee shall ensure that the representatives of the Franchisee at the PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting include such:
- 5.2.1** appropriate and qualified personnel of the Franchisee;
  - 5.2.2** directors and/or senior managers of the Franchisee; and
  - 5.2.3** directors and/or senior managers of the Parent,
- as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.
- 5.3** At the PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting, the Parties shall discuss the Franchisee's performance by reference to the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist and each ERMA Evidence Report, together with any supporting commentary, documents or evidence submitted by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraphs 4.3 and 4.4 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B and any commentary and/or information provided by the Secretary of State to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B.

## **6 PBF Assessment Period Review Scoring**

- 6.1** The Secretary of State may take such steps as the Secretary of State considers (acting reasonably) to be necessary or appropriate to take into consideration any representations or evidence provided by Network Rail and/or any other relevant third party to the extent relevant to the Scorecard Criteria, including:
- 6.1.1** procuring views or evidence from Network Rail and/or other relevant stakeholders;

- 6.1.2 directing the Franchisee to procure such views or evidence, which shall be submitted with the Franchisee's own information and evidence pursuant to paragraph 2 (*ERMA Evidence Report*) of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B; and/or
    - 6.1.3 subject to any requirements in relation to confidentiality, sharing extracts (on an anonymised or redacted basis, if required) of evidence supplied by the Franchisee with Network Rail and/or other relevant stakeholders.
- 6.2 The Secretary of State shall provide to the Franchisee, no later than seventy (70) days after the end of the relevant PBF Assessment Period, a duly completed PBF Assessment Period Scorecard setting out the Franchisee's performance in each of the Scorecard Criteria and any other assessment criteria implemented pursuant to this Schedule 8.1B for the PBF Assessment Period.
- 6.3 The Franchisee shall be scored three (3), two (2) or one (1) in relation to each Scorecard Criterion and, in relation to any other assessment criteria implemented pursuant to this Schedule 8.1B, shall be assessed or scored (as applicable) in accordance with such assessment criteria.
- 6.4 Scores in the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard shall be awarded by the Secretary of State having regard to the matters set out in the PBF Assessment Period Scorecard. One single, integer, overall score shall be awarded in relation to each Scorecard Criterion based on the Secretary of State's assessment of the Franchisee's performance in respect of that Scorecard Criterion and taking into account:
  - 6.4.1 each ERMA Evidence Report;
  - 6.4.2 the PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee in accordance with paragraphs 4.3 and 4.4 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B;
  - 6.4.3 any commentary provided to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B;
  - 6.4.4 any discussions between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State at the PBF Assessment Period Review Meeting(s); and
  - 6.4.5 any representations or evidence provided by Network Rail and/or any other relevant third party pursuant to paragraph 6.1 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B.
- 6.5 The PBF Assessment Period Review shall be complete once the Secretary of State has sent a duly completed PBF Assessment Period Scorecard to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 6.2 of this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8.1B.
- 6.6 If the Franchisee:
  - 6.6.1 is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored "one (1)"; or
  - 6.6.2 has received a score of "one (1)",in relation to any of the Scorecard Criteria during a PBF Assessment Period, then the Secretary of State may require a Remedial Plan and the provisions of Schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for Remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*) of the Franchise Agreement shall apply.

**Appendix 2 to Schedule 8.1B  
PBF Assessment Period Review Checklist**

**1 Operational Performance**

A report on the Franchisee's operational performance, including:

- 1.1.1 an explanation of the level of performance achieved during the PBF Assessment Period and the underlying drivers of that performance, including evidence of the impacts of any significant actions the Franchisee has undertaken during the PBF Assessment Period to improve performance or to reduce the impacts of incidents;
- 1.1.2 in respect of significant or repeated failures to deliver the Enforcement Plan of the Day, an explanation of the underlying causes of those failures setting out (if relevant) any act, omission or failure of a third party which has impacted performance and the extent of that impact;
- 1.1.3 a summary of the Franchisee's approaches to service recovery, Depot and Train Fleet management and train crew management during the PBF Assessment Period, including any significant actions take to improve those approaches, supported by evidence of their effectiveness; and
- 1.1.4 evidence of how the ratio of Reactionary Delay to Primary Delay, and incidences of delay attributable to Depot, Train Fleet and train crew related causes, compare with historic trends.

**2 Customer Experience**

A report on the customer experience delivered by the Franchisee, including:

- 2.1.1 tables, charts and other data (as appropriate) showing, for the PBF Assessment Period:
  - (i) delivery of Station and train cleans against the planned programme;
  - (ii) level of adherence to staffing rosters;
  - (iii) a summary of the availability of key assets such as Station and train toilets and ticket vending machines, and the length of time taken to remedy any faults; and
  - (iv) a summary of how the Franchisee has provided consistently accurate, timely and relevant information to customers at stations, on rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services and online;
- 2.1.2 an explanation of the level of performance achieved during the PBF Assessment Period in respect of each of the above and the underlying drivers of that performance, including evidence of the impacts of any significant actions the Franchisee has undertaken during the PBF Assessment Period to improve performance;
- 2.1.3 a summary of customer feedback obtained during the PBF Assessment Period, including insights gathered through complaints, surveys where relevant (including Wavelength and National Rail Passenger Survey, if available), social media and any other relevant sources;

- 2.1.4 a summary of how the Franchisee has used these customer insights to identify and address customer needs; and
- 2.1.5 the results of any research or assessments undertaken by Transport Focus, the ORR or any other independent bodies which demonstrate the Franchisee's compliance with any of the Scorecard Criteria.

### **3 Financial Performance**

A report detailing the extent to which the Franchisee has acted as a Good and Efficient Operator, including evidence of:

- 3.1.1 the actions which the Franchisee has taken to drive the recovery of revenue and demand, and the effect those actions have had on revenue and demand;
- 3.1.2 the actions the Franchisee has taken to reduce costs and improve efficiency, and the effect those actions have had on costs;
- 3.1.3 the approach the Franchisee has taken to balancing the short, medium and long term financial interest of the franchise (both within and beyond the Franchise Term); and
- 3.1.4 appropriate revenue protection being applied to reduce ticketless travel or travel with invalid tickets to the greatest extent reasonably practicable with the intention of maximising revenue while also treating passengers fairly and reasonably (and/or otherwise evidence that the Franchisee has followed government guidance prevailing at the time regarding revenue collection).

### **4 Collaborative Behaviour**

#### **4.1 Collaboration with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and industry bodies**

A report detailing the Franchisee's collaboration with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and industry bodies, including evidence of:

- 4.1.1 the actions taken by the Franchisee to comply with the obligations in part 1 (*Co-operation*) of Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*) of the Franchise Agreement insofar as they relate to collaboration with those persons;
- 4.1.2 the actions taken by the Franchisee to collaborate with those parties in each of the areas identified in paragraph 4.2.2 of Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) to Schedule 8.1B;
- 4.1.3 how those collaborative actions have demonstrably resulted in improved passenger outcomes and/or whole-industry financial efficiency or can reasonably be expected to result in such improvement (either during the Franchise Term or in the long term);
- 4.1.4 how the Franchisee has monitored the quality of its collaboration with those parties, any shortcomings identified and the remedial actions taken.

## 4.2 SoS Collaboration

A report detailing the Franchisee's collaboration with the Secretary of State, including evidence of:

- 4.2.1 the actions taken by the Franchisee to support the development, design and (where appropriate) implementation of initiatives to improve the long term financial performance of the Franchise, outcomes for passengers and/or other public policy objectives;
- 4.2.2 the actions taken by the Franchisee to share data with the Secretary of State, and to facilitate the sharing of data held by third parties on the Franchisee's behalf, pursuant to paragraphs 12 (*Further Information*) and 13 (*Information from Third Parties*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*);
- 4.2.3 the Franchisee having complied with the reporting requirements set out in the Franchise Agreement, and provided supporting commentary, analysis and (when requested) additional information to help the Secretary of State to assess and understand the drivers of the performance of the delivery of the Franchise Services;
- 4.2.4 how the Franchisee has managed its requests for guidance, consents, directions, derogations and other decisions so as to ensure they are accompanied by sufficient high-quality supporting evidence and allow sufficient time for due consideration by the Secretary of State;
- 4.2.5 the Franchisee's approach to collaborating with the Secretary of State in respect of business planning, budget setting and (where applicable) seeking to agree the matters described in paragraph 4.4 of Schedule 8.1B, the Target Cost, the Target Profit and/or any Performance Fee Target Amendment, and in particular how its approach has enabled the Secretary of State to agree such matters without the need for substantial amendment; and
- 4.2.6 how the Franchisee has monitored the quality of its collaboration with the Secretary of State, any shortcomings identified and the remedial actions taken.

## 4.3 Other Collaboration

A report detailing the Franchisee's collaboration with stakeholders specified in paragraph 6.2.1 of Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) to Schedule 8.1B, including evidence of:

- 4.3.1 the collaborative actions the Franchisee has taken in each of the areas in paragraph 6.2.2 of Appendix 3 (*Scorecard Criteria*) to Schedule 8.1B, how those collaborative actions have directly improved outcomes for passengers and/or other stakeholders, and whether (and, if so, how) those actions have helped to leverage in third party funding for improvements to the railway infrastructure or to the Passenger Services;
- 4.3.2 how the Franchisee has collaborated with persons with disabilities and their representative bodies in particular, and how this collaboration has directly improved outcomes for such passengers.
- 4.3.3 the processes the Franchisee has put in place to monitor stakeholders' satisfaction with the quality of their collaboration and engagement, the results of that monitoring, any shortcomings identified and the actions taken to remedy them.



**Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B  
Scorecard Criteria**

**1 Operational Performance**

**1.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Franchisee has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a 'two (2)'.

**1.2 Two (2): Acceptable**

**1.2.1** The Franchisee has generally delivered the Passenger Services in accordance with the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day, such that where there have been significant or repeated failures to deliver the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day:

- (i) these have typically been due to external factors and/or incidents beyond the reasonable control of the Franchisee;
- (ii) the Franchisee has taken reasonable steps to recover the Passenger Services as quickly as possible so as to minimise passenger inconvenience and delay, regardless of whether or not the root cause was within the Franchisee's reasonable control; and
- (iii) the Franchisee has undertaken reviews of the root cause(s) of such failure(s) to deliver the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day and the effectiveness of the Franchisee's actions to deal with the incident and recover the Passenger Services.

**1.2.2** The Franchisee has in place and has implemented appropriate Depot and Train Fleet management plans that have been generally effective in minimising the number of instances of insufficient rolling stock vehicles being available to resource the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day.

**1.2.3** The Franchisee has in place and has implemented appropriate plans for train crew management (including to mitigate risks relating to COVID-19), recruitment, training, succession and contingency management that have generally been effective in minimising the number of instances of insufficient train crew being available to resource the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day.

**1.3 Three (3): Good**

**1.3.1** The Franchisee has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

- (i) there have been very few, if any, significant or repeated failures to deliver the applicable Enforcement Plan of the Day that have been due to factors and/or incidents within the reasonable control of the Franchisee;
- (ii) the Franchisee's approach to service recovery has been particularly robust and, as a result, the ratio of Reactionary Delay to Primary Delay in respect of the Passenger Services has been low by historical standards (taking account of all Primary Delay, whether attributed to the Franchisee or not);

- (iii) the reviews referred to in paragraph 1.2.1(iii) of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B have been particularly thorough and, as a result of those reviews, the Franchisee has identified and implemented significant actions that have minimised (or will minimise) the likelihood and the impacts on passengers of similar incidents occurring in future; or
- (iv) the Franchisee's Depot, Train Fleet and train crew management has been particularly robust and, as a result, the number of instances of insufficient rolling stock or train crew being available to deliver the Enforcement Plan of the Day have been low by historical standards.

## **2 Customer Experience**

### **2.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Franchisee has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### **2.2 Two (2): Acceptable**

**2.2.1** The Franchisee has taken a proactive approach to managing customer experience for all customers, with appropriate plans and processes in place that have been generally effective in:

- (i) providing information on rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services (where appropriate), online and at stations at which the Passenger Services call that is accurate, timely and easy for customers to understand, taking account of the needs of different customers and which covers (but is not limited to):
  - (a) the timetable being operated;
  - (b) planned and unplanned disruption;
  - (c) fares and ticketing;
  - (d) passenger rights (including compensation and redress);
  - (e) the availability of station and train facilities; and
  - (f) (when appropriate) COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation;
- (ii) ensuring that all customer contact surfaces are cleaned regularly and keeping Stations and rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services free from litter, dirt and other unhygienic substances;
- (iii) ensuring that all Stations, rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services and online services have been staffed as required to provide a visible, helpful and proactive customer-facing service; and
- (iv) maintaining all Station and train facilities so that they are fully functional, available for use and presented in good condition, with any non-availability of facilities for repair or maintenance being kept to the minimum necessary.

**2.2.2** The Franchisee has regularly and at an appropriate frequency monitored compliance with those plans and processes and has taken prompt remedial action when they have been found not to be working.

**2.2.3** The Franchisee has used some survey results and other relevant data and information to review customer needs and the extent to which they are being met (including, but not limited to, Wavelength and National Rail Passenger Survey data, where available). Where needs are not being met, the Franchisee has (where consistent with the requirement to act as a Good and Efficient Operator, or where the Secretary of State has otherwise consented) taken action to address them, and these actions have demonstrably resulted in meaningful improvements in outcomes for customers (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), will result in such improvements, either during the Franchise Term or in the long term).

### **2.3 Three (3): Good**

The Franchisee has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

- (f) the Franchisee's plans and processes described in paragraph 2.2.1 of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B have been particularly robust, such that there have been very few, if any, repeated or systemic failures to:
  - (v) provide timely, accurate and relevant information in the manner described in paragraph 2.2.1(i) of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B;
  - (vi) undertake cleaning activities and maintain high levels of cleanliness at Stations and on rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services;
  - (vii) staff Stations, rolling stock used to deliver the Passenger Services and online services to provide a proactive customer-facing service; and
  - (viii) maintain Station and train facilities so that they are fully functional and well-presented,

that have been due to factors and/or incidents within the reasonable control of the Franchisee.
- (g) The Franchisee's plans and processes for managing customer experience have been particularly thorough and, as a result, any *potential* issues have consistently been identified and resolved in a swift and effective manner. Any *actual* issues have also been few in number and low in impact, and the Franchisee has taken prompt and effective remedial action when they have occurred.
- (h) The Franchisee has regularly used a range of different survey results and other relevant data and information (when possible) to review customer needs and the extent to which they are being met (including Wavelength and National Rail Passenger Survey data, where available), and the prompt actions taken to address those needs have demonstrably resulted in substantial improvements in outcomes for customers.

## **3 Financial Performance**

### **3.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Franchisee has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### 3.2 Two (2): Acceptable

3.2.1 The Franchisee has consistently acted as a Good and Efficient Operator and has been effective in optimising the financial prospects of its business over the short, medium and long term by:

- (i) driving the recovery of passenger demand and revenue; and
- (ii) robustly controlling the Franchisee's costs.

3.2.2 In driving the recovery of passenger demand and revenue, the Franchisee has taken effective action (in each case within the limits arising from COVID-19 Guidance and Regulation) to:

- (i) promote rail as a safe mode of transport and to raise public awareness of the steps taken by the Franchisee and the wider rail industry to minimise public health risks;
- (ii) monitor and deter ticketless travel; and
- (iii) implement such further actions as may have been directed by the Secretary of State with a view to promoting demand and revenue growth.

3.2.3 In robustly controlling the Franchisee's costs, the Franchisee has:

- (i) put in place internal processes which are comparable to (or better than) those adopted by the Franchisee prior to the EMA Start Date and which have been effective in managing the Franchisee's expenditure across all areas of the business, so as to improve efficiency and guard against unnecessary or excessive spend; and
- (ii) implemented such further actions as may have been directed by the Secretary of State with a view to controlling costs,

while also continuing to incur such expenditure as is reasonably necessary to meet the Franchisee's obligations under this Agreement and to protect the long-term financial interests of the franchise (both during the Franchise Term and in the longer term).

3.2.4 If and to the extent that there are any specific instances where the Franchisee has not fully complied with the requirements described above, such instances have been few in number and limited in impact, and the Franchisee has taken prompt and effective remedial action following any such instances.

### 3.3 Three (3): Good

The Franchisee has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition on its own initiative, has developed and implemented (subject to the Secretary of State's consent where required pursuant to the Franchise Agreement) significant initiatives, the effect of which has been (or, in the Secretary of State's opinion (acting reasonably), will be):

- (i) to substantially accelerate the recovery of passenger demand and revenue (while avoiding material increases in costs, either during the Franchise Term or thereafter); and/or

- (j) to substantially reduce the costs of operating the franchise and/or improve its cost efficiency (while avoiding material adverse impacts on passenger outcomes or revenues).

#### **4 Collaborative behaviours (collaboration with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and industry bodies)**

##### **4.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Franchisee has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

##### **4.2 Two (2): Acceptable**

**4.2.1** The Franchisee has complied with the obligations set out part 1 (*Co-operation*) of Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*) of the Franchise Agreement insofar as they relate to collaboration with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and industry bodies;

**4.2.2** In complying with those obligations, the Franchisee has demonstrated good collaborative behaviours in working with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and relevant industry bodies (as applicable) in **each** of the following areas:

- (i) improving operational performance, which shall include (in particular) reducing Reactionary Delay, improving service recovery and investigating and addressing the root causes of sub-threshold delay;
- (ii) improving the efficiency and effectiveness of the timetable development process, with the result that timetables better meet the needs of passengers while also being operationally robust and delivering high levels of performance;
- (iii) optimising the planning of access and possessions, so as to achieve an appropriate balance between protecting journey opportunities for passengers and minimising the cost of carrying out necessary works;
- (iv) identifying and implementing opportunities to deliver whole-industry cost efficiencies, including by sharing resources, establishing joint teams and/or eliminating duplication of activities across multiple organisations at Stations, control centres and elsewhere;
- (v) delivering major projects (including infrastructure upgrades, introduction of new or cascaded rolling stock fleets) efficiently, successfully and in a way that minimises any adverse passenger impacts; and
- (vi) openly and proactively sharing data with Network Rail, in accordance with paragraph 9 (*Sharing Data with Network Rail*) part 1 (*Co-operation*) of Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*) of the Franchise Agreement, as necessary to maximise the effectiveness of collaboration in each of the areas listed above.

**4.2.3** The Franchisee's collaborative actions in **some** of the areas listed in paragraph 4.2.2 of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B have demonstrably resulted in meaningful improvements in passenger outcomes and/or meaningful whole-industry financial efficiencies (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), will result in such improvements, either during the Franchise Term or in the long term).

**4.2.4** If and to the extent that there are any specific instances where the Franchisee has not demonstrated good collaborative behaviours, these have been few in number and of minor impact and the Franchisee has taken prompt and effective remedial action where the Franchisee has become aware (or should reasonably have become aware) of any such instances.

### **4.3 Three (3): Good**

The Franchisee has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

(k) the Franchisee's collaborative actions in **most** or **all** of the areas listed in paragraph 4.2.2 of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B have demonstrably resulted in meaningful improvements in passenger outcomes and/or meaningful whole-industry financial efficiencies (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), will result in such improvements, either during the Franchise Term or in the long term); or

(l) the Franchisee's collaborative actions in **some** of the areas listed in paragraph 4.2.2 of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B have demonstrably resulted in **very substantial** improvements in passenger outcomes and/or **very substantial** whole-industry financial efficiencies (or, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, will result in such improvements, either during the Franchise Term or in the long term).

## **5 Collaborative behaviours (collaboration with the Secretary of State)**

### **5.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard**

The Franchisee has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### **5.2 Two (2): Acceptable**

**5.2.1** The Franchisee has co-operated with the Secretary of State in the development, design and (where applicable) implementation of initiatives to improve the long-term financial performance of the Franchise, outcomes for passengers and/or other public policy objectives (including Future Initiatives and Franchisee Initiatives pursuant to and in accordance with part 1 (*Co-operation*) of Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*) of the Franchise Agreement that relate to co-operation with the Secretary of State and prospective Fares, ticketing and ticket retailing reform pursuant to and in accordance with Schedule 5.11 (*Fares, Ticketing and Retail Reform*)).

**5.2.2** The Franchisee has shared data fully and openly with the Secretary of State, and has taken reasonable steps to facilitate the sharing of data held by third parties on the Franchisee's behalf, in accordance with paragraphs 12 (*Further Information*) and 13 (*Information from Third Parties*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*);

- 5.2.3** The Franchisee has provided periodic reporting packs on time and to a good standard, including all data required by the Franchise Agreement with commentary and analysis to allow the Secretary of State to assess the performance of the Franchise Services and to understand the underlying drivers. Appropriate representatives of the Franchisee have attended each Franchise Performance Meeting. The Franchisee has responded to requests for additional information positively and within agreed timescales.
- 5.2.4** Requests for the Secretary of State to provide guidance, consents, directions, derogations and other decisions have been made in sufficient time to allow for due consideration by the Secretary of State. Such requests having been supported by appropriate supporting evidence and analysis to enable the Secretary of State to make an informed decision. Unnecessary or spurious requests have been avoided.
- 5.2.5** The Franchisee has worked constructively with the Secretary of State to agree appropriate business plans, budgets and (where applicable) the matters described in paragraph 4.4 of Schedule 8.1B, the Target Cost, the Target Profit and/or any Performance Fee Target Amendment, in each case in a timely manner. In particular, the Franchisee's proposals in respect of these matters have been provided in accordance with required timescales, underpinned by sound assumptions and good supporting evidence, enabling the Secretary of State to accept them without the need for substantial amendment.
- 5.2.6** If and to the extent that there are any specific instances where the Franchisee has not demonstrated good collaborative behaviours, these have been few in number and of minor impact and the Franchisee has taken prompt and effective remedial action where the Franchisee has become aware (or should reasonably have become aware) of any such instances.

### **5.3 Three (3): Good**

The Franchisee has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

- 5.3.1** both proactively and in response to any specific requests by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee has developed and presented to the Secretary of State a variety of high-quality, credible reform initiatives to materially strengthen the long-term financial sustainability of the franchise, improve passenger outcomes and support other public policy objectives;
- 5.3.2** such proposals have been accompanied by credible delivery plans and clear, robust analysis of the financial and practical consequences, associated risks and other implications; and
- 5.3.3** when such proposals have been consistent with what a Good and Efficient Operator would do, or have otherwise been approved by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee has implemented those proposals in accordance with their terms (or, where applicable, the Franchisee's actions during the PBF Assessment Period have given the Secretary of State good confidence that the Franchisee will do so).

## 6 Collaborative behaviours (collaboration with other stakeholders)

### 6.1 One (1): Below acceptable standard

The Franchisee has failed in any material respect to demonstrate that it has met the standard required to score a "two (2)".

### 6.2 Two (2): Acceptable

6.2.1 The Franchisee has demonstrated good collaborative behaviours in working with stakeholders, including:

- (i) passengers (including, and in particular, passengers with disabilities) and their representative bodies;
- (ii) devolved administrations (where applicable);
- (iii) local authorities;
- (iv) community rail partnerships;
- (v) local enterprise partnerships and other representatives of the business community; and
- (vi) other transport operators,

but excluding the Secretary of State, Network Rail and other industry parties as identified in paragraph 4 (*Collaborative behaviours (Collaboration with Network Rail, other Train Operators, suppliers and industry bodies)*) of this Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B.

6.2.2 In particular, the Franchisee has:

- (i) sought feedback from such stakeholders about the Franchise Services;
- (ii) consulted with such stakeholders and involved them in significant decisions that affect them, such that they have had a meaningful opportunity to influence those decisions;
- (iii) provided feedback to those stakeholders on significant decisions that affect them and the reasons for those decisions;
- (iv) routinely and actively involved passengers with disabilities and their representatives in designing and developing the facilities and Passenger Services provided by the Franchisee, and in other decisions that may have a particular impact on passengers with disabilities; and
- (v) provided support to prospective third party promoters and funders of improvements to the railway when requested to do so by the Secretary of State or the third party concerned.

6.2.3 The Franchisee's collaborative actions in the areas identified in this paragraph 6.2 of Appendix 3 to Schedule 8.1B have resulted in **some** improvements in outcomes for passengers and other stakeholders served by the Franchisee, including in particular for passengers with disabilities (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), will result in such improvements, either during the Franchise Term or in the long term).



**6.3 Three (3): Good**

The Franchisee has fully met the criteria for a "two (2)" and in addition:

- 6.3.1 the Franchisee has in place and has implemented effective processes to monitor stakeholder satisfaction with the quality of the Franchisee's collaboration and engagement with them, and the results of this monitoring show consistently excellent levels of stakeholder satisfaction during the PBF Assessment Period; and
- 6.3.2 regular, open collaboration, proactively initiated by the Franchisee, has demonstrably resulted in (or, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) will, either during the Franchise Term or in the longer term, result in):
  - (i) **substantial** improvements in outcomes for passengers and/or other stakeholders (including in particular passengers with disabilities); and/or
  - (ii) third party investment or other funding contributions to **significantly** improve the Passenger Services and/or the railway infrastructure.

**Appendix 4 to Schedule 8.1B  
Scorecard Methodology**

**1 Application of the Scorecard Criteria and calculation of Performance Based Fee**

Each PBF Component to be calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology shall be assessed with respect to the Franchisee's PBF Assessment Period Review score for the relevant PBF Assessment Period by reference to the Scorecard Criteria, then the score shall be used to calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to that PBF Component, as applicable, as set out below:

<b>PBF Component</b>	<b>PBF Assessment Period Scorecard score for relevant Scorecard Criterion</b>	<b>PBF £</b>
Operational Performance Fee	Three (3)	£ MPBF * $W_{OP}$
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * $W_{OP}$ * Seventy-five per cent (75%)
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Customer Experience Fee	Three (3)	£ MPBF * $W_{CE}$ * $W_{CESC}$
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * $W_{CE}$ * $W_{CESC}$ * Seventy-five per cent (75%)
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Financial Performance Fee	Three (3)	£ MPBF * $W_{FIN}$ * $W_{FINSC}$
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * $W_{FIN}$ * $W_{FINSC}$ * Fifty per cent (50%)
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)

Network Rail Collaboration	Three (3)	£ MPBF * $W_{CB} * W_{NR}$
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * $W_{CB} * W_{NR} *$ Seventy-five per cent (75%)
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
SoS Collaboration	Three (3)	£ MPBF * $W_{CB} * W_{SOS} *$
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * $W_{CB} * W_{SOS} *$ Seventy-five per cent (75%)
	One (1)	Zero pound (£0)
Other Collaboration	Three (3)	£ MPBF * $W_{CB} * W_{OTH}$
	Two (2)	£ MPBF * $W_{CB} * W_{OTH} *$ Seventy-five per cent (75%)
	Three (1)	Zero pound (£0)

where:

<b>"W<sub>FINSC</sub>"</b>	<p>means:</p> <p>(c) if the Financial Performance Fee for that PBF Assessment Period is to be assessed solely in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology, the weighting to be applied to the Scorecard Methodology for that PBF Assessment Period, being one hundred per cent (100%); and</p> <p>(d) if the Financial Performance Fee is to be assessed in accordance with one or more of the Subsequent FP Methodologies for that PBF Assessment Period, the weighting to be applied to the Scorecard Methodology with respect to the Financial Performance Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being the value agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.4.4 of Schedule 8.1B,</p>
----------------------------	--

	provided that no calculation using the Scorecard Methodology shall be required in relation to the Financial Performance Fee if the value of $W_{\text{FINSC}}$ is zero;
" <b>W<sub>NR</sub></b> "	means the weighting to be applied to Network Rail Collaboration when calculating the amount of the Collaborative Behaviour Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being forty per cent (40%) or such alternative as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4(h) of Schedule 8.1B;
" <b>W<sub>SOS</sub></b> "	means the weighting to be applied to SoS Collaboration when calculating the amount of the Collaborative Behaviour Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being forty per cent (40%) or such alternative as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4.8 of Schedule 8.1B;
" <b>W<sub>OTH</sub></b> "	means the weighting to be applied to Other Collaboration when calculating the amount of the Collaborative Behaviour Fee for that PBF Assessment Period, being twenty per cent (20%) or such alternative as may be agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.4.7 of Schedule 8.1B.

**Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B  
Quantified Target Methodology**

**1 Application of the Quantified Target Methodology**

**1.1** The Performance Based Fee in relation to each Subsequent PBF Assessment Period shall be either:

**1.1.1** the sum of the amounts corresponding to each of the PBF Components calculated in accordance with paragraph 1 (*Application of the Scorecard Criteria and calculation of Performance Based Fee*) of Appendix 4 (*Scorecard Methodology*) to Schedule 8.1B; or

**1.1.2** the sum of:

- (i) the amounts corresponding to each of the QTM PBF Components (if any) which, pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of this Schedule 8.1B, are to be calculated in accordance with paragraph 1 (*Application of the Scorecard Criteria and calculation of Performance Based Fee*) of Appendix 4 (*Scorecard Methodology*) to Schedule 8.1B; and
- (ii) the amounts corresponding to each of the QTM PBF Components (if any) which, pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of this Schedule 8.1B, are to be calculated in accordance with this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B; and
- (iii) the amount of the Collaborative Behaviour Fee calculated in accordance with paragraph 1 (*Application of the Scorecard Criteria and calculation of Performance Based Fee*) of Appendix 4 (*Scorecard Methodology*) to this Schedule 8.1B.

**1.2** If it has been agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of Schedule 8.1B that the Operational Performance Fee shall be calculated by reference to the Quantified Target Methodology, paragraph 2 (*Operational Performance*) of this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B shall apply in respect of the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Operational Performance Fee.

**1.3** If it has been agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of Schedule 8.1B that the Customer Experience Fee shall be calculated by reference to the Quantified Target Methodology, paragraph 3 (*Customer Experience*) of this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B shall apply in respect of the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Customer Experience Fee.

**1.4** If it has been agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4.2.1 of Schedule 8.1B that the Financial Performance Fee shall be calculated by reference to the Quantified Target Methodology, paragraph 4 (*Financial Performance*) of this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B shall apply in respect of the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Financial Performance Fee.

**2 Operational Performance**

**2.1** The OP Targets agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B shall apply to each Reporting Period during the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**2.2** For each Reporting Period within the relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall calculate a financial sum in respect of each Operational Performance Component in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether:

**2.2.1** the Franchisee's Actual All Cancellations Performance Level, Actual T-3 Performance Level and Actual T-15 Performance Level; and

**2.2.2** the Franchisee's actual performance in relation to Cancellations, TOC Minutes Delay and Short Formations as determined in accordance with Schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*):

are worse than, within or better than the expected range, in each case specified as the OP Target for the applicable Operational Performance Component in the relevant Reporting Period:

<b>Operational Performance Component</b>	<b>Worse than the expected range</b>	<b>Within the expected range</b>	<b>Better than the expected range</b>
<b>Cancellations</b>	Zero (£0)	Twenty-two point five per cent (22.5%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$	Thirty per cent (30%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$
<b>TOC Minutes Delay</b>	Zero (£0)	Fifteen per cent (15%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$	Twenty per cent (20%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$
<b>Short Formations</b>	Zero (£0)	Seven point five per cent (7.5%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$	Ten per cent (10%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$
<b>T-3</b>	Zero (£0)	Seven point five per cent (7.5%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$	Ten per cent (10%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$
<b>T-15</b>	Zero (£0)	Seven point five per cent (7.5%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$	Ten per cent (10%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$
<b>All Cancellations</b>	Zero (£0)	Fifteen per cent (15%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$	Twenty per cent (20%) * MPBF * $W_{OP/N}$

where:

<b>N</b>	means the number of Reporting Periods that fall within the relevant PBF Assessment Period.
----------	--

**2.3** The value of OP for the purposes of the formula set out in paragraph 4.1 of Schedule 8.1B shall be calculated as the sum of each of the calculations performed pursuant to paragraph 2.2 of this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B in respect of each OP Component in each Reporting Period during the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**3 Customer Experience**

**3.1** For each relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall calculate the element of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Customer Experience Fee in accordance with the formula set out below.

$\pounds CE =$	$CE(SC) + CE(NRPS)$
----------------	---------------------

**3.2** If the weighting of CE(NRPS) is zero in accordance with paragraph 3.3 of this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B then the value attributable to such component shall be zero and such component shall be removed from the formula set out in paragraph 3.1 of this Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B for the purpose of calculating the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Customer Experience Fee.

**3.3** If the Customer Experience Fee for the relevant PBF Assessment Period is to be assessed in accordance with one or more of the Subsequent CE Methodologies, the weighting to be applied to:

**3.3.1** the Scorecard Methodology (" $W_{CESC}$ "); and/or

**3.3.2** **[Not used]**

**3.3.3** the NRPS Methodology (" $W_{NRPS}$ "),

shall be the weighting specified in this paragraph 3.3.

<b>Methodology to be applied</b>	<b><math>W_{CESC}</math></b>	<b><math>W_{NRPS}</math></b>
Scorecard Methodology only	One hundred per cent (100%)	Zero per cent (0%)
Combined Scorecard/NRPS Methodology	Sixty-five per cent (65%)	Thirty-five per cent (35%)

**3.4** If:

**3.4.1**  $W_{NRPS}$  is not zero in accordance with paragraph 3.3 above, the value attributable to CE(NRPS) shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.5 (*Calculation of CE(NRPS)*) below;

**3.4.2** **[Not used]**

**3.4.3**  $W_{CESC}$  is not zero, the value of CE(SC) shall be calculated in accordance with the Scorecard Methodology as it relates to the Customer Experience Fee.

**3.5 Calculation of CE(NRPS)**

**3.5.1** The NRPS Targets agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B shall apply during the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**3.5.2** If:

- (i) no findings of the National Rail Passenger Survey are published during the relevant PBF Assessment Period; or
- (ii) in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) the findings of the National Rail Passenger Survey are not sufficiently robust to support the calculation of CE(NRPS),

the Customer Experience Fee for the relevant PBF Assessment Period shall be assessed using the Scorecard Methodology, the weightings specified in paragraph 3.3 above in relation to such methodology shall apply, and the Secretary of State may reasonably determine such amendments to the Scorecard Methodology as may be reasonably appropriate in consequence of the unavailability or unsuitability of the National Rail Passenger Survey findings.

**3.5.3** For each relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall calculate the Franchisee's performance against each of the NRPS Targets in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Franchisee's applicable Overall Performance Score in respect of the applicable NRPS Target is:

- (i) worse than the expected range;
- (ii) within the expected range; or
- (iii) better than the expected range,

in each case specified as the NRPS Target for the applicable NRPS Measure:

NRPS Measure	Worse than the expected range	Within the expected range	Better than the expected range
<b>Stations</b>	Zero pound (£0)	Eighteen point seven five per cent (18.75%) * $MPBF * W_{CE} *$ $W_{NRPS}$	Twenty-five per cent (25%) * $MPBF * W_{CE} *$ $W_{NRPS}$



<b>Trains</b>	Zero pound (£0)	Eighteen point seven five per cent (18.75%) * MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>NRPS</sub>	Twenty-five per cent (25%) * MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>NRPS</sub>
<b>Customer Service</b>	Zero pound (£0)	Eighteen point seven five per cent (18.75%) * MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>NRPS</sub>	Twenty-five per cent (25%) * MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>NRPS</sub>
<b>Dealing with Delays</b>	Zero pound (£0)	Eighteen point seven five per cent (18.75%) * MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>NRPS</sub>	Twenty-five per cent (25%) * MPBF * W <sub>CE</sub> * W <sub>NRPS</sub>

3.5.4 For each relevant PBF Assessment Period, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to CE(NRPS) in accordance with the formula set out below.

$£CE(NRPS) =$	$S + T + C + D$
---------------	-----------------

where:

<b>S</b>	means the value attributable to the Stations NRPS Measure calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.5.3 above;
<b>T</b>	means the value attributable to the Trains NRPS Measure calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.5.3 above;
<b>C</b>	means the value attributable to the Customer Service NRPS Measure calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.5.3 above; and
<b>D</b>	means the value attributable to the Dealing with Delays NRPS Measure calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.5.3 above.

**3.6 [Not used]**

**4 Financial Performance**

4.1 For each relevant PBF Assessment Period the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Financial Performance Fee in accordance with the formula set out below.

£FIN =	FIN(CC) + FIN(P) + FIN(SC)
--------	----------------------------

**4.2** If the weighting of any of FIN(CC), FIN(P) and/or FIN(SC) is zero in accordance with paragraph 4.4.4 of Schedule 8.1B, then the value attributable to each such component shall be zero and such component shall be removed from the formula set out in paragraph 4.1 above for the purpose of calculating the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to the Financial Performance Fee.

**4.3 Calculation of FIN(CC)**

**4.3.1** Subject to paragraph 6 (*Target Amendments*), the Target Cost agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 5.1 (*Target Cost*) shall apply to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

**4.3.2** The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State all financial information required for the purposes of making each of the calculations required pursuant to this paragraph 4.3 in accordance with paragraph 9.1 (*Accounting Records*) to paragraph 9.4 (*Annual Financial Information*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).

**4.3.3** Within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of all financial information required for the purposes of making the relevant calculations, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to FIN(CC) in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Outturn Cost is:

- (i) greater than the Target Cost Floor;
- (ii) greater than the Target Cost but less than or equal to the Target Cost Floor;
- (iii) less than or equal to the Target Cost but greater than the Target Cost Cap;  
or
- (iv) less than or equal to the Target Cost Cap.

Outturn Cost	£FIN(CC)
Greater than TCF	Zero (£0)
Greater than Target Cost, less than or equal to TCF	$[(TCF - OTC)/(TCF - TC)] * W_{FIN} * W_{CC} * MPBF * \text{Fifty per cent (50\%)}$
Less than or equal to Target Cost, greater than TCC	$[W_{FIN} * W_{CC} * MPBF] - \{[(OTC - TCC)/(TC - TCC)] * W_{FIN} * W_{CC} * MPBF * \text{Fifty per cent (50\%)}\}$
Less than or equal to TCC	$W_{FIN} * W_{CC} * MPBF$

**4.4 Calculation of FIN(P)**

**4.4.1** Subject to paragraph 6 (*Target Amendments*) of Schedule 8.1B, the Target Profit agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 5.2 (*Target Profit*) of Schedule 8.1B shall apply to the relevant PBF Assessment Period.

4.4.2 The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State all financial information required for the purposes of making each of the calculations required pursuant to this paragraph 4.4 in accordance with paragraph 9.1 (*Accounting Records*) to paragraph 9.4 (*Annual Financial Information*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).

4.4.3 Within twenty eight (28) days of receipt of all financial information required for the purposes of making the relevant calculations, the Secretary of State shall calculate the value of the Performance Based Fee attributable to FIN(P) in accordance with the applicable formula set out below based on whether the Outturn Profit is:

- (i) greater than the Target Profit Cap;
- (ii) greater than the Target Profit but less than or equal to the Target Profit Cap;
- (iii) less than or equal to the Target Profit but greater than the Target Profit Floor;  
or
- (iv) less than or equal to the Target Profit Floor:

Outturn Profit	£FIN(P)
<b>Greater than TPC</b>	$W_{FIN} * W_P * MPBF$
<b>Greater than Target Profit, less than or equal to TPC</b>	$[W_{FIN} * W_P * MPBF] - \{[(TPC - OTP)/(TPC - TP)] * W_{FIN} * W_P * MPBF * \text{Fifty per cent (50\%)}\}$
<b>Less than or equal to Target Profit, greater than TPF</b>	$[(OTP - TPF)/(TP - TPF)] * W_{FIN} * W_P * MPBF * \text{Fifty per cent (50\%)}$
<b>Less than or equal to TPF</b>	Zero (£0)

4.5 [Not used]

#### 4.6 Calculation of FIN(SC)

4.6.1 FIN(SC) shall be calculated using the Scorecard Methodology as it applies to the Financial Performance Fee.

**Appendix 6 to Schedule 8.1B**  
**Category A Target Amendment Trigger Events**

**1 Target Cost Target Amendment Trigger Events**

- 1.1** Any variation in the rate of employer pension contributions (or, to the extent applicable, the amount of any lump sum employer deficit contributions) payable to a Franchise Section from the rate (or amount) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions applicable to that Franchise Section which is not already provided for in the Target Cost Template provided that, to the extent the Franchisee's consent or permission was required for that variation, the Franchisee has complied with its obligations pursuant to Schedule 16 (*Pensions*), including the obligations to:
- 1.1.1** obtain the Secretary of State's prior written consent in respect of any such variation; and
  - 1.1.2** act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner.
- 1.2** For reasons related to COVID-19 or otherwise in the national interest, the Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Franchisee to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially reduced compared to the specification that was assumed when the Target Cost was established.
- 1.3** Either:
- 1.3.1** the Secretary of State designates the occurrence of Industrial Action as a Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event pursuant to paragraph 5.3 of part 2 (*Industrial Relations and Dispute Handling*) of Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*); or
  - 1.3.2** the occurrence of Industrial Action in the circumstances set out in paragraph 5.4 of part 2 (*Industrial Relations and Dispute Handling*) of Schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*).
- 1.4** A Variation which either results in the Franchisee incurring additional expenditure or would reasonably result in the Franchisee incurring lower expenditure than if the Variation had not been implemented.
- 1.5** An event set out in any Secretary of State Risk Assumptions specified in Schedule 9.4 (*Secretary of State Risk Assumptions*).
- 1.6** A Charge Variation.
- 1.7** A Change of Law.
- 1.8** A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 16.5 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*).
- 1.9** The Franchisee being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 19.1(a) and/or paragraph 19.1(b) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services*).
- 1.10** The imposition, subject to the provisions of paragraph 2.6 of Schedule 4 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*), of any increased access charges in respect of EA Requirements at Franchisee Access Stations.

- 1.11 The exercise by the Secretary of State of the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 15.1(c) (*Environmental Information Data Collection Plan*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).
- 1.12 The circumstances set out in paragraph 3.2 of Schedule 2.2 (*Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases*) occur.
- 1.13 The Secretary of State issues a TDR Amendment pursuant to paragraph 12.8 (*TDR Amendments*) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) in the circumstances described in paragraph 12.10(b) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*).
- 1.14 The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 12.11(b) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) occur.
- 1.15 The delay of an item of expenditure or a group of items of similar expenditure where the timing of expenditure is materially different from that included in the Target Cost.
- 1.16 The Secretary of State issuing any other guidance or instruction which could reasonably be expected to have a material impact on the Franchisee's ability to achieve, exceed or fail to achieve the relevant Target Cost.

## **2 Target Profit Target Amendment Trigger Events**

- 2.1 Any variation in the rate of employer pension contributions (or, to the extent applicable, the amount of any lump sum employer deficit contributions) payable to a Franchise Section from the rate (or amount) set out in the Assumed Schedule of Contributions applicable to that Franchise Section which is not already provided for in the Target Profit Template provided that, to the extent the Franchisee's consent or permission was required for that variation, the Franchisee has complied with its obligations pursuant to Schedule 16 (*Pensions*), including the obligations to:
  - 2.1.1 obtain the Secretary of State's prior written consent in respect of any such variation; and
  - 2.1.2 act in a Reasonable Commercial Manner.
- 2.2 For reasons related to COVID-19 or otherwise in the national interest, the Secretary of State or Network Rail requires the Franchisee to operate the Passenger Services to a specification that is materially reduced compared to the specification that was assumed when the Target Profit was established.
- 2.3 Either:
  - 2.3.1 the Secretary of State designates the occurrence of Industrial Action as a Category A Target Amendment Trigger Event pursuant to paragraph 5.3 of part 2 (Industrial Relations and Dispute Handling) of Schedule 6.3 (ERMA Specific Obligations); or
  - 2.3.2 the occurrence of Industrial Action in the circumstances set out in paragraph 5.4 of part 2 (Industrial Relations and Dispute Handling) of Schedule 6.3 (ERMA Specific Obligations).
- 2.4 A Variation which:
  - 2.4.1 results in the Franchisee incurring additional expenditure;

- 2.4.2 would reasonably result in the Franchisee incurring lower expenditure;
- 2.4.3 results in the Franchisee earning less revenue; or
- 2.4.4 would reasonably result in the Franchisee earning greater revenue, than if the Variation had not been implemented.
- 2.5 An event set out in any Secretary of State Risk Assumptions specified in Schedule 9.4 (*Secretary of State Risk Assumptions*).
- 2.6 A Charge Variation.
- 2.7 A Change of Law.
- 2.8 A change to the Train Service Requirement previously in force pursuant to the issue of an amended or new Train Service Requirement in accordance with paragraph 16.5 of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*).
- 2.9 The Franchisee being required to take any action pursuant to paragraph 19.1(a) and/or paragraph 19.1(b) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services*).
- 2.10 The Secretary of State effects an amendment to a Discount Fare Scheme, introduces a new Discount Fare Scheme or ceases to approve a Discount Fare Scheme for the purposes of section 28 of the Act.
- 2.11 The Secretary of State approves an amendment or proposed amendment to an Inter-Operator Scheme, as referred to in paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 2.5 (*Transport, Travel and Other Schemes*) if the Franchisee makes a saving as a consequence of such amendment or proposed amendment.
- 2.12 The imposition, subject to the provisions of paragraph 2.6 of Schedule 4 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*), of any increased access charges in respect of EA Requirements at Franchisee Access Stations.
- 2.13 The Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's power pursuant to paragraph 5 (*Changes to Fares Regulation*) of Schedule 5.7 (*Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation*) to alter the obligations of and restrictions on the Franchisee under Schedule 5 (*Fares and Smart Ticketing*).
- 2.14 The Franchisee is obliged to charge Value Added Tax on a Fare or there is an increase or decrease in the rate of Value Added Tax which it must charge on such Fare, in either case due to a change in the Value Added Tax treatment.
- 2.15 The exercise by the Secretary of State of the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 15.1(c) (*Environmental Information Data Collection Plan*) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).
- 2.16 The circumstances set out in paragraph 3.2 of Schedule 2.2 (*Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases*) occur.
- 2.17 The Secretary of State issues a TDR Amendment pursuant to paragraph 12.8 (*TDR Amendments*) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) in the circumstances described in paragraph 12.10(b) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*).

- 2.18** The circumstances contemplated in paragraph 12.11(b) of Schedule 1.1 (*Franchise Services and Service Development*) occur.
- 2.19** The delay of an item of expenditure or a group of items of similar expenditure where the timing of expenditure is materially different from that included in the Target Profit.
- 2.20** The Secretary of State issuing any other guidance or instruction which could reasonably be expected to have a material impact on the Franchisee's ability to achieve, exceed or fail to achieve the relevant Target Profit.

**Appendix 7 to Schedule 8.1B  
Pro Forma Target Tables**

- 1 **Table 1:** Required when the Operational Performance Fee is assessed using the Quantified Target Methodology. Each item marked with ✓ is to be agreed or reasonably determined in respect of each Reporting Period within the relevant PBF Assessment Period pursuant to paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B.

Indicator	Default Performance Level	Breach Performance Level	Range within which the Franchisee's performance is expected to fall	
			From	To
Cancellations	✓	✓	✓	✓
TOC Minutes Delay	✓	✓	✓	✓
Short Formations	✓	✓	✓	✓
T-3	n/a		✓	✓
T-15			✓	✓
All Cancellations			✓	✓

- 2 **Table 2:** Required when the Customer Experience Fee is assessed (wholly or in part) using the NRPS Methodology. Each ✓ indicates a single figure to be agreed or reasonably determined for the whole PBF Assessment Period. This table shall be amended to reflect any different NRPS Service Groups agreed pursuant to paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B.

Indicator	NRPS Improvement Plan Level	Range within which the Franchisee's performance is expected to fall	
		From	To
NRPS Trains		✓	✓
NRPS Stations		✓	✓
NRPS Customer Service		✓	✓
NRPS Dealing with Delays		✓	✓
NRPS Trains – Mainline	✓		
NRPS Trains – Rural	✓		
NRPS Trains – Stansted Express	✓		



NRPS Trains – West Anglia	✓		
NRPS Stations – Mainline	✓		
NRPS Stations – Rural	✓		
NRPS Stations – Stansted Express	✓		
NRPS Stations – West Anglia	✓		
NRPS Customer Service – Mainline	✓		
NRPS Customer Service – Rural	✓		
NRPS Customer Service – Stansted Express	✓		
NRPS Customer Service – West Anglia	✓		
NRPS Dealing with Delays – Mainline	✓		
NRPS Dealing with Delays – Rural	✓		
NRPS Dealing with Delays – Stansted Express	✓		
NRPS Dealing with Delays – West Anglia	✓		

3 [Not used]

4 [Not used]

**Appendix 8 to Schedule 8.1B**  
**Passenger Survey Methodology Template**

**Guidance on the Passenger Survey Methodology for East Anglia franchise**

**How East Anglia National Rail Passenger Survey (NRPS) Measure scores are calculated**

**Introduction**

1. The East Anglia Franchise Agreement makes provision for NRPS Measures, derived from NRPS results, to be used to measure the franchisee's performance against NRPS Improvement Plan Levels and NRPS Targets for passenger satisfaction on four aspects of service set out below.
2. Different types of NRPS indicator have been identified and grouped to form four specific NRPS Measures:
  - Stations (S)
  - Trains (T)
  - Customer Services (C)
  - Dealing with Delays (D)
3. The NRPS indicators within each NRPS satisfaction measure grouping are as follows: **[Note: parties to agree the indicators within each Measure pursuant to paragraph 4 of Schedule 8.1B]:**
4. NRPS Improvement Plan Levels (including any NRPS Improvement Plan Levels which will be set at a Service Group level) are set as follows: **[Note: parties to agree how these will be set for each Measure, and in particular whether they will be set at Service Group level or aggregated on some other basis, pursuant to paragraph 4 of Schedule 8.1B]**
5. This means that there are a total of [ ] NRPS Measures for each PBF Assessment Period. **[Note: this will follow the indicators listed in paragraph 3 and the basis upon which NRPS Improvement Plan Levels are set in paragraph 4 ].**
6. A total of [xx] different survey questions are used in the assessment. **[Note: this will reflect the questions that apply.]**
7. All journeys on the East Anglia franchise are included in the calculation of the scores, irrespective of where the journey starts on the East Anglia network or who runs the particular station where the East Anglia passenger started their journey from.

**Calculation of the NRPS Measure scores**

8. NRPS Measure scores are calculated for each applicable PBF Assessment Period, based on the number of surveys published in that period. This will typically be one survey wave (Spring or Autumn). Scores for each question are added together, prior to rounding, and the overall total is then divided by the number of questions contained within the NRPS Measure to calculate the final score for the Measure.
9. If more than one survey is published in a PBF Assessment Period, scores for each question for each survey wave are added together, then divided by the number of applicable surveys, to create the average score for each question. These are then summed and the overall total is then divided by the number of questions within the NRPS Measure to calculate the final score.

10. Final scores will be rounded to one decimal place with the midpoint (that is, 74.45) rounded upwards (that is, 74.5). This is then compared to the NRPS Improvement Plan Level for the PBF Assessment Period to establish whether this has been met, exceeded or missed.
11. Performance against the NRPS Targets is determined in accordance with paragraph 4 of Schedule 7.2 and paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B.

**Appendix 6 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*)**

## **Schedule 11.2 Management Information**

### **1 Corporate Information**

**1.1** The Franchisee shall provide the following information to the Secretary of State on the Start Date and shall notify the Secretary of State of any change to such information within twenty one (21) days of such change:

**1.1.1** its name;

**1.1.2** its business address and registered office;

**1.1.3** its directors and company secretary;

**1.1.4** its auditors;

**1.1.5** its trading name or names; and

**1.1.6** to the best of the Franchisee's knowledge and belief, having made due and diligent enquiry, the identity of all persons holding, separately or acting by agreement, directly or indirectly, the right to cast more than twenty per cent (20%) of the votes at general meetings of the Franchisee.

**1.2** The Franchisee shall inform the Secretary of State of any material change or proposed material change in its business (including the employment or the termination of employment of any Key Personnel, the termination of any Key Contract and any litigation or other dispute which may have a material effect on its business) and any material change in or restructuring of the capitalisation or financing of the Franchisee, the Parent or the Guarantor.

### **2 Information about Assets used in the Franchise**

**2.1** The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Term maintain (and shall provide copies to the Secretary of State when requested to do so from time to time) records covering the following information:

**2.1.1** for each Primary Franchise Asset or other asset which is the subject of, or operated under, a Key Contract:

(i) the progress and completion of all work described in the maintenance schedules and manuals;

(ii) all operating manuals (including any safety related regulations);

(iii) all permits, licences, certificates or other documents required to operate such asset; and

(iv) a printed or electronic list of all assets owned by the Franchisee from time to time (excluding, unless otherwise requested by the Secretary of State, any office furniture and consumable items); and

**2.1.2** each capital asset acquired by the Franchisee during the term of the EMA and the ERMA with a value of over £50,000, including the Franchisee's source of funding for such asset, the depreciation policy for such asset, the assumed asset life on bringing such asset into use and the remaining asset life of such asset as at the date of any request from the Secretary of State for this information.

- 2.2** As soon as practicable and, in any event, no later than 27 November 2020, the Franchisee shall identify and provide to the Secretary of State a list and reasonable details of all contracts it has entered into with third parties (including Affiliates) which the Franchisee would not be entitled to terminate on expiry of the Franchise Term without incurring liability in relation to the termination of such contract on that date.

### **3 Identification of Key Personnel and Provision of Organisation Chart**

- 3.1** The Franchisee shall identify and provide to the Secretary of State a schedule of Key Personnel who shall be employed by the Franchisee in the performance of the Franchise Agreement. This shall include, but not be limited to, the following persons:

- 3.1.1** a managing director whose role will include the overall management of the operation of the Franchise Services;
- 3.1.2** a train service delivery director, whose role will include responsibility for ensuring compliance by the Franchisee with Schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*);
- 3.1.3** a safety director, whose role will include responsibility for ensuring that the Franchisee complies with its legal obligations in relation to the Franchise Services including the Safety Certificate; and
- 3.1.4** a finance director, whose role will include responsibility in relation to the Budget, the Annual Audited Accounts, the Final Accounts and the provision of other financial data to Secretary of State.

- 3.2** The Franchisee shall nominate a board level director of the Franchisee (or at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, a director of a Parent or an Affiliate) within seven (7) days of the date of this Agreement. Such director's responsibilities include overseeing, at a strategic level, the Franchisee's interface with the Secretary of State in relation to Sections 119 to 121 (inclusive) of the Act and co-ordinating relevant activities and delivery of counter terrorist security on behalf of the Franchisee in connection with the Franchisee's compliance with relevant instructions issued by the Secretary of State under Section 119 of the Act from time to time. Such director shall be identified by job title in the organisation chart referred to in paragraph 3.3 and shall be deemed part of the Key Personnel.

- 3.3** On or before the Start Date, the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State the schedule of Key Personnel and the organisation chart detailing the responsibilities and reporting lines of each of the Key Personnel and shall update the schedule and organisation chart (and provide copies to the Secretary of State promptly thereafter), as and when any changes occur.

### **4 Operational Performance Information**

The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State the information specified in Appendix 2 (*Operational Performance Information*) to this Schedule 11.2 at the times specified therein.

### **5 Maintenance of Records**

- 5.1** The Franchisee shall at all times create and maintain true, up to date and complete records, books and other materials relating to the:
- 5.1.1** operation and maintenance of Franchise Assets;
- 5.1.2** operation of the Franchise Services; and

**5.1.3** financial performance of the Franchise,

in each case, in exercising that degree of care, skill, diligence, prudence, efficiency, foresight and timeliness which would reasonably be expected from a prudent and leading Train Operator and in order to fulfil the requirements of the Franchise Agreement, including in relation to maintenance of the Franchise as a going concern in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 14.1 (*Maintenance of Franchise*).

**5.2** Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, all records, books and materials required to be maintained by the Franchisee in accordance with this Schedule 11.2 shall be held in a form that is capable of audit for a period of not less than six (6) years following the Expiry Date or the date of any earlier termination of this Agreement.

**5.3** References to records, books and materials in this Schedule 11.2 shall include records, books and materials maintained under any Previous Franchise Agreement to the extent that such records relate to services equivalent to the Franchise Services and the Franchisee has access to them (which it shall use all reasonable endeavours to secure). Notwithstanding the requirements of paragraphs 5.2 and 5.4, the Franchisee shall only be required to hold such records, books and materials created under any Previous Franchise Agreement for a period of six (6) years following the date of this Agreement.

**5.4** The Franchisee shall not be responsible for any records, books or materials maintained under any Previous Franchise Agreement, as referred to in paragraph 5.3, being true, complete and up to date. As soon as reasonably practicable after becoming aware that any such records, books or materials are not true, complete and up to date, the Franchisee shall take all reasonable steps to remedy any such deficiency, and shall thereafter maintain such records, books or materials in accordance with paragraph 5.1.

## **6 Right to Inspect**

**6.1** The Franchisee shall, if requested by the Secretary of State, allow the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers:

**6.1.1** to inspect and copy any records referred to in this Schedule 11.2, Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) or Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) and the Secretary of State may verify any such records; and/or

**6.1.2** to inspect and copy at any reasonable time any books, records and any other material kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee and/or its auditors and any assets (including the Franchise Assets) used by the Franchisee in connection with the Franchise Services.

**6.2** The Franchisee shall make available to the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers the information referred to in paragraph 6.1 and grant or procure the grant of such access (including to or from third parties) as the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall reasonably require in connection therewith. The obligation of the Franchisee under this paragraph 6.2 shall include an obligation on the Franchisee to grant or procure the grant of such access to premises (including third party premises) where the information referred to in paragraph 6.1 is kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee.

**6.3** The Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall be permitted to take photographs, film or make a video recording, or make any other kind of record of any such inspection.

- 6.4** If any inspection reveals that information previously supplied to the Secretary of State was, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, inaccurate in any material respect or if such inspection reveals any other contravention of the Franchisee's obligations under the Franchise Agreement which the Secretary of State considers to be material, the costs of any such inspection shall be borne by the Franchisee and which, for the avoidance of doubt, shall be Disallowable Costs pursuant to Appendix 1 (*Disallowable Costs*) to Schedule 8.1A.

## **7 Information to the Passengers' Council and Local Authorities**

The Franchisee shall comply with any reasonable requests and guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time in respect of the provision of information to and co-operation and consultation with the Passengers' Council and Local Authorities.

### **7A Information relating to Committed Obligations and Franchise Specific Obligations**

**7.1.1** As soon as practicable and, in any event no later than 27 November 2020, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a statement in respect of the status of each Franchise Specific Obligation and Committed Obligation as at 1 March 2020 including:

- (i) a breakdown of Franchise Specific Obligations and Committed Obligations setting out those which:
  - A. were completed in full and in respect of which the Franchisee has no further obligations;
  - B. were fully implemented but where the Franchisee retained ongoing obligations in relation to the continued discharge of the relevant Franchise Specific Obligation and/or Committed Obligation (as applicable);
  - C. were partially implemented and in respect of which the Franchisee retained ongoing obligations; and
  - D. the Franchisee had not yet commenced implementing.
- (ii) in respect of each of the Franchise Specific Obligations and Committed Obligations identified in paragraph (i)(B)-(C) above, details of:
  - A. the progress of implementation of the relevant Franchise Specific Obligation or Committed Obligation (as applicable) and any Franchisee obligations which remain outstanding or are continuing;
  - B. where applicable, the reason(s) for any delay in implementing the relevant Franchise Specific Obligation or Committed Obligation (as applicable), together with any supporting evidence; and
  - C. the Franchisee's actual expenditure together with a reconciliation against the amount it was obliged or otherwise projected to spend up to 1 March 2020 in respect of the implementation and continued discharge (as applicable) of the relevant Franchise Specific Obligation or Committed Obligation (as applicable).



7.1.2 Without prejudice to the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 7A(c) below, the Secretary of State may exercise the Secretary of State's rights under paragraph 9.9 of Schedule 11.2 to audit or otherwise investigate any of the matters described in paragraph 7A(a).

7.1.3 Without prejudice to the Franchisee's obligations under paragraph 7A(a) above, the Secretary of State reserves the right to determine, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, the position in respect of the matters described in paragraph 7A(a) by reference to all the information available to it.

## **8 Periodic Update Reports**

8.1 The Franchisee shall prepare and submit to the Secretary of State a periodic report in each Reporting Period which shall:

8.1.1 contain updates on the Franchisee's progress in complying with its Committed Obligations together with any other information as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time;

8.1.2 relate to the period preceding the date of the report, unless another period is reasonably required by the Secretary of State; and

8.1.3 be disaggregated to the extent required by the Secretary of State.

8.2 Where, as part of the periodic report referred to in paragraph 8.1, the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to provide information and/or details in addition to those required pursuant to paragraph 8.1, the Franchisee shall ensure that the periodic report includes such additional information and/or details, subject to the Franchisee having received at least twenty eight (28) days' notice of the additional information and/or details required by the Secretary of State.

8.3 Without prejudice to any other reporting obligations of the Franchisee, the Franchisee shall, at the end of each Reporting Period, provide a separate and standalone progress update to the Secretary of State in respect of:

8.3.1 the matters included in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) to the ERMA and the matters referenced in paragraphs 2.2 and 7A of this Schedule 11.2; and

8.3.2 such other related information as the Secretary of State may request.

## **9 Financial Information**

### **9.1 Accounting Records**

The Franchisee shall prepare and at all times during the Franchise Term maintain true, up to date and complete accounting records as are required to be kept under section 386 of the Companies Act 2006. Such records shall be prepared on a consistent basis for each Reporting Period of the Franchisee Year. In particular, the Franchisee shall ensure that such accounting records are produced and maintained in a form which distinguishes between transactions which reasonably and properly relate, on the accruals basis, to:

9.1.1 the period prior to 1 March 2020;

9.1.2 the period from 1 March 2020 to the EMA Start Date;

9.1.3 the term of the EMA;

9.1.4 the term of the ERMA; and

9.1.5 the period after the term of the ERMA (if any).

## 9.2 Reporting Period Financial Information

9.2.1 The Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State, within ten (10) Weekdays of the end of each Reporting Period:

- (i) Management Accounts for such Reporting Period, setting out a cash flow statement, profit and loss account and balance sheet for that Reporting Period and cumulatively for the Franchisee Year to date;
- (ii) written confirmation that the Management Accounts, to the best of the knowledge, information and belief of the board of directors of the Franchisee, contain a true and accurate reflection of the current revenues, costs, assets and liabilities of the Franchisee (including contingent assets or liabilities and known business risks and opportunities) and, to the extent that they do not, identify in a written report relevant issues in reasonable detail and provide such further information that the Secretary of State shall reasonably require in relation; and
- (iii) written confirmation from a statutory director of the Franchisee that the Franchisee has complied with the restrictions applicable during the Lock-up Period pursuant to paragraph 3 of Schedule 12 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*).

9.2.2 The Management Accounts shall also set out:

- (i) sufficient information to enable the Secretary of State to calculate with reasonable accuracy the Forecast Closing Cash Position as at the end of the following three (3) Reporting Periods;
- (ii) the Franchisee's forecast of:
  - (a) the Franchisee's daily Cash Balance for the period of thirteen (13) weeks following the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate;
  - (b) the amount of Working Capital Payment (if any) that the Franchisee forecasts that it will require pursuant to paragraph 9 (*Review of Franchisee's performance against Budget*) of Schedule 8.1A in respect of the three (3) Reporting Periods following the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate, which forecasts shall provide an explanation in relation to any material differences between the actual and forecast payments to and from Affiliates as referred to in paragraph 9.29.2.2(iv)(c) below; and
  - (c) payments to and from Affiliates of the Franchisee, disaggregated between each individual Affiliate entity, in respect of the three (3) Reporting Periods following the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate;
- (iii) a detailed statement of the Franchisee's actual payments to and from Affiliates of the Franchisee and the net balance of such payments, disaggregated between each individual Affiliate entity in respect of the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate, setting out the details of the specific company or legal entity the transactions were with and the nature of the goods or services exchanged in respect of the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate, which shall provide separate identification of:

- (a) the Affiliate to or from whom each such payment was made; and
  - (b) a description of the nature of the services rendered in relation to each such payment;
- (iv)
  - (a) a comparison of the Franchisee's financial performance during such period against the forecast provided by the Franchisee in the then current Business Plan and Quarterly Forecast;
  - (b) a comparison on a line by line basis of Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenue of the Franchisee compared to the Budgeted Costs, Budgeted Capex and Estimated Revenue for that Reporting Period; and
  - (c) a detailed statement and a detailed and comprehensive written explanation of any material differences between the actual payments to and from Affiliates of the Franchisee and the forecast of such payments as referred to in paragraph 9.29.2.2(ii) above as set out in the Management Accounts in relation to the preceding Reporting Period;
- (v) a comparison of the Franchisee's cumulative financial performance during the Franchisee Year in which such period occurs against the then current Business Plan and Quarterly Forecast and in particular of cumulative Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenue of the Franchisee compared to cumulative forecasts of the same in the then current Business Plan and Quarterly Forecast;
- (vi) a detailed statement and a detailed and comprehensive written explanation of any material differences between such Management Accounts and the forecasts referred to in paragraph 9.2.2(ii) above as set out in the Management Accounts in relation to the preceding Reporting Period and a detailed and comprehensive explanation of the variances between Actual Costs and Budgeted Costs, Actual Capex and Budgeted Capex, and Actual Revenues and Estimated Revenue and a description of (1) the steps which have been taken by the Franchisee to address and mitigate any Costs in excess of Budgeted Costs and/or Capex variances to Budgeted Capex and/or Estimated Revenue shortfall and/or (2) which could otherwise be taken for that purpose;
- (vii) where:
  - (a) the level of financial performance reported in the Management Accounts is, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, materially worse than forecast by the Franchisee in its then current Business Plan or Quarterly Forecast (whichever is more recent);
  - (b) the Franchisee's Outturn Cost and/or Outturn Profit (as applicable) in relation to the preceding PBF Assessment Period was worse than the applicable Target Cost or Target Profit pursuant to Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*); or
  - (c) the Secretary of State considers (acting reasonably) that it is likely that the Franchisee's Outturn Cost and/or Outturn Profit (as applicable) in relation to the current PBF Assessment Period or the preceding PBF Assessment Period (if the Outturn Cost and/or Outturn Profit has not yet been calculated)),

the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to prepare and submit to the Secretary of State, as soon as reasonably practicable, a Financial Action Plan to ensure that the level of financial performance forecast in its current Business Plan for the remainder of the currency of that Business Plan is achieved and the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement such Financial Action Plan; and

- (viii) if applicable, a detailed statement and explanation of any PCS Advances (as defined in the Funding Deed) provided during such Reporting Period;
- (ix) a detailed statement and a detailed and comprehensive written explanation of any material differences between such payments to and from Affiliates and the forecast referred to in paragraph 9.29.2.2(ii)(c);
- (x) sufficient information to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the Performance Based Fee, including (where applicable) a clear and detailed comparison of the:
  - (a) cumulative Actual Costs less any cumulative Disallowable Costs in relation to the PBF Assessment Period to date, as compared with the cumulative forecast Costs set out in the Target Cost Template as Placed in Escrow; and
  - (b) cumulative Actual Costs less any cumulative Disallowable Costs and cumulative Actual Revenue plus cumulative Revenue Foregone in relation to the PBF Assessment Period to date, as compared with the cumulative forecast Costs and Revenues set out in the Target Profit Template as Placed in Escrow,

and any other information which the Secretary of State may request (acting reasonably).

- 9.2.3** Within five (5) Weekdays after receipt of the Management Accounts for each Reporting Period in accordance with paragraphs 9.2.1 and 9.2.2 above, the Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of any further information, explanation or analysis which the Secretary of State requires in relation to the Management Accounts (including information in relation to the calculation of the Franchise Payment under the provisions of Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*)) and the Franchisee shall promptly provide such further information or analysis.

### **9.3 Quarterly Financial Information**

- 9.3.1** Within twenty (20) weekdays after the end of the 3rd, 6th and 9th Reporting Periods in each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State the following information (a "**Quarterly Forecast**"):
- (i) a comprehensive updated version of the profit and loss forecast, cash flow forecast and forecast balance sheet provided as part of either the current Annual Business Plan in accordance with paragraph 10.1 (*Annual Business Plans*) of this Schedule 11.2 or the then-current Quarterly Forecast (whichever is more recent) together with a detailed and comprehensive written explanation as to any changes in such forecast from the previous forecast provided pursuant to the provisions of this Schedule 11.2, for each of the following thirteen (13) Reporting Periods or for each of the Reporting Periods to 31 March 2022, whichever is greater;

- (ii)
  - (a) a copy of each new contract with an Affiliate which the Franchisee proposes to enter into or renew in the next 6 months;
  - (b) a copy of each existing contract with an Affiliate which the Franchisee proposes to amend in the next 6 months; and
  - (c) details of any potential contract procurement process (pursuant to which the Franchisee proposes to enter into a contract with the successful bidder) in which the Franchisee reasonably expects an Affiliate to participate in the next 6 months,

in each case following the end of the relevant Quarter; and
- (iii) a statement from a statutory director of the Franchisee confirming that the profit and loss forecast delivered pursuant to paragraph 9.39.3.1(i) has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Franchise Agreement.

**9.3.2** Where any Reporting Period falls partly within one (1) Franchisee Year and partly within another, the results for each section of such Reporting Period falling either side of such Franchisee Year end shall be prepared on an accruals basis for each such section of such Reporting Period.

**9.3.3** The Franchisee shall, promptly and in any event within twenty-five (25) Weekdays of a request from the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), deliver to the Secretary of State an updated forecast in relation to the information required to be delivered pursuant to paragraphs 9.39.3.1 and 9.39.3.2 in the same level of detail as is required pursuant to paragraphs 9.39.3.1 and 9.39.3.2.

**9.3.4** If:

- (i) the Secretary of State has issued a notice to the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 4.2(a) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) in relation to a PBF Assessment Period commencing on any date other than 1 April in any Franchisee Year; and
- (ii) the Franchisee has not delivered a Quarterly Forecast to the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 9.3 for the most recent quarter,

the Secretary of State may reasonably determine the contents of the Quarterly Forecast for the purposes of setting the Target Cost and/or the Target Profit (as applicable).

## **9.4 Annual Financial Information**

**9.4.1** Within fifteen (15) Weekdays of the end of each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State:

- (i) its Annual Management Accounts for that Franchisee Year, divided between Reporting Periods:
  - (a) prior to 1 March 2020;
  - (b) during the period from 1 March 2020 to the EMA Start Date;
  - (c) during the term of the EMA;
  - (d) during the term of the ERMA; and

- (e) following the term of the ERMA (if any).

For all Reporting Periods, line items should be disaggregated between sections in relation to Actual Costs, Actual Revenues, Actual Capex, Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, Accrued Disallowable Costs, Accrued Revenue Foregone, accrued SoS Claims, Non-Recoverable Costs and Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs; and

- (ii) a supplementary explanation setting out details of any Non- Recoverable Costs and Disallowable Costs that have not been reimbursed for that Franchisee Year.

**9.4.2** Within four (4) Reporting Periods after the end of each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State the following information:

- (i) certified true copies of its annual report and Annual Audited Accounts for that Franchisee Year, together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports. Additionally, the auditors shall certify that the accounting for and reporting of any annual related bonuses paid to the directors and managers is reasonably consistent with GAAP;
- (ii) a detailed and comprehensive reconciliation between the Annual Audited Accounts and the Management Accounts for the Franchisee Year (the "**Audited Accounts Reconciliation**"). The Audited Accounts Reconciliation shall:
  - (a) include a detailed reconciliation, disaggregating Actual Costs, Actual Revenues, Actual Capex, Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, Accrued Disallowable Costs, Accrued Revenue Foregone, accrued SoS Claims, Non-Recoverable Costs and Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs in the Annual Audited Accounts to: (1) each of the periodic Management Accounts within that Franchisee Year and (2) the Annual Management Accounts in relation to that Franchisee Year, all in a format to be from time to time reasonably specified by the Secretary of State. This reconciliation shall:
    - (I) disaggregate the Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenues in the Annual Audited Accounts so as to report against (and show in a format consistent with that used in) the Budget and, where relevant, the Target Cost Template and/or the Target Profit Template held in Escrow in relation to any PBF Assessment Periods within that Franchisee Year; and
    - (II) facilitate the identification of Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenues as reported in the Annual Audited Accounts;
  - (b) include a statement of the Franchisee's balance sheet included within the Annual Audited Accounts in relation to the previous Franchisee Year (the "**Opening Balance Sheet**"), disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State and the aggregate amount of all other balances (such aggregated other balances being the "**Opening Operational Balances**");
  - (c) include a statement of the Franchisee's audited balance sheet included within the Annual Audited Accounts as at the end of the Franchisee Year (the "**Closing Balance Sheet**"), disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State and the aggregate

amount of all other balances (such aggregated other balances being the "**Closing Operational Balances**");

- (d) include a statement identifying and explaining the differences between the Opening Operational Balances and the Closing Operational Balances (such differences comprising the "**Operational Delta**") in sufficient detail to allow the Secretary of State to obtain a full understanding of the reasons for the Operational Delta;
  - (e) clearly identify and distinguish between transactions within the Operational Delta which reasonably and properly relate, on the accruals basis to each of that Franchisee Year, any other Reporting Periods during the term of the EMA or the ERMA, and any Reporting Periods prior to 1 March 2020, sufficient to allow identification of transactions and accounting adjustments which do not relate to the term of the EMA or the ERMA;
  - (f) identify the total Actual Costs and total Actual Revenue that are included within the Operational Delta;
  - (g) identify any and all Accrued Disallowable Costs or Accrued Revenue Foregone which are in the Opening Balance Sheet or Closing Balance Sheet, and any Accrued Revenue Foregone which is not included in the Closing Balance Sheet but which existed at 19 September 2020;
- (iii) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors (in a format to be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State from time to time, on the basis of providing the Secretary of State with reasonable assurance) that the Audited Accounts Reconciliation has been undertaken accurately;
  - (iv) [Not used]
  - (v) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors confirming that GAAP has been applied in a fair and consistent manner;
  - (vi) [Not used];
  - (vii) [Not used]; and
  - (viii) sufficient information for the Secretary of State to calculate the Final Adjustments, the Final Working Capital Adjustment and the Performance Based Fee.

#### **9.4A Additional Financial Information**

**9.4.3** By no later than the end of the first Reporting Period following the date of the ERMA, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State:

- (i) a draft of the Franchisee's balance sheet as at 1 March 2020, prepared in accordance with GAAP, on the accruals basis and on the basis of all knowledge and information available to the Franchisee at the time of preparation, such balance sheet being disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State (such balances in aggregate being the "**Restated P2012 SoS Balances**") and all other balances (such other balances in aggregate being the "**Restated P2012 Operational Balances**"), both provided



in a level of detail to be specified from time to time by the Secretary of State (the “**Restated P2012 Balance Sheet**”); and

- (ii) a reconciliation to the Restated P2012 Balance Sheet within the Annual Audited Accounts provided by the Franchisee for the Franchisee Year ending on the date that is closest to 1 March 2020.

9.4.4 Within 10 Weekdays following the date on which the Restated P2012 Balance Sheet is agreed or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraphs 9.4A9.4.11 or 9.4A9.4.12 (as applicable) below, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State:

- (i) a draft of the Franchisee’s balance sheet as at 20 September 2020 prepared in accordance with GAAP, on the accruals basis and on the basis of all knowledge and information available to the Franchisee at the time of preparation, such balance sheet being disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State (such balances in aggregate being the “**Restated P2106 SoS Balances**”) and all other balances (such other balances in aggregate being the “**Restated P2106 Operational Balances**”) both provided in a level of detail to be specified from time to time by the Secretary of State (the “**Restated P2106 Balance Sheet**”); and
- (ii) a reconciliation between the Restated P2012 SoS Balances and the Restated P2106 SoS Balances, and between the Restated P2012 Operational Balances and the Restated P2106 Operational Balances.

9.4.5 As soon as practicable and in any event by no later than two (2) months following the term of the ERMA, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State:

- (i) a draft of the Franchisee’s balance sheet as at the date of the end of the ERMA term, prepared in accordance with GAAP, on the accruals basis and on the basis of all knowledge and information available to the Franchisee at the time of preparation, such balance sheet being disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State (such balances in aggregate being the “**Final ERMA SoS Balances**”) and all other balances (such other balances in aggregate being the “**Final ERMA Operational Balances**”) both provided in a level of detail to be specified from time to time by the Secretary of State (the “**Final ERMA Balance Sheet**”); and
- (ii) a reconciliation between the Restated P2012 SoS Balances and the Final ERMA SoS Balances, and between the Restated P2012 Operational Balances and the Final Operational Balances,

with such Final ERMA Balance Sheet being a Closing Balance Sheet as at the date of the end of the ERMA term and, where such date is also the Expiry Date, shall include and be reconciled to the Net Asset Statement (as defined in Appendix 2 (*Form of Supplemental Agreement*) to Schedule 15.4 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*)) of the Franchisee.

9.4.6 The Franchisee shall ensure that each of the schedule of Restated P2012 Operational Balances, schedule of Restated P2106 Operational Balances and schedule of Final ERMA Operational Balances in each Balance Sheet (as defined below) shall clearly identify the assets and liabilities to the account of the Franchisee (being balance sheet



items of the Franchisee), properly prepared on an accruals basis for, and disaggregated between, all relevant items including:

- (i) reserves, equity or any other balance sheet items in relation to any Performance Based Fee, Fixed Fee or Management Fee and Performance Payment (as such term is defined in schedule 8.A (*Franchise Payments*) of the EMA);
- (ii) if applicable, any PCS Advances, Outstanding AFC (each as defined in the Funding Deed), and any interest payable on such amounts, in accordance with the terms of the ERMA;
- (iii) fixed assets designated as Primary Franchise Assets and/or Residual Value Assets (as applicable); and
- (iv) fixed assets that have been funded by the Secretary of State in accordance with the terms of the ERMA.

**9.4.7** The Franchisee shall ensure that each of the schedule of Restated P2012 SoS Balances, schedule of Restated P2106 SoS Balances and schedule of Final ERMA SoS Balances in each Balance Sheet (as defined below) shall clearly identify the assets and liabilities to the account of the Franchisee (being balance sheet items of the Franchisee), properly prepared on the accruals basis for, and disaggregated between, all relevant items including but not being limited to:

- (i) any Accrued Disallowable Costs, Accrued Revenue Foregone and accrued SoS Claims;
- (ii) the Working Capital Payment or Working Capital Repayment (if any) pursuant to Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*);
- (iii) accruals in relation to any Franchise Payment;
- (iv) deferred or accrued Franchise Payments relating to the period prior to 1 March 2020;
- (v) deferred or accrued Franchise Payments relating to the period from 1 March 2020 onwards; and
- (vi) accruals or provisions for claims between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State relating to Change or SOSRA.

**9.4.8** The Franchisee shall ensure that each of Restated P2012 Balance Sheet, Restated P2106 Balance Sheet and Final ERMA Balance Sheet shall clearly identify:

- (i) where provisions or accruals have been created for the period following 1 March 2020, a clear evidence base for how these provisions or accruals have been valued by the Franchisee; and
- (ii) where provisions or accruals exist as at the date of any Balance Sheet and such provisions or accruals relate to the period prior to 1 March 2020:
  - (a) a summary of these items;
  - (b) where such items are included with the relevant Balance Sheet(s); and
  - (c) the Franchisee's proposed approach to winding down these items over the term of the ERMA.

- 9.4.9** Each of the Restated P2012 Balance Sheet, the Restated P2016 Balance Sheet and the Final ERMA Balance Sheet (together, the “**Balance Sheets**”) shall be accompanied by a statement from a director of the Franchisee confirming that such Balance Sheet gives a true and fair view of the assets, liabilities, equity and reserves of the Franchisee as at the relevant dates in accordance with GAAP consistently applied and on the basis of all knowledge and information available to the Franchisee on the date of provision to the Secretary of State in each case.
- 9.4.10** The Franchisee shall promptly supply, or procure prompt supply of, all supporting information on an open book basis the Secretary of State may reasonably require in relation to each delivery of any Balance Sheet. If requested by the Secretary of State to do so, the Franchisee shall procure a statement from the Franchisee’s auditor confirming that GAAP has been applied in a fair and consistent manner in any such Balance Sheet, including any version of such Balance Sheet after any amendments have been made. As requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall promptly provide updated versions of any such Balance Sheet to reflect amendments prior to final agreement or determination in accordance with paragraphs 9.4A9.4.11 or 9.4A9.4.12 (as applicable) below.
- 9.4.11** After receipt of each Balance Sheet by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 9.4A, the Franchisee and the Secretary of State shall seek to promptly agree any amendments required to the Balance Sheets in order to give a true and fair view of the assets, liabilities, equity and reserves of the Franchisee as at the relevant dates in accordance with GAAP consistently applied and on the basis of all knowledge and information available to the Franchisee and the Secretary of State at the time of consideration. The Franchisee and the Secretary of State recognise and agree that this will require the most recent revaluation of assets and liabilities of the Franchisee as at the dates of each Balance Sheet, and that such revaluation shall be included in place of any earlier valuation provided in the balance sheets included in any Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts or Annual Audited Accounts
- 9.4.12** Subject to paragraph 9.4A9.4.13 below, in the event that the Franchisee and the Secretary of State cannot agree final versions of any Balance Sheets which, in the Secretary of State’s opinion (acting reasonably), give a true and fair view on the basis of the evidence available to the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State may reasonably determine any values within any such Balance Sheets.
- 9.4.13** The Secretary of State shall not be entitled to reasonably determine any Final ERMA Balance Sheet values in accordance with paragraph 9.4A9.4.12 above until the later of:
- (i) seven (7) Reporting Periods following the termination of the EMA; or
  - (ii) the date upon which the Annual Audited Accounts and Annual Accounts Reconciliation for the Franchisee Year in which the ERMA ends are due to be provided.

Where the value of any assets or liabilities within the Final ERMA Balance Sheet have previously been determined by the Reporting Accountants pursuant to Appendix 2 (*Template Form of Supplemental Agreement*) to Schedule 15.4 (*Provisions applying on and after Termination*), the Secretary of State shall only be entitled to reasonably determine a different value in the case of manifest error being discovered in the valuation previously determined by the Reporting Accountants.

- 9.4.14 The Franchisee shall unwind the Final ERMA Balance Sheet promptly following the date on which the Final ERMA Balance Sheet is agreed or determined by the Secretary of State, acting as a Good and Efficient Operator.
- 9.4.15 The Franchisee shall, if requested to do so by the Secretary of State and in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, within two (2) Reporting Periods following the final Reporting Period of the ERMA Term or the Extended Term (as applicable) deliver to the Secretary of State:
- (i) certified true copies of its Final Accounts for the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods in aggregate, together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports;
  - (ii) a detailed and comprehensive reconciliation between the Final Accounts and the Management Accounts for the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods (the "**Final Audited Accounts Reconciliation**"). The Final Audited Accounts Reconciliation shall:
    - (a) include a detailed reconciliation, disaggregating Actual Costs, Actual Revenues, Actual Capex, Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, Accrued Disallowable Costs, Accrued Revenue Foregone, accrued SoS Claims, Non-Recoverable Costs and Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs in the Final Accounts to: (1) each of the periodic Management Accounts within the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods and (2) the Annual Management Accounts in relation to that Franchisee Year, all in a format to be from time to time reasonably specified by the Secretary of State. This reconciliation shall:
      - (I) disaggregate the Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenues in the Final Accounts so as to report against (and show in a format consistent with that used in) the Budget and, where relevant, the Target Cost Template and/or the Target Profit Template held in Escrow in relation to the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods; and
      - (II) facilitate the identification of Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenues as reported in the Final Accounts;
    - (b) include a statement of the Franchisee's balance sheet included within the Final Accounts in relation to the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods (the "**Final Opening Balance Sheet**"), disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State and the aggregate amount of all other balances (such aggregated other balances being the "**Final Opening Operational Balances**");
    - (c) include a statement of the Franchisee's audited balance sheet included within the Final Accounts as at the expiry of the ERMA Term or the Extended Term (as applicable) (the "**Final Closing Balance Sheet**"), disaggregated between balances payable to or receivable from the Secretary of State and the aggregate amount of all other balances (such aggregated other balances being the "**Final Closing Operational Balances**");

- (d) include a statement identifying and explaining the differences between the Final Opening Operational Balances and the Final Closing Operational Balances (such differences comprising the "**Final Operational Delta**") in sufficient detail to allow the Secretary of State to obtain a full understanding of the reasons for the Final Operational Delta;
  - (e) clearly identify and distinguish between transactions within the Final Operational Delta which reasonably and properly relate, on the accruals basis to each of the ERMA Stub Reporting Periods, any other Reporting Periods during the term of the EMA or the ERMA, and any Reporting Periods prior to 1 March 2020, sufficient to allow identification of transactions and accounting adjustments which do not relate to the term of the EMA or the ERMA;
  - (f) identify the total Actual Costs and total Actual Revenue that are included within the Final Operational Delta;
  - (g) identify any and all Accrued Disallowable Costs or Accrued Revenue Foregone which are in the Final Opening Balance Sheet or Final Closing Balance Sheet, and any Accrued Revenue Foregone which is not included in the Final Closing Balance Sheet but which existed at the expiry of the ERMA Term or the Extended Term (as applicable);
- (iii) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors (in a format to be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State from time to time, on the basis of providing the Secretary of State with reasonable assurance) that the Final Audited Accounts Reconciliation has been undertaken accurately; and
  - (iv) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors confirming that GAAP has been applied in a fair and consistent manner.

**9.4.16** Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Franchisee shall at all times continue to collect and review evidence regarding the true and fair valuation of any assets or liabilities in any Balance Sheet and shall notify the Secretary of State promptly if such evidence indicates that the Balance Sheets previously submitted no longer give a true and fair view of any such assets or liabilities. The Secretary of State is entitled to take this information into consideration in the exercise of any further rights or obligations in this paragraph 9.4A.

## **9.5 Accounting Standards and Practices**

**9.5.1** Each set of Management Accounts and Annual Management Accounts shall:

- (i) be in the format as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify from time to time;
- (ii) be prepared:
  - (a) in accordance with the Franchisee's obligations in Clause 6.1 (*General Obligations*); and
  - (b) consistently in accordance with the Franchisee's normal accounting policies, details of which shall be supplied on request to the Secretary of State; and

- (iii) not include any changes in such accounting policies from those policies that were applied in preparing each of the profit and loss account, the cash flow projection and the balance sheet contained in the last Quarterly Forecast provided pursuant to paragraph 9.3 (*Quarterly Financial Information*) without the prior approval of the Secretary of State.

**9.5.2** The Annual Audited Accounts and Final Accounts shall:

- (i) be prepared and audited in accordance with GAAP, consistently applied and in accordance with the Companies Act 2006; and
- (ii) give a true and fair view of:
  - (a) the state of affairs, profits and financial condition of the Franchisee for the period covered by such accounts; and
  - (b) the amount of its total revenue (being all revenue whatsoever from any source obtained from any commercial or non-commercial activity or undertaking of the Franchisee, such revenue to be disaggregated by reference to revenue derived by the Franchisee from:
    - (I) the sale of tickets;
    - (II) income received from Network Rail pursuant to Schedule 4 and Schedule 8 to the Track Access Agreement;
    - (III) car park revenue; and
    - (IV) other income; and
  - (c) [Not Used].

**9.5A Changes to Accounting Policies**

The Franchisee shall not, without the express written consent of the Secretary of State, make any alteration to its accounting policies or basis of preparation in relation to its Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts, Annual Audited Accounts or Final Accounts.

**9.6 Parent and Affiliate Accounts and Affiliate Trading**

**9.6.1** The Franchisee shall, upon the request of the Secretary of State, promptly deliver to, or procure delivery to, the Secretary of State:

- (i) certified true copies of the annual reports and audited accounts of each Parent and any Affiliate, together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports. If any of the Parents or any Affiliate is domiciled outside England and Wales, the equivalent documents in the jurisdiction of residence of the relevant Parent or Affiliate (as applicable) shall be delivered to the Secretary of State;
- (ii) certified true copies of and/or details of (as instructed by the Secretary of State) any contracts or non-contractual arrangements with any Affiliate, including those which give rise to payments from an Affiliate to the Franchisee or payments from the Franchisee to an Affiliate (including payments or charges in relation to management services);
- (iii) procurement policies in relation to contracts and non-contractual arrangements with Affiliates, including policies in relation to Affiliates procuring services from third parties on behalf of the Franchisee; and

- (iv) evidence that all services provided by Affiliates (including management services) have been procured competitively and on an arm's length basis, have a sound business case, comply with of the Franchise Agreement and are in all ways appropriate.

9.6.2 The Franchisee shall procure that any new contract entered into between the Franchisee and any of its Affiliates is capable of being terminated in accordance with its terms after a period of seven (7) Reporting Periods and that the Franchisee shall not incur any penalty or be required to make any termination payment to the relevant Affiliate if the Franchisee elects to exercise any such termination right.

## 9.7 Secretary of State Audit of Calculations provided pursuant to paragraphs 9.2, 9.3 and 9.4

9.7.1 Without prejudice to paragraph 2.2 of Schedule 12 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*) or to any other rights of the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement, the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives shall be permitted to inspect at any time the books, records and any other material kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee in order to check or audit any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts, the Annual Audited Accounts, the Audited Accounts Reconciliation, the Final Accounts and any information held or provided in connection with the Franchisee's obligations under paragraph 2 of Schedule 12 (*Financial Covenants and Bonds*) or Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*).

9.7.2 The Franchisee shall make available to the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives such information and grant such access or procure the grant of such access (including to or from third parties) as they shall reasonably require in connection with any audit to be carried out pursuant to paragraph 9.79.7.1. If any audit carried out pursuant to paragraph 9.79.7.1 reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, any material inaccuracy in the Management Accounts, then:

- (i) the Secretary of State may:
  - (a) reasonably determine any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts; or
  - (b) require any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts to be adjusted in a manner which is fair and reasonable and, so far as reasonably determinable, on the basis on which such particular item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts should have been accounted for by the Franchisee as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State,

in either case to the extent that the Secretary of State considers appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of making any such reasonable determination; and

- (ii) the Franchisee shall pay all reasonable costs of any such audit as a monitoring cost pursuant to paragraph 7.4 of Schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*). The Franchisee shall not in any circumstances be entitled to claim back any such costs from the Secretary of State whether pursuant to Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) or otherwise.

9.7.3 Without prejudice to paragraphs 9 (*Review of Franchisee's performance against Budget*), 10 (*Periodic Adjustments*), 11 (*Annual Adjustments*) or 17 (*Indexation*) of Schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*), if any audit carried out pursuant to paragraph 9.7.1 reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, any material inaccuracy in the Annual Audited Accounts the Final Accounts and/or the contents or form of the Audited Accounts Reconciliation then the Secretary of State shall have the right to reasonably determine the Opening Operational Balance, the Closing Operational Balance and/or any Franchise Payment Components for the purposes of correcting the effect of such material inaccuracy.

## 9.8 Adjustment and Restatement of the Annual Audited Accounts or Final Accounts

The Franchisee shall promptly notify the Secretary of State as soon as it becomes aware of any requirement to adjust or restate the Annual Audited Accounts or the Final Accounts and shall deliver to the Secretary of State any such adjusted or restated Annual Audited Accounts or Final Accounts, as soon as such accounts are available.

## 9.9 Access to financial information

The Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and/or advisors shall be permitted to inspect at any time the books, records and other material kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee in order to check or audit any item contained in or relating to the financial information provided pursuant to paragraph 8 (*Periodic Update Reports*) and this paragraph 9 or paragraph 7A of this Schedule 11.2 and paragraph 2 of schedule 3 (*Early Termination*) to the ERMA, and to request further information or review of this information, including:

- 9.9.1 the use of an external auditor;
- 9.9.2 provision of full access to this information by the Secretary of State's officials, representatives and/or advisors on an "open book" basis; and
- 9.9.3 provision of full access to this information by the National Audit Office or other equivalent body on an "open book" basis.

## 10 Business Plans

### 10.1 Annual Business Plans

10.1.1 By no later than the day falling 40 Weekdays prior to the start of the first Reporting Period in each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State the Franchisee's business plan for the forthcoming Franchisee Year (the "**Annual Business Plan**"). The Annual Business Plan shall be a detailed and comprehensive description of the Franchisee's planned activities for such Franchisee Year and the manner in which the Franchisee will meet its obligations under the Franchise Agreement in respect of that Franchisee Year and include:

- (i) a revised profit and loss forecast (prepared in accordance with the accounting standards and practices set out in paragraph 9.5 (*Accounting Standards and Practices*) and GAAP), which shall include a forecast of Costs, Revenue, Capital Expenditure and any forecast Disallowable Costs, Non-recoverable Costs and Revenue Foregone, in the same format and structure, and using the allocation of Costs and Revenues to individual lines, as either (a) the Financial Formats; or (b) the "P&L2" tab of the Financial Model (whichever format and structure has the more detailed breakdown of costs and revenues), a revised cash flow



forecast which clearly states the gross amount of Capital Expenditure forecast to be incurred by the Franchisee (separately identifying any amounts funded by third parties) and a revised forecast balance sheet for each of the thirteen (13) Reporting Periods in each Franchisee Year during the Franchise Term;

- (ii) a statement from a statutory director of the Franchisee confirming that the profit and loss forecast delivered pursuant to paragraph 10.110.1.1(i) has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Franchise Agreement;
- (iii)
  - (a) a forecast of the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position for the last day of each of the following thirteen (13) Reporting Periods; and
  - (b) a statement demonstrating how the Franchisee intends to ensure that at the end of each of the following thirteen (13) Reporting Periods it will have an available Forecast Closing Cash Position which is not less than the Floor Cash Position;
- (iv) an annual improvement plan providing:
  - (a) details of any new technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which could improve the provision of the Franchise Services, reduce the cost of providing the Franchise Services or enable the Franchise Services to be provided more efficiently;
  - (b) an analysis of the impact of any technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals that are proposed in relation to the Franchise Services, including analyses of the costs of and timescale for effecting such changes and the impact on the provision of the Franchise Services;
  - (c) details of those technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which the Franchisee proposes to implement during that Franchisee Year; and
  - (d) an analysis of the technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which the Franchisee implemented in the previous Franchisee Year, including details of any cost reductions and/or efficiency gains arising from the same and a reconciliation to the annual improvement plan for the previous Franchisee Year;
- (v) a statement from each of, a statutory director of the Franchisee and, a statutory director of the Parent confirming that the Annual Business Plan has been provided to, considered and endorsed by the board of directors of each Parent and that the board of directors of each Parent is not aware of any other plan which may alter, vary of impact on the Business Plan and shall at any time during the following twelve (12) months notify the Secretary of State should any of them become aware of any such plan; and
- (vi) information in relation to arrangements with Affiliates, including:
  - (a) a forecast of payments to or from any Affiliate;
  - (b) a forecast of fees, remuneration, pension contributions or any other payment to or in respect of any director or officer of the Franchisee; and



- (c) evidence that all such payments are on arms' length commercial terms in the ordinary course of business and are otherwise compliant with the terms of the Franchise Agreement.

**10.1.2** If:

- (i) the Secretary of State has issued a notice to the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 4.2(a) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) in relation to a PBF Assessment Period commencing on 1 April in any Franchisee Year; and
- (ii) the Franchisee has not delivered the Annual Business Plan to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 10.1.1,

the Secretary of State may reasonably determine the contents of the Annual Business Plan for the purposes of setting the Target Cost and/or the Target Profit (as applicable and in each case as defined in Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*)).

**10.1.3** If the Secretary of State has not issued a notice to the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 4.2(a) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) in relation to a PBF Assessment Period commencing on 1 April of any Franchisee Year, the Franchisee may elect to deliver to the Secretary of State an updated Annual Business Plan within twenty (20) Weekdays of the start of that Franchisee Year.

**10.1.4** If the Parties have agreed or the Secretary of State has reasonably determined the value of the Target Cost and/or the Target Profit pursuant to paragraphs 5.1 and 5.2 of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*), the Franchisee shall:

- (i) update the Annual Business Plan to reflect the Target Cost as agreed or determined (as applicable) pursuant to paragraph 5.1 of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*);
- (ii) update the Target Cost Template, the Target Cost Record of Assumptions, the Target Profit Template and/or the Target Profit Record of Assumptions (in each case, as applicable) to reflect the:
  - (a) Target Cost, Target Cost Cap and Target Cost Floor; and/or
  - (b) Target Profit, Target Profit Cap and Target Profit Floor,(as applicable) as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraphs 5.1 and 5.2 of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*); and
- (iii) deliver the updated Annual Business Plan, Target Cost Template, Target Cost Record of Assumptions, Target Profit Template and/or Target Profit Record of Assumptions (as applicable) to the Secretary of State by no later than 1 April 2021,

and the Target Cost Spreadsheet, Target Cost Record of Assumptions, Target Profit Template and/or Target Profit Record of Assumptions (as applicable) shall be Placed in Escrow once the Secretary of State is satisfied that such documents accurately reflect the:

- (i) Target Cost, Target Cost Cap and Target Cost Floor; and/or
- (ii) Target Profit, Target Profit Cap and Target Profit Floor,

(as applicable) as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraphs 5.1 and 5.2 of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*).

10.1.5 If at any time during a Franchisee Year the Franchisee produces any other annual business plan or periodic plan which is delivered to its Parents, it shall at the same time as delivering such plan to its Parents notify the Secretary of State of all such plans. The Secretary of State shall be entitled to copies of such further plans as the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine.

## 10.2 Business Action Plan

10.2.1 The Secretary of State may at any time require the Franchisee to produce a Business Action Plan in respect of any aspect of the Business Plan. Such Business Action Plan may include steps relating to:

- (i) timetable and service pattern development;
- (ii) Station facility improvement;
- (iii) performance management improvement;
- (iv) customer service improvement; and
- (v) improvements in the quality of service delivery or the efficiency of delivery of the Franchise Services.

10.2.2 The Franchisee shall comply with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State about how and with whom any consultation on the content of a Business Action Plan is to take place.

10.2.3 Any proposal in a Business Action Plan shall only be implemented if and to the extent that the Secretary of State decides it is appropriate to do so and subject to any conditions which the Secretary of State may impose.

## 11 Safety Information

### 11.1 Safety

11.1.1 The Franchisee shall co-operate with any request from any relevant competent authority for provision of information and/or preparation and submission of reports detailing or identifying compliance with safety obligations set out in the Safety Regulations including any breaches of the Safety Regulations.

11.1.2 The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as practicable of the receipt and contents of any formal notification relating to safety or any improvement or prohibition notice received from the ORR. Immediately upon receipt of such notification or notice, the Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with a copy of such notification or notice.

11.1.3 The Franchisee shall participate in industry groups and committees addressing the domestic and European safety agenda of the Railway Group.

## 12 Further Information

### 12.1 The Franchisee shall:

12.1.1 deliver to the Secretary of State, or procure the delivery to the Secretary of State of, such data, information, records or documents as he may request within such period as he may reasonably require and which relate to or are connected with the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement; and

- 12.1.2 procure that each Affiliate of the Franchisee complies with paragraph 12.112.1.1 in respect of any data, information, records or documents that relate to its dealings with the Franchisee in connection with the Franchisee's performance of its obligations under the Franchise Agreement.
- 12.2 The information referred to in paragraph 12.1 shall include:
- 12.2.1 any agreement, contract or arrangement to which the Franchisee is a party in connection with any rolling stock vehicles used in the operation of the Passenger Services;
- 12.2.2 in so far as the Franchisee has or is able to obtain the same, any other agreement contract or arrangement which may be associated with the procurement, leasing, financing or maintenance of any such rolling stock vehicles;
- 12.2.3 any agreement for the manufacture or supply of any rolling stock vehicles; and
- 12.2.4 any arrangements for the securitisation of any lease granted in respect of such rolling stock vehicles.
- 12.3 The Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to provide:
- 12.3.1 the information required to be provided under this Schedule 11.2 more frequently than set out in this Schedule 11.2;
- 12.3.2 the information required to be provided under this Schedule 11.2, or, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, more detailed financial information, at any time in connection with the re-letting of the Franchise;
- 12.3.3 such unaudited accounts under such accounting policies as may be prescribed by the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, from time to time;
- 12.3.4 research or survey datasets which relate to or are connected with the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement;
- 12.3.5 any data or information which supports operational and business functions; and
- 12.3.6 information about any agreement, contract or arrangement to which the Franchisee is a party and which relate to or are connected with the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement.
- 12.4 **Request for Data**
- 12.4.1 If the Secretary of State requires any further information, data, records or documents during the Franchise Term which the Franchisee is not otherwise required to provide pursuant to this Franchise Agreement (the "**Relevant Data**"), the Secretary of State may issue a request to the Franchisee specifying:
- (i) the Relevant Data the Franchisee is to provide to the Secretary of State;
- (ii) any requirements in relation to timeliness, format and method of delivery of such Relevant Data; and
- (iii) where such Relevant Data is required to be provided on an ongoing basis, may include the frequency with which such Relevant Data shall be required to be delivered,
- (each a "**Request for Data**").

- 12.4.2** The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that any Relevant Data provided by the Franchisee pursuant to a Request for Data may be shared with other persons who are acting on the Secretary of State's behalf or such other persons as the Secretary of State may notify, in each case, in accordance with Schedule 17 (*Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection*).
- 12.4.3** Within fourteen (14) days of the date of issuance of a Request for Data by the Secretary of State or such other timeframe as may be specified in the relevant Request for Data, the Franchisee shall:
- (i) provide to the Secretary of State all Relevant Data specified in the Request for Data as it is reasonably able to provide or procure within such period; and
  - (ii) if the Franchisee has not provided all the Relevant Data specified in the Request for Data, it shall provide the Secretary of State with:
    - (a) details of any further action that would be required to enable it to provide such Relevant Data, including the rationale for requiring such further action together with relevant supporting evidence;
    - (b) the Franchisee's proposed timescales for taking such action in timely manner and the rationale for arriving at such timeframe; and
    - (c) where applicable, an estimate (including a breakdown of the individual cost components) of any additional costs the Franchisee expects to incur (acting reasonably) in order to provide such Relevant Data together with relevant supporting evidence.
- 12.4.4** The Secretary of State may, following review of the Franchisee's response pursuant to paragraph 12.4.3(ii), require the Franchisee to take such further action as the Secretary of State may specify (acting reasonably), including providing part or all of the Relevant Data which remains outstanding or taking any steps to mitigate the amount of any costs that the Franchisee may incur in order to comply with the Request for Data.
- 12.5** The Franchisee shall provide an audit of data sources and information that are used by the Franchisee's business, as requested by the Secretary of State (acting reasonably) from time to time. The Secretary of State may also request information and guidance from the Franchisee about its data sources, including the purpose for collecting such data, any risks associated with handling or sharing such data, and any third party contracts or agreements used to collect and process the data.
- 12.6** Nothing in paragraphs 12 or 13 shall require the Franchisee to provide any Relevant Data or any other data, information, records or documents which would, or is reasonably likely to:
- 12.6.1** require it to incur additional costs, over and above those a Good and Efficient Operator would incur, unless the Secretary of State otherwise directs or gives consent or such additional costs were contemplated when the Secretary of State agreed or reasonably determined the Franchisee's most recent business plan and cost budget in accordance with the terms of Schedule 8.1A, and this Schedule 11.2; or
  - 12.6.2** put it in breach of any applicable law or regulation.
- 12.7** If the Franchisee reasonably considers that any provision of paragraphs 12 and 13 requires, or is likely to require, it do anything inconsistent with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, it shall notify and consult with the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable following

becoming aware of the same and proceed in accordance with any guidance or directions that the Secretary of State may reasonably provide or direct.

### **13 Information from Third Parties**

- 13.1** The Franchisee shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, through a Request for Data or otherwise, use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the Secretary of State has direct access to any information, data or records relating to the Franchisee which is or are maintained by third parties and to which the Secretary of State is entitled to have access, or of which the Secretary of State is entitled to receive a copy under the Franchise Agreement.
- 13.2** The Franchisee shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, procure the provision by RSP to the Secretary of State of such information, data and records as the Franchisee is entitled to receive under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, in such form as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time.
- 13.3** The obligations of the Franchisee under this Schedule 11.2 to provide information to the Secretary of State shall not apply if the Secretary of State notifies the Franchisee that he has received the relevant information directly from any other person (including Network Rail or RSP). The Franchisee shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, confirm or validate any such information which is received from any such other person.
- 13.4** The Franchisee shall promptly advise the Secretary of State of any changes that are to be made to the databases, systems or processes which are owned, operated or otherwise used by the Franchisee which may have an impact on the Franchisee's ability to meet its data sharing obligations pursuant to the Franchisee Agreement or any Request for Data issued by the Secretary of State or will, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, materially affect the continuity of any the supply of information or data that the Franchisee is required to provide to the Secretary of State pursuant to this Schedule 11.2. Any such advice shall include an assessment of the materiality of the relevant change.
- 13.5** To the extent that collection or supply of any data, information, records or documents is managed by a third party on the Franchisee's behalf:
- 13.5.1** the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that all relevant third party service providers permit the sharing with the Secretary of State of all data, information, records or documents which such third party service provider shall be required to provide or may provide on request to the Franchisee; or
- 13.5.2** where the Franchisee is unable to procure access pursuant to paragraph 13.5.1, it shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree a variation or amendment to any contract or other arrangement in place between the Franchisee and the relevant third party as may be required to comply with paragraph 13.5.1.
- 13.6** During the Franchise Term, the Franchisee shall:
- 13.6.1** not enter into any new contracts or other arrangements which may materially adversely affect the Franchisee's ability to comply with paragraphs 12 and 13 of this Schedule 11.2, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State; and
- 13.6.2** to the extent it is entering into any material amendments to any existing contracts or arrangements with third parties, use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the contract or arrangement (as amended) does not materially adversely affect the Franchisee's ability to comply with its requirements pursuant to paragraphs 12 and 13.

## 14 Compatibility of Information

- 14.1** All financial, operational or other information, and any data and records required to be provided to the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement shall be provided, if so requested by the Secretary of State, in a form compatible with the Secretary of State's electronic data and records systems on the Start Date, as modified from time to time in accordance with paragraph 3 of Schedule 13.1 (*Rail Industry Initiatives*).
- 14.2** The Franchisee shall ensure that the interconnection of such systems or the provision of such information, data and records to the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement will not result in any infringement of any third party Intellectual Property Rights to which its systems or such information, data or records may be subject.

## 15 Environmental Information

### 15.1A Data Sharing

- 15.1.1** The Franchisee shall share all available environmental data with the Secretary of State and RSSB as requested from time to time by the Secretary of State and/or RSSB, each acting reasonably, including in relation to:
- (i) air pollution emissions referenced in the Clean Air Strategy 2019 (including nitrogen oxides and particulate matter);
  - (ii) emissions of Greenhouse Gases (as defined in the Kyoto Protocol to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change); and
  - (iii) energy usage.
- 15.1.2** The Secretary of State and/or (with the prior approval of the Secretary of State) RSSB, each acting reasonably, may instruct the Franchisee to collect and share with the Secretary of State and/or RSSB (as applicable) such additional environmental data as the Secretary of State and/or RSSB (as applicable) may require from time to time.

### 15.1 Environmental Information Data Collection Plan

- 15.1.1** The Franchisee shall, by no later than three (3) months after the Start Date, provide a report to the Secretary of State setting out:
- (i) which measures included in the Dataset the Franchisee is unable to provide, despite using reasonable endeavours to do so ("**Excluded Data**");
  - (ii) for each item of Excluded Data, the technical, operational or commercial reason why the Franchisee is unable to provide the Excluded Data; and
  - (iii) a plan ("**Environmental Data Collection Plan**") detailing, in relation to each item of Excluded Data, the actions which the Franchisee would need to take in order to be able to provide such Excluded Data, the Franchisee's best estimate of the cost of taking such action and the date by which, if such actions were taken, the Franchisee would be able to begin providing such Excluded Data to the Secretary of State.
- 15.1.2** The Dataset, excluding any measures which the Secretary of State agrees, acting reasonably, that the Franchisee is, despite using reasonable endeavours, unable to provide, shall be referred to as the "**Initial Dataset**".

15.1.3 The Secretary of State may require:

- (i) the Franchisee to implement the Environmental Data Collection Plan in whole or in part; and/or
- (ii) the Franchisee to take such other actions as, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, would enable the Franchisee to provide any item of Excluded Data,

following which the relevant item of Excluded Data will form part of the Initial Dataset.

15.1.4 Where the Franchisee is:

- (i) undertaking works, whether at a Station or Depot or in respect of rolling stock;
- (ii) procuring rolling stock; or
- (iii) taking any other action which could enable the Franchisee to provide any items of Excluded Data in a cost effective manner,

the Franchisee will use reasonable endeavours to do so in a manner which would enable the Franchisee to provide any relevant item of Excluded Data (and any item of Excluded Data which the Franchisee becomes able to provide as a result will, with effect from the date on which the Franchisee becomes able to provide the same, form part of the Initial Dataset).

15.1.5 With effect from the Start Date, the Franchisee shall measure and collect the data included in the Initial Dataset.

15.1.6 The Franchisee may, in its discretion, measure and collect additional data, provided that the minimum required under the Initial Dataset is adhered to and the Franchisee will co-operate with the Secretary of State to seek to identify improvements in the efficiency and/or cost effectiveness of the collection of the data in the Dataset.

15.1.7 The Franchisee shall ensure that the form of measurement of the Initial Dataset enables it to report a consolidated periodic or annual usage figure to the Secretary of State as specified for each measure in paragraph 1 of Appendix 1 (*Environmental Information*) to this Schedule 11.2.

15.1.8 In addition to paragraph 15.1.7 above, the Franchisee shall deliver the information required to be delivered pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 1 (*Environmental Impact Monitoring Dataset*) of Appendix 1 (*Environmental Information*) to this Schedule 11.2 through the RSSB's online "Environmental Reporting Tool".

## 15.2 Environmental Impact Monitoring Report and Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit

15.2.1 The Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State a report setting out the result of the data collection of the Initial Dataset required by this paragraph 15 in accordance with the applicable granularity and regularity specified in paragraph 2 of Appendix 1 (*Environmental Information*) to this Schedule 11.2 (the "**Environmental Impact Monitoring Report**") within three (3) months following the end of each Franchisee Year.

15.2.2 The Franchisee shall procure a suitably qualified independent body (such independent body to be appointed only with the prior written approval of the Secretary of State) to undertake an annual independent written audit of the data provided in the Environmental



Impact Monitoring Report and the collection methodology of the Initial Dataset in respect of each Franchisee Year (the "**Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit**").

- 15.2.3** The Franchisee shall procure that the independent body appointed pursuant to paragraph 15.2.2 includes in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit:
- (i) a retrospective assessment (covering the Franchisee Year to which the audit relates) of the Franchisee's data collection methodology and level of data granularity carried out in accordance with this paragraph 15.2 and any recommendations by the independent body in respect of such methodology;
  - (ii) a verification of the accuracy of past data submissions made in respect of the Initial Dataset and as summarised in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report; and
  - (iii) an assessment of the Franchisee's proposed data collection methodology and level of data granularity for the following Franchisee Year's data collection, and
  - (iv) where the independent body has identified as part of its audit any errors, discrepancies or concerns with any of the items described in paragraphs 15.2.3(i) to (iii) above, whether these are, in the reasonable opinion of the independent body undertaking the audit material or minor errors, discrepancies or concerns.
- 15.2.4** The Franchisee shall submit a copy of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit to the Secretary of State at the same time as Environmental Impact Monitoring Report is submitted in accordance with paragraph 15.2.1 above.
- 15.2.5** Where the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit highlights errors, discrepancies or concerns with any of the items described in paragraphs 15.2.3(i) to (iii) above, the Franchisee shall:
- (i) in the case of minor errors, discrepancies or concerns which are capable of rectification without material additional expenditure, rectify such minor errors, discrepancies or concerns and resubmit the relevant Environmental Impact Monitoring Report updated to address these to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable, and in any event within ten (10) Weekdays of the date of the submission of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit to the Secretary of State so that there is a complete and accurate record of the data in question;
  - (ii) in the case of material errors, discrepancies or concerns which are capable of rectification, rectify such material errors, discrepancies or concerns and resubmit the relevant Environmental Impact Monitoring Report updated to address these to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable, and in any event within ten (10) Weekdays, following the date of submission of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit to the Secretary of State so that there is a complete and accurate record of the data in question; and
  - (iii) in the case of concerns in relation to the Franchisee's data collection methodology and level of data granularity for the forthcoming Franchisee Year's data collection, make such amendments to such methodology as recommended in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit so as to address those concerns.



### 15.3 Air Quality Monitoring and Improvement

15.3.1 The Franchisee shall for the purposes of air quality monitoring at Stations under its control:

- (i) provide to the Secretary of State all existing data in relation to air quality and measures that the Franchisee is implementing to improve air quality at Stations under its control;
- (ii) provide to the Secretary of State, RSSB, or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify, access to any sites, power supplies and telemetry under its control as requested by the Secretary of State or RSSB from time to time, including for the purpose of installing air quality monitors; and
- (iii) assist the Secretary of State, RSSB or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify in the placement, replacement and dispatch of diffusion tubes.

15.3.2 The Franchisee shall for the purposes of air quality monitoring on rolling stock vehicles:

- (i) provide to the Secretary of State, RSSB or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify during the Franchise Term, free-of-charge access to rolling stock vehicles whilst in or out of service;
- (ii) consent for equipment to be installed on rolling stock vehicles for the purposes of air quality monitoring;
- (iii) provide available on-train air quality data as the Secretary of State may require from time to time; and
- (iv) consider cost-effective opportunities to improve air quality on rolling stock vehicles through operational or maintenance changes and, where reasonable and with the agreement or direction of the Secretary of State, make changes to rolling stock vehicles to improve on-board air quality.

15.3.3 The Franchisee shall for the purposes of monitoring and reducing emissions from traction:

- (i) through an RSSB-led industry working group, support the development and delivery of a policy in relation to the maximum time for which a train's engine may be kept idling while stationary;
- (ii) use all reasonable endeavours to work with the fleet owner to develop an emissions reduction pathway for all diesel rolling stock vehicles;
- (iii) consider cost-effective opportunities to reduce emissions through operational or maintenance changes and, where reasonable and with the agreement or direction of the Secretary of State, make changes to rolling stock vehicles to reduce their air pollution impact;
- (iv) provide to the Secretary of State, RSSB or any person whom the Secretary of State might reasonably specify free-of-charge access to rolling stock vehicles and infrastructure for emissions testing as requested by the Secretary of State from time to time; and
- (v) provide to the Secretary of State such information and/or data in relation to exhaust emissions from rolling stock vehicles comprised within the Train Fleet as the Secretary of State may reasonably require from time to time for the

purposes of data collection and analysing the consequent impact of such emissions on air quality in Depots and Stations and along the Routes on which such rolling stock vehicles are deployed.

- 15.3.4 The Franchisee shall for the purposes of supporting wider industry approaches to emissions reduction:
- (i) consider the impact of any rolling stock vehicle, operational or infrastructure changes on emissions; and
  - (ii) provide to the Secretary of State and RSSB a named contact as a point of enquiry in relation to air quality.

## 16 Environmental Impact Targets

### 16.1 Environmental Impact Targets set by the Secretary of State

The Secretary of State sets out in paragraph 2 of Appendix 1 (*Environmental Information*) of this Schedule 11.2 the targets for improving the environmental performance of the Franchisee (the "**Environmental Impact Targets**"), and the Franchisee shall meet such Environmental Impact Targets during the Franchise Period.

### 16.2 Performance against the Environmental Impact Targets

- 16.2.1 For each Franchisee Year the Secretary of State shall determine the Franchisee's performance against each Environmental Impact Target on an annual basis (within two (2) Reporting Periods of receipt of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report) by comparing:
- (i) **for traction carbon emissions:** the Franchisee's performance set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Target for the relevant Franchisee Year, in accordance with the annual trajectory specified in the Sustainable Development Strategy;
  - (ii) **for non-traction energy use:** the Franchisee's performance as set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Targets;
  - (iii) **for waste:** the Franchisee's performance as set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Targets;
  - (iv) **for mains water:** for the second (2nd) Franchisee Year, the number of automatic water meters installed against the total number of water meters. These details shall be reported by the Franchisee within three (3) months of the end of the second (2nd) Franchisee Year. For subsequent Franchisee Years, the Franchisee's performance as set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Targets.

- 16.2.2** For the purposes of undertaking the comparison pursuant to paragraph 16.2.1, the results referred to in paragraphs 16.2.1(i) to (iii) (as the case may be) shall be rounded up to one (1) decimal place with the midpoint (that is, 4.45) rounded upwards (that is, 4.5).
- 16.2.3** As soon as reasonably practicable following the Start Date and in any event within six (6) months of the Start Date, the Franchisee shall produce and provide to the Secretary of State for approval an implementation plan for the duration of the Franchise Period which is capable of achieving each of the Environmental Impact Targets each Franchisee Year (as such implementation plan may be revised in accordance with paragraph 16.3 (*Remedial Actions*) below (the "**Environmental Impact Targets Plan**")).
- 16.2.4** Following the Secretary of State's approval, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement the Environmental Impact Targets Plan (including any such plan which is revised in accordance with paragraph 16.2.5) in order to achieve the Environmental Impact Targets.
- 16.2.5** Notwithstanding the requirements of this paragraph 16.2, the Franchisee shall review its then current Environmental Impact Targets Plan and revise such plan as necessary by the end of the fifth (5th) Franchisee Year to ensure that such plan, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, is capable of achieving each Environmental Impact Target in each Franchisee Year.

### **16.3 Remedial Actions**

- 16.3.1** In the event that an Environmental Impact Target is not met in any Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall as soon as reasonably practicable produce and provide to the Secretary of State a revised Environmental Impact Targets Plan which, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, is capable of achieving the Environmental Impact Targets.
- 16.3.2** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement the revised Environmental Impact Targets Plan, which shall be the Environmental Impact Targets Plan for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement.

### **16.4 Publication**

- 16.4.1** The Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) details of its performance against the Environmental Impact Targets (the "**Performance Information**") in widely accessible forms, including, as a minimum, publishing them on its website and in each Customer Report.
- 16.4.2** The Franchisee:
- (i) agrees that the Secretary of State shall be permitted to publish the Performance Information from time to time in such format and through such media as the Secretary of State may elect; and
  - (ii) shall co-operate with any programme or other initiative mandated or undertaken by the Secretary of State to publish the Performance Information.

## Appendix 1 to Schedule 11.2 Environmental Information

### 1 Environmental Impact Monitoring Dataset

Subject	Unit	Granularity	Regularity
<b>TRACTION</b>	EC4T (kWh)	Breakdown per distinct fleet - metered	Four (4) week period
	EC4T (kWh)	Breakdown per distinct fleet - unmetered	Four (4) week period
	Gas-oil (litres)	Breakdown per distinct fleet	Four (4) week period
<b>NONTRACTION</b>	Electricity (kWh)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
	Gas (kWh)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
	Gas-oil (litres)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
<b>CARBON</b>	Scope 1 emissions (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Scope 2 emissions (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Embodied carbon in new infrastructure projects over the amount set out in paragraph 10.3 (b) ( <i>Sustainable Construction</i> ) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Total	Per project
<b>WATER</b>	Mains Water consumption (m <sup>3</sup> )	Total	Annual
	Water recycling initiatives	Narrative	Annual
<b>WASTE</b>	Waste generated (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste recycled (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste subject to other recovery (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste to landfill (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Hazardous waste	Total	Annual
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (EMS)</b>	Enforcement/information Notices	Total	Annual
	Environmental fines or prosecutions	Total	Annual

Subject	Unit	Granularity	Regularity
	Environmental incidents reported through the EMS	Total	Annual
	Environmental training records % personnel briefed/trained	Total	Annual

## 2 Environmental Impact Targets

Traction Carbon Emissions	Non-Traction Energy Use	Waste	Mains Water
Meet the Annual Traction Carbon Trajectory for CO2E per vehicle/km.	<p><b>1</b></p> <p>For the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Franchisee Year is a reduction in kilowatt hours (kWh) of two point five per cent (2.5%) against the 2014 baseline figure of 32,714,742 kWh.</p> <p>For each subsequent Franchisee Year, a reduction in kilowatt hours (kWh) of two point five per cent (2.5%) against the preceding Franchisee Year.</p>	From the end of the second (2nd) Franchisee Year, the Franchisee must send zero waste to landfill and must recycle or prepare for re-use, ninety per cent (90%) of waste (by weight) per Franchisee Year.	<p>By the end of the second (2nd) Franchisee Year, the Franchisee must install automatic meter readings (AMR) for all water meters, where practicable.</p> <p>The Franchisee shall determine a baseline of water consumption by the end of the third (3rd) Franchisee Year, such baseline to be agreed with the Secretary of State.</p> <p>The Franchisee shall develop a target to reduce water consumption against the agreed baseline referred to above by the end of the fourth (4<sup>th</sup>) Franchisee Year, such target to be agreed with the Secretary of State.</p>

## Appendix 2 to Schedule 11.2 Operational Performance Information

### 1 Information about the operational performance of the Franchisee

**1.1** The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Term maintain records in relation to its operational performance under the Franchise Agreement, covering the areas and the information described in this Appendix 2. Such information shall include details as to whether or not any curtailment, diversion, delay or failure to attain any connection is attributable, in the Franchisee's opinion, to either a Force Majeure Event or the implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.

**1.2** The Franchisee shall, subject to paragraph 1.3, provide to the Secretary of State the information set out in the following tables at the frequency specified in the Column of each such table headed "**When information to be provided**".

**1.3** When so requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall, within such reasonable period as the Secretary of State may specify, make such information available for review by the Secretary of State by reference to:

**1.3.1** such level of disaggregation (including by Route or Service Group) as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State; and

**1.3.2** any particular day, week or other longer period as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State.

**1.4** The following key shall apply to the table in this Appendix 2:

**A =** Information to be provided on or before any Passenger Change Date;

**B =** Information to be provided for every Reporting Period within ten (10) Weekdays of the last day of each Reporting Period; and

**C =** Information to be provided annually within ten (10) Weekdays of the last day of each Franchisee Year.

**1.5** For the purposes of this Schedule 11.2, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings:

Number of Primary Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are:

- (a) attributed as a "Primary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
- (b) attributable to any other Train Operator;

Number of Primary Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are:

- (a) attributed as a "Primary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
- (b) attributable to Network Rail;

Number of Primary Minutes means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are:

- Delay attributable to the Franchisee

  - (a) attributed as a "Primary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
  - (b) attributable to the Franchisee;
  
- Number of Primary Minutes Delay on other Operators attributable to the Franchisee

means the number of minutes of delay to passenger services operated by any other Train Operator or services operated by freight operators that are attributed:

  - (a) as "Primary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
  - (b) to the Franchisee pursuant to the Track Access Agreement, disregarding any minutes of delay that are imputed to other Train Operators' passenger services that were cancelled.
  
- Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator

means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are:

  - (a) attributed as a "Reactionary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
  - (b) attributable to any other Train Operator;
  
- Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail

means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are:

  - (a) attributed as a "Reactionary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
  - (b) attributable to Network Rail;
  
- Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay attributable to the Franchisee

means the number of minutes of delay to the Passenger Services that are:

  - (a) attributed as a "Reactionary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
  - (b) attributable to the Franchisee; and
  
- Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay on other Operators attributable to the Franchisee

means the number of minutes of delay to passenger services operated by any other Train Operator or services operated by freight operators that are attributed:

  - (a) as "Reactionary Delay" in accordance with the Delay Attribution Principles and Rules; and
  - (b) to the Franchisee pursuant to the Track Access Agreement, disregarding any minutes of delay that are imputed to other Train Operators' passenger services that were cancelled.

**1.6** This Appendix 2 shall be interpreted in accordance with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time for that purpose.

<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
<b>Number of Passenger Services</b>		
Number of Passenger Services in the Timetable	[number]	B

<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day	[number]	B
<b>Number of Cancellations and Partial Cancellations</b>		
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Partial Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Cancellation attributable to the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Partial Cancellation attributable to the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Network Rail Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Network Rail Partial Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Disputed Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Disputed Partial Cancellation	[number]	B
Number of Disputed Cancellations and Disputed Partial Cancellations for the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which the attribution remains in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Disputed Cancellations and Disputed Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which disputed attribution has been resolved or determined since the Franchisee's previous	[number]	B



<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
report including whether each relevant Disputed Cancellation and/or Disputed Partial Cancellation was attributed to Network Rail or to the Franchisee		
Where there is a difference between the Timetable and the Plan of the Day on any day the following: (a) the fact of such difference; and (b) the number of: (i) Passenger Services affected; and (ii) Cancellations or Partial Cancellations which would have arisen if the Timetable on that day had been the same as the Plan of the Day	[number]	B
Where there is a difference between the Plan of the Day and the Enforcement Plan of the Day on any day: (a) the fact of such difference; (b) the number of: (i) Passenger Services affected; and (ii) Cancellations or Partial Cancellations which would have arisen if the Plan of the Day had been the same as the Enforcement Plan of the Day	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a cancellation and which satisfied the conditions of the term Cancellation, except that such cancellations occurred for reasons attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a partial cancellation and which satisfied the conditions of the term Partial Cancellation, except that such partial cancellations occurred for reasons attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B

<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
<b>Number of Short Formations</b>		
<b>Short Formations</b>		
Number of Short Formation Peak Passenger Services that have less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan	[number]	B
Number of Short Formation Peak Passenger Services that have less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan attributable to the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan	[number]	B
Number of Short Formation Peak Passenger Services that have less than the required Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
Number of Short Formation Peak Passenger Services scheduled (excluding Cancellations or Partial Cancellations) All Day Short Formations for weekends will be recorded for reporting purposes only.	[number]	B
<b>Minutes Delay</b>		
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Primary Minutes Delay attributable to the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay attributable to the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail	[number]	B
Number of Primary Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail	[number]	B
Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	[number]	B
Number of Primary Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	[number]	B

<b>Table 1 - Operational Performance Information</b>		
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator	[number]	B
Number of Primary Minutes Delay on other Operators attributable to the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Reactionary Minutes Delay on other Operators attributable to the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay for such Reporting Period for which the attribution is in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay for the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which the attribution remains in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which disputed attribution has been resolved or determined since the Franchisee's previous report and the number of such Minutes Delay attributed to each of the Franchisee and Network Rail as a result of such resolution or determination	[number]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributed to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event	[number]	B
<b>T-3, T-15, On Time and All Cancellations</b>		
Time to 3 Minutes percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
Time to 15 Minutes percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
On Time percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
All Cancellations percentage published by Network Rail rounded to two (2) decimal places	[number]	B
<b>Train Mileage</b>		
Planned Train Mileage	[mileage]	A
Actual Train Mileage	[mileage]	B

### Appendix 3 to Schedule 11.2 Summary of Reporting and Other Requirements

This Appendix 3 contains a non-exhaustive summary of the obligations on the Franchisee throughout this Agreement in respect of the provision of information to the Secretary of State which are not set out in this Schedule 11.2. This summary is for guidance only. If there are any inconsistencies with the other contents of the Schedules mentioned below (including any Appendix), those other contents shall apply.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Paragraph 11.2(a) ( <i>Consultation on Significant Alterations to the Timetable</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement for Franchisee to provide a comprehensive summary of the proposed changes from the Timetable then in force.
Paragraph 11.2(e) ( <i>Consultation on Significant Alterations to the Timetable</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement for the Franchisee to publish a report containing a summary of the main issues raised by respondents to the consultation.
Paragraph 13.1 ( <i>Certification and Notification by Franchisee of Exercising Timetable Development Rights</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Obligation on the Franchisee to provide a certificate addressed to the Secretary of State, signed by a statutory director of the Franchisee before exercising any Timetable Development Right to bid for Train Slots.
Paragraph 13.3(a) ( <i>Certification and Notification by Franchisee of Exercising Timetable Development Rights</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement to keep the Secretary of State fully informed of any discussions with Network Rail in relation to the matters referred to in Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> ).
Paragraph 14.4 ( <i>Finalising the Train Plan</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement for Franchisee to provide the Train Plan, certified as true and accurate by the statutory director.
Paragraph 15.1 ( <i>Capacity Mitigation Plan</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement for Franchisee to provide a Capacity Mitigation Plan if required by the Secretary of State.
Paragraph 16.2 ( <i>New or amended Train Service Requirement by Secretary of State and Franchisee Informed Opinion</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement for Franchisee to provide informed opinion in respect of a new or amended Train Service Requirement.
Paragraph 17.2 ( <i>Procedural Arrangements and Timescales</i> ) of Schedule 1.1 ( <i>Franchise Services and Service Development</i> )	Requirement for Franchisee to provide informed opinion in respect of a new or amended Train Service Requirement.
Paragraph 7.4 of Schedule 1.2 ( <i>Operating Obligations</i> )	Reporting requirements in respect of the requirement to actively manage NR's performance of its contractual relationship with the Franchisee, i.e. reviewing delivery of local output commitment by NR and cooperating with NR in the development of a Performance

Reference	Summary of Obligation
	Strategy Plan and any recovery plans necessary.
Paragraph 7.7 of Schedule 1.2 ( <i>Operating Obligations</i> )	Provide evidence to the Secretary of State of the steps taken under Paragraph 7 (Obligation to use all reasonable endeavours under this Schedule 1.2 ( <i>Operating Obligations</i> )).
Paragraph 8 ( <i>Publication of Performance Data</i> ) of Schedule 1.4 ( <i>Passenger Facing Obligations</i> )	Requirements to publish performance data.
Paragraph 9 ( <i>Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data</i> ) of Schedule 1.4 ( <i>Passenger Facing Obligations</i> )	Requirements to publish complaints and fault handling data.
Paragraph 1 ( <i>Passenger Numbers Information</i> ) of Schedule 1.5 ( <i>Information about Passengers</i> )	Requirement to provide Secretary of State information about the use by passengers of the Passenger Services.
Paragraph 11 ( <i>Information about Station Improvement Measures</i> ) of Schedule 1.7 ( <i>Stations</i> )	Requirement to maintain and provide records regarding Station improvement measures and measures taken to improve Station environments.
Paragraph 2.2 ( <i>Rolling Stock Related Contracts and Insurance Arrangements</i> ) of Schedule 2.2 ( <i>Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases</i> )	Obligation to provide a copy of all draft Rolling Stock Related Contracts and all executed Rolling Stock Related Contracts and any agreements amending the Rolling Stock Related Contracts, including such other information as required by the Secretary of State together with a justification of the Franchisee's proposed rolling stock maintenance strategy and provision of analysis of whole life costs.
Paragraph 3.5(b) ( <i>Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan</i> ) of Schedule 2.2 ( <i>Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases</i> )	Requirement to produce a Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan.
Paragraph 1.5 ( <i>Local Authority Concessionary Travel Schemes</i> ) of Schedule 2.5 ( <i>Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> )	Requirement to provide information about concessionary travel schemes.
Paragraph 2.6 ( <i>Multi-Modal Fares Schemes</i> ) of Schedule 2.5 ( <i>Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> )	Requirement to provide information about multi-modal fares schemes.
Paragraph 3.3 ( <i>Discount Fares Schemes</i> ) of Schedule 2.5 ( <i>Transport, Travel and Other Schemes</i> )	Requirement to provide information about Discount Fares Schemes.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Paragraph 4 ( <i>Specific additional obligations relating to persons with disabilities</i> ) of Schedule 4 ( <i>Accessibility and Inclusivity</i> )	Recording of obligations relating to persons with disabilities.
Paragraph 1 ( <i>Information</i> ) and Paragraph 2 ( <i>Monitoring</i> ) of Schedule 5.8 ( <i>Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring</i> )	Requirement to record and monitor Prices and Child Prices of Commuter Fares and Protected Fares.
Paragraph 1.5 ( <i>Smart Ticketing</i> ) of Schedule 5.9 ( <i>Smart Ticketing</i> )	Requirement to provide a detailed explanation of delays under the terms of the SEFT Deed.
Paragraph 5 ( <i>Review of Compliance</i> ) of Schedule 6.2 ( <i>Committed Obligations</i> ) Part 2 ( <i>Special Terms related to Committed Obligations</i> )	Requirement to provide such evidence of compliance with Committed Obligations as the Secretary of State may request.
Paragraph 2 ( <i>Reporting Requirements</i> ) of Schedule 7.1 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )	Reporting requirements relating to Cancellations Benchmarks and Annual Cancellations Benchmarks.
Paragraph 9 ( <i>Information provisions relating to TOC Minute Delay Benchmarks and Annual TOC Minute Delay Benchmarks</i> ) of Schedule 7.1 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )	Reporting requirements relating TOC Minute Delay Benchmarks and Annual TOC Minute Delay Benchmarks.
Paragraph 15 ( <i>Short Formation Benchmarks and Annual Short Formation Benchmark</i> ) of Schedule 7.1 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )	Reporting requirements relating to Short Formation Benchmarks and Annual Short Formation Benchmarks.
Paragraph 18.6 ( <i>Submission of Records relating to the implementation of a Service Recovery Plan</i> ) of Schedule 7.1 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )	Reporting requirements relating to the implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.
Paragraph 9.1 ( <i>Action Plans</i> ) of Schedule 7.1 ( <i>Operational Performance</i> )	Requirement to produce an Action Plan to secure a Required Performance Improvement.
Paragraph 9 ( <i>Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy</i> ) of Schedule 7.2 ( <i>Customer Experience and Engagement</i> )	Requirement to provide to the Secretary of State any proposed revisions to the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy.
Paragraph 10 ( <i>Customer Report</i> ) of Schedule 7.2 ( <i>Customer Experience and Engagement</i> )	Requirement to produce and publish a Customer Report.
Paragraph 11 ( <i>Customer and Communities Investment(CCI) Scheme</i> ) of Schedule 7.2 ( <i>Customer Experience and Engagement</i> )	Requirement to provide details of any CCIF Scheme proposed by the Franchisee.
Paragraph 12.1 ( <i>Customer Service and Satisfaction Data</i> ) of Schedule 7.2 ( <i>Customer Experience and Engagement</i> )	Requirement to publish details of the Franchisee's level of adherence to scheduled ticket office opening hours and performance in respect of Passenger Assistance service.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Paragraph 12.2 and 12.3 ( <i>Customer Service and Satisfaction Data</i> ) of Schedule 7.2 ( <i>Customer Experience and Engagement</i> )	Requirement to publish NRPS scores achieved by the Franchisee.
Paragraph 2 ( <i>Relevant Profit Report</i> ) of Schedule 8.2 ( <i>Profit Share Mechanism</i> )	Reporting requirements relating to Relevant Profit Reports.
Paragraph 11 ( <i>Information</i> ) of Schedule 9.1 ( <i>Financial and Other Consequences of Change</i> )	Requirement to provide information in respect of obligations under Schedule 9.1 ( <i>Financial and Other Consequences of Change</i> ) as the Secretary of State may request.
Paragraph 1 ( <i>Franchisee's Obligations</i> ) of Schedule 9.2 ( <i>Identity of Financial Model</i> )	Requirement to provide the Financial Model and the Escrow Documents.
Paragraphs 3 ( <i>Remedial Plan Notices</i> ) to 4.2 ( <i>Remedial Plans</i> ) of Schedule 10.1 ( <i>Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement</i> )	Obligation to provide certain information in a Remedial Plan Notices/Remedial Plans.
Paragraph 4 ( <i>Business Continuity</i> ) of Schedule 10.3 ( <i>Force Majeure and Business Continuity</i> )	Requirement to provide a Business Continuity Plan.
Paragraph 2.6 ( <i>Community Rail Partnerships</i> ) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide a Community Rail Report.
Paragraph 8 ( <i>Small and Medium-sized Enterprises</i> ) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide breakdown of SMEs.
Paragraph 9 ( <i>Apprenticeships</i> ) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide record of apprenticeships offered.
Paragraph 10.1(d) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to submit a copy of the assessment report produced by an independent body in respect of performance against the Rail Safety and Standard's Board's Sustainable Development Self-Assessment Framework.
Paragraph 10.1(f) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Obligation to produce an improvement plan in respect of the targets against the Sustainable Development Strategy.
Paragraph 10.1(h) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Obligation to provide a report identifying progress in respect of delivering a sustainable franchise and revisions to the Sustainable Development Strategy.
Paragraph 10.1(j) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement on the Franchisee to publish its Sustainable Development Strategy on the request of the Secretary of State.



Reference	Summary of Obligation
Paragraph 10.2(b) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide copies of the certification audit reports and a copy of the ISO50001 Energy Review.
Paragraph 11.1(d) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide a Franchisee ERTMS Plan.
Paragraph 12.6 ( <i>Minimum Wi-Fi Service on Train</i> ) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide the Secretary of State with a report on the performance of the Mobile Communication Services.
Paragraph 12.12 ( <i>MCS Route Signal Survey</i> ) of Schedule 13.1 ( <i>Rail Industry Initiatives</i> )	Requirement to provide the Secretary of State with the a report of, and the data relating to, the MCS Route Signal Survey.
Paragraph 9 ( <i>Provision of Information to the Secretary of State</i> ) of Schedule 14.4 ( <i>Designation of Franchise Assets</i> )	Obligation to provide such information as the Secretary of State requires in respect of Primary Franchise Assets, including details of Security Interests.
Paragraph 5 ( <i>Miscellaneous</i> ) of Schedule 14.5 ( <i>Dealing with Franchise Assets</i> )	Obligation to provide such information as the Secretary of State requires in respect of Security Interests.
Paragraph 1.3 ( <i>Process for issue of a Certificate of Completion for RV Assets</i> ) of Schedule 14.6 ( <i>Residual Value Mechanism</i> )	Obligation to provide such information as the Secretary of State requires in respect of RV Assets.
Paragraph 1.5 of Schedule 14.6 ( <i>Residual Value Mechanism</i> )	Obligation to provide a schedule of condition in respect of RV Assets
Paragraphs 2.1 ( <i>Preparation for Reletting</i> ) and 3 ( <i>Data Site Information</i> ) of Schedule 15.1 ( <i>Reletting Provisions</i> )	Obligation to provide certain information to the Secretary of State in respect of a reletting of the franchise.
Paragraph 1.1 ( <i>Handover Package Status</i> ) of Schedule 15.3 ( <i>Handover Package</i> )	Requirement to produce and maintain the Handover Package.
Paragraph 2 ( <i>Director's Certificate</i> ) of Schedule 15.3 ( <i>Handover Package</i> )	Requirement to provide a director's certificate in each Franchise Year.
Paragraph 9 ( <i>Information about Passengers</i> ) of Schedule 15.4 ( <i>Provisions Applying on and after Termination</i> )	Requirement to provide passenger numbers information, CRM Data and Yield Management Data on expiry of the Franchise Period.
Paragraph 2.2 ( <i>Net Asset Statement</i> ) of Appendix 2 ( <i>Form of Supplemental Agreement</i> ) of Schedule 15.4 ( <i>Provisions Applying on and after Termination</i> )	Obligation to prepare and provide a net asset statement under the supplemental agreement.
Paragraph 6 ( <i>Discharge of Obligations</i> ) of Schedule 16 ( <i>Pensions</i> )	Obligation to provide a certificate signed by the Trustee in relation to the Franchise Sections stating that the Franchisee has fully complied with its obligations under the Railways Pensions Scheme.



Reference	Summary of Obligation
Paragraph 10 ( <i>Redactions</i> ) of Schedule 17 ( <i>Confidentiality and Freedom of Information</i> )	Obligation to provide details of provisions of the Franchise Documents or any such variations which the Franchisee believes are exempt from the Freedom of Information Act, Environmental Information Regulations or the Act.

**Appendix 7 to Schedule 1**  
**Appendix 2 (*D&I Strategy*) to Schedule 13.1 (*Rail Industry Initiatives*)**

## Diversity and Inclusion Strategy Framework

The Department requires a train operator who will develop and implement a tailored Diversity and Inclusion Strategy, the goal of which is to deliver a more diverse workforce, reflective of the communities that it serves, by increasing representation of under-represented groups at all levels and grades.

### Requirement from the Franchisee

The train operator shall prepare and submit a Diversity & Inclusion Strategy in accordance with the guidance and templates contained in this framework. However, it should be noted that this is not a comprehensive framework and should only be used as a guide.

The train operator shall submit a strategic Diversity & Inclusion action plan including the steps that they will take to ensure a more diverse workforce. The train operator shall also set out the methods they propose to monitor and report on the implementation of the policy and its effectiveness.

### Strategic Diversity and Inclusion Action Plan

The Diversity & Inclusion Strategy shall include the following:

- Plans to implement a range of recruitment and retention policies and procedures to ensure they recruit and retain a diverse group of candidates.
- A set of recruitment targets which is 50% female with BAME composition reflective of the local area.
- Plans to address gaps in representation in all job types and levels to meet recruitment targets on gender and BAME.
- A list of specific KPIs to measure progress/success of implementing diversity action plan.
- Plans for achieving, maintaining and progressing within a specific diversity accreditation scheme.
- Plans to collect, monitor and report diversity data of its workforce.

### Plans to implement recruitment and retention policies and procedures

This is an example below of what a general diversity plan might look like.

Goal	Objective	Current position/ baseline	Actions	Accountability	By when	Measure of success
Increase workforce diversity	Recruit from a diverse group of candidates	Some advertisement in different publications	Work with local employment agencies and JCP	HR	Q4	Workforce is increasingly reflective  Internal targets
Retain a diverse workforce	Create an inclusive culture that encourages collaboration and increases retention	Employee engagement survey	Inclusive leadership training for managers	HR	Q3	All leaders to have D&I training  Engagement results should increase

Goal	Objective	Current position/ baseline	Actions	Accountability	By when	Measure of success
Monitoring diversity data	Monitor diversity data to implement a range of recruitment policies	Data is collected on gender and age but there is no action  Data is not collected on other protected characteristics	Collect diversity data on all groups  Monitor data every 6 months	HR	Q2	Recruitment policies are reviewed and updated

The Strategy should also cover most of the protected characteristics, as well as looking at caring responsibilities, social mobility and issues affecting parents returning to work. Below are some examples of what this could look like depending at what point of the journey the train operator is at.

Goal	Objective	Actions	Measure of success
BAME	Improve representation of people from a BAME background in leadership and across the business. Seek to undertake and publish ethnicity pay gap report and activities.	Programme of mentoring and activities	Increase in BAME representation in leadership/ across organisation  10% employees from BAME  Reduction in pay gap
Disability	Develop appropriate environment for people.	Train managers to deliver reasonable adjustment	Increase number of disabled employees  Disability Confident Leader
Gender	Improve gender diversity across workforce and in leadership positions.	Set targets  Programme of activities	25% of employees to be women  Reduction in gender pay gap
LGBT+	Be an inclusive employer of LGBT+ employees	Provide specific LGBT+ awareness/ confidence training for managers	Stonewall Inclusive Employers
Carers	Support carers in the workplace	Review family-friendly policies to support carers  Increase awareness amongst managers of carers' needs	Level 1 Carer Confident Benchmark  Carer Positive award

<b>Goal</b>	<b>Objective</b>	<b>Actions</b>	<b>Measure of success</b>
Faith and belief	Be an employer where people of different faiths and beliefs feel equally valued and respected	Provide series of briefings for employees  Faith spaces for employees	Inclusive Employer status
Age	Transfer skills between generations	Develop inter-generational mentoring between older and younger employees	Recognised as an employer for all ages
Social mobility	Make sure everyone can succeed and make the most of their talents, whatever the circumstances	Promote work with ex-offenders and lone parents  Collect data on social mobility	The Social Mobility Employer Index

### **KPIs Example**

The plan should be supported by an appropriate set of key performance indicators to measure progress. For example, this could include:

- Number of positive action initiatives in employment.
- Number of adverts in targeted publications to reach BAME and women.
- Membership of networks and forums.

**Appendix 8 to Schedule 1**  
**Schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*)**

## Schedule 7.2

### Customer Experience and Engagement

#### 1. Definitions

1.1 For the purposes of this Schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*) only, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings unless otherwise set out in clause 3 (*Definitions*):

“**Alternative NRPS**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.6 of this Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement);

“**NRPS Improvement Plan**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.3 of this Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement);

“**NRPS Improvement Proposal**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of this Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement);

“**NRPS Measure**” means each of the factors more particularly described in the Passenger Survey Methodology and grouped as “Stations (S)”, “Trains (T)”, “Customer Service (C)” and “Dealing With Delays (D)”;

“**NRPS Service Group**” means each of the service groups to be set out in the Passenger Survey Methodology and more particularly described as:

- (a) Mainline;
- (b) Rural
- (c) Stansted Express; and
- (c) West Anglia,

or such other service groups as may be agreed or determined pursuant to Schedule 8.1B;

#### 2. Conduct of National Rail Passenger Surveys

2.1 The Franchisee agrees with the Secretary of State that:

- (a) the Passengers' Council may measure the level of passenger satisfaction with the Franchise Services through National Rail Passenger Surveys;
- (b) the Passengers' Council shall determine how, when (normally twice per annum) and where National Rail Passenger Surveys are to be carried out;
- (c) the Franchisee shall grant access on trains or at stations to the Passengers' Council (or its representatives and agents) to carry out National Rail Passenger Surveys;
- (d) the Franchisee shall co-operate with the Passengers' Council (in such manner as the Passengers' Council may reasonably request or as the Secretary of State may reasonably direct) in order to enable the Passengers' Council to carry out National Rail Passenger Surveys; and
- (e) the Passengers' Council and/or the Secretary of State may, from time to time, publish the results of each National Rail Passenger Survey.

2.2 The Secretary of State shall ensure or shall procure that:

- (a) the findings of any National Rail Passenger Survey are made available by the Passengers' Council to the Franchisee within a reasonable period of time after the completion of each such survey and shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure that those findings are made available in a timely manner to enable the Franchisee to comply with its obligations under paragraph 2.3; and
  - (b) if any such survey includes a comparison between its findings and the findings of any equivalent earlier survey, such comparison forms a reasonable basis for monitoring the trends of passenger satisfaction over time.
- 2.3 The Franchisee shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after such information is made available to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 2.2, publicise its performance against the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels by including such information in its Customer Report and displaying such information at all of the Stations and on its website.
- 2.4 It is agreed by the Franchisee that, subject to paragraph 2.5, the methodology to be adopted by the Passengers' Council in conducting any such National Rail Passenger Survey shall be as described in the Passenger Survey Methodology agreed pursuant to paragraph 4.5 of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*).
- 2.5 If:
  - (a) at any time the methodology adopted in conducting any National Rail Passenger Survey is, in the opinion of the Secretary of State (acting reasonably), materially inconsistent with the Passenger Survey Methodology; and
  - (b) the Secretary of State reasonably determines that in consequence a revision to any of the NRPS Targets and/or any of the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels is required in order to hold constant the risk of the Franchisee failing to satisfy the applicable NRPS Target(s) and/or NRPS Improvement Plan Levels (as applicable),then the Secretary of State shall make such revisions to such NRPS Target(s) and/or NRPS Improvement Plan Levels (as applicable) as the Secretary of State reasonably considers appropriate to hold constant such risk.
- 2.6 If the Passengers' Council ceases to undertake National Rail Passenger Surveys then the relevant National Rail Passenger Survey for the purposes of this Schedule 7.2 and Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) shall be such other passenger survey as the Secretary of State may, after consultation with the Franchisee, reasonably determine to be appropriate in the circumstances (the "**Alternative NRPS**"). The provisions of this Schedule 7.2 and Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) shall apply in respect of any Alternative NRPS and for these purposes the Passengers' Council shall be replaced with such other entity that is responsible for conducting such Alternative NRPS.
- 3. **NRPS Targets and NRPS Improvement Plan Levels**
- 3.1 It is agreed by the Secretary of State and the Franchisee that, subject to paragraph 2.6, the results of the National Rail Passenger Survey(s) published by the Passengers' Council in any PBF Assessment Period should be used to determine the Franchisee's performance against the NRPS Targets and the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels for that PBF Assessment Period. If in any PBF Assessment Period the Passengers' Council has published:
  - (a) only one (1) National Rail Passenger Survey in that PBF Assessment Period then the performance of the Franchisee against the NRPS Targets and the NRPS Improvement



Plan Levels shall be measured against the results of such National Rail Passenger Survey; or

- (b) more than one (1) National Rail Passenger Survey in that PBF Assessment Period then the performance of the Franchisee against the NRPS Targets and the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels shall be measured against the average of the results of all of the National Rail Passenger Surveys published by the Passengers' Council in that PBF Assessment Period.

#### 4. Performance Review

4.1 For each PBF Assessment Period the Secretary of State shall calculate the Franchisee's Overall Performance Score for each NRPS Measure and shall determine the Franchisee's performance against each NRPS Target and NRPS Improvement Plan Level by comparing:

- (a) if only one (1) National Rail Passenger Survey has been published by Passengers' Council in that PBF Assessment Period:
  - (i) the results of such National Rail Passenger Survey against the applicable NRPS Improvement Plan Levels; and
  - (ii) the Overall Performance Score for each NRPS Measure against the applicable NRPS Target in respect of that PBF Assessment Period; or
- (b) if more than one (1) National Rail Passenger Survey has been published by Passengers' Council in that PBF Assessment Period:
  - (i) , the average of the results of all of the National Rail Passenger Surveys published by the Passengers' Council in that PBF Assessment Period against the applicable NRPS Improvement Plan Levels; and
  - (ii) the average of the Overall Performance Scores for each NRPS Measure achieved by the Franchisee in all of the National Rail Passenger Surveys published by the Passengers' Council in that PBF Assessment Period against the applicable NRPS Targets in respect of that PBF Assessment Period.

4.2 For the purposes of undertaking the comparison pursuant to paragraph 4.1, the results referred to in paragraph 4.1(a) or paragraph 4.1(b) (as the case may be) shall be rounded up to one (1) decimal place with the midpoint (that is, 4.45) rounded upwards (that is, 4.5).

4.3 If, following the Secretary of State's determination pursuant to either of paragraphs 4.1(a) or 4.1(b) (as the case may be), the results show that the level of customer satisfaction in respect of any NRPS Measure for any NRPS Service Group is below the NRPS Improvement Plan Level for such measure then the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request from the Franchisee a plan in order to secure an improvement in the level of customer satisfaction for the relevant NRPS Measure for the applicable NRPS Service Group as measured by a National Rail Passenger Survey so that such level is equal to or better than the related NRPS Improvement Plan Level.

4.4 Following the Secretary of State's determination pursuant to either of paragraphs 4.1(a) or 4.1(b) (as the case may be), the provisions set out in paragraph 3.5 (*Calculation of CE(NRPS)*) of Appendix 5 (*Quantified Target Methodology*) of Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) shall apply.

## 5. NRPS Improvement Proposals

5.1 Within thirty (30) Weekdays of the Secretary of State's request (or such longer period as may be agreed by the Secretary of State) pursuant to paragraph 4.3, the Franchisee shall, at its own cost, prepare and deliver to the Secretary of State its proposal (the "**NRPS Improvement Proposal**") for achieving an improvement in the level of customer satisfaction for the relevant NRPS Measure for the applicable NRPS Service Group as measured by a National Rail Passenger Survey so that such level is not lower than the NRPS Improvement Plan Level, which shall:

- (a) contain specific tangible action points and indicate in the case of each action point:
  - (i) how that action will contribute to meeting the relevant NRPS Measure for the applicable NRPS Service Group;
  - (ii) where the action is to be implemented;
  - (iii) the proposed timescales for implementing such action and, where any action is expressed to be ongoing, proposed review dates; and
  - (iv) how the Franchisee proposes to measure the performance of the action; and
- (b) the additional expenditure associated with each action.

5.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to:

- (a) request further information from the Franchisee with respect to its NRPS Improvement Proposal, and the Franchisee shall submit such further information to the Secretary of State within the timescales as reasonably requested by the Secretary of State; and/or
- (b) propose amendments to the NRPS Improvement Proposal and the Parties shall agree or, in absence of agreement, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amendments to the NRPS Improvement Proposal, in which case paragraph 5.3 shall apply; or
- (c) accept the NRPS Improvement Proposal, in which case paragraph 5.3 shall apply; or
- (d) not accept the NRPS Improvement Proposal, in which case the Franchisee shall not be obliged to undertake any further action with respect to its NRPS Improvement Proposal.

5.3 The NRPS Improvement Proposal as agreed, determined or accepted by the Secretary of State, (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 5.2 shall be referred to as the "**NRPS Improvement Plan**". The Franchisee shall implement the NRPS Improvement Plan in accordance with its terms.

6. **[Not used]**

## 7. Payments on Termination or Expiry

Upon the termination or expiry of this Agreement the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State, an amount equivalent to the amount of any Additional Expenditure that the Franchisee is committed to incur such payment to be made by way of adjustment to Franchise Payments (or, where no Franchise Payment(s) remain due and payable as at the date of expiry or termination of this Agreement, such payment to be made to the Secretary of State within thirty (30) days of the end of the Franchise Period).

## 8. Consultations

The Franchisee shall undertake consultations from time to time as required with:

- (a) passengers, potential passengers, Stakeholders and other users of the rail network; and
- (b) persons who are covered by an Accessible Travel Policy; and
- (c) persons with other protected characteristics within the meaning of the EA,

for the purposes of the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy, the Customer Report and the CCI Scheme.

## 9. Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy

9.1 The Franchisee shall comply with the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy from the Start Date.

9.2 The Franchisee shall:

- (a) undertake and complete a review of the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy during each of the fourth (4<sup>th</sup>) and seventh (7<sup>th</sup>) Franchisee Years; and
- (b) provide the Secretary of State with any proposed revisions to the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy arising out of such review by no later than the end of each such Franchisee Year.

9.3 The aim of the review referred to in paragraph 9.2 shall be to update the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy to reflect lessons learned in the period since the Start Date or the previous review of the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy (as applicable) and to ensure that the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy achieves effective passenger engagement.

9.4 Any revisions to the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy shall require the consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).

## 10. Customer Report

10.1 The Franchisee shall, in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 10.2 and paragraph 10.3 below, publish a Customer Report in such readily accessible formats as the Secretary of State may reasonably require (including in booklet or other similar hard copy formats (if and to the extent that the Secretary of State instructs the Franchisee to re-commence the publication of hard copy formats during the term of the ERMA), in electronic formats (such as on the Franchisee's website, through social media channels and by email)), in each case in accordance with the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy and the provisions of paragraph 8 (*Publication of Performance Data*) and paragraph 9 (*Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data*) of Schedule 1.4 (*Passenger Facing Obligations*) and paragraph 16 of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*).

10.2 The Franchisee shall publish a Customer Report as follows:

- (a) in respect of the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Franchisee Year:
  - (i) where such Franchisee Year is less than seven (7) Reporting Periods, the Franchisee shall only be required to publish a Customer Report for that Franchisee Year by no later than the Start Date; or

- (ii) where such Franchisee Year is less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods but equal to or more than seven (7) Reporting Periods, the Franchisee shall be required to publish two (2) Customer Reports in that Franchisee Year, the first Customer Report to be published by no later than the Start Date and the second Customer Report to be published before the end of that first Franchisee Year; and
  - (b) in respect of each subsequent Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall be required to publish a Customer Report at least twice in that Franchisee Year provided that where any such subsequent Franchisee Year is less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods the Franchisee shall be required to publish a Customer Report only once in respect of that Franchisee Year.
- 10.3 Without prejudice to the obligations of the Franchisee as specified in each of paragraphs 12.1 and 12.3 of this Schedule 7.2, paragraphs 8.3 and 9 of Schedule 1.4 (*Passenger Facing Obligations*) and paragraph 16 of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*), the Secretary of State and the Franchisee acknowledge and agree that in respect of each Franchisee Year to which the provisions of paragraph 10.2(b) apply, the first Customer Report to be published for that Franchisee Year shall be prepared in respect of the first six (6) Reporting Periods of that Franchisee Year and the second Customer Report to be published for that Franchisee Year shall be prepared in respect of the last seven (7) Reporting Periods of that Franchisee Year.
- 11. **Customer and Communities Investment (CCI) Scheme**
- 11.1 No later than three (3) months prior to the start of each CCIF Period the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State details of those initiatives, works or proposals (each a “**CCIF Scheme**”) which the Franchisee proposes to undertake in that CCIF Period in order to resolve or mitigate issues raised with the Franchisee through the consultations as carried out pursuant to paragraph 8 (*Consultations*). The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to propose, in respect of each CCIF Period, CCIF Schemes with an aggregate projected CCIF Scheme Shortfall of not less than the aggregate of the CCIF Amount for each Franchisee Year in the relevant CCIF Period.
- 11.2 In relation to each CCIF Scheme proposed by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 11.1 the Franchisee shall provide:
  - (a) details of the specific issues which that CCIF Scheme is intended to resolve or mitigate (including how those issues have been identified) and how that CCIF Scheme will resolve or mitigate those issues; and
  - (b) fully worked up details of the CCIF Scheme sufficient to enable the Secretary of State to evaluate the same, including:
    - (i) a timetable for the implementation of that CCIF Scheme, setting out the proposed commencement and completion date of such CCIF Scheme and any other key dates and milestones;
    - (ii) details of the projected CCIF Scheme Cost; and
    - (iii) details of the projected CCIF Scheme Revenue.
- 11.3 The Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with such further information in relation to any CCIF Scheme proposed by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 11.1 as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

- 11.4 A CCIF Scheme proposed by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 11.1 shall not be an Approved CCIF Scheme unless and until approved by the Secretary of State pursuant to this paragraph 11.4. Without limitation, the Secretary of State may withhold the Secretary of State's approval to any proposed CCIF Scheme which:
- (a) has not been identified and/or developed in accordance with the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy;
  - (b) is not designed to resolve or mitigate issues raised with the Franchisee through the consultations referred to in paragraph 8;
  - (c) has a completion date falling later than the end of the relevant CCIF Period;
  - (d) is projected to generate a Commercial Return or in relation to which the Secretary of State considers the CCIF Scheme Costs (or any part of them) to be too high or disproportionate to the benefits accruing from the CCIF Scheme;
  - (e) the Franchisee is otherwise funded to undertake; or
  - (f) in the opinion of the Secretary of State, amounts to actions or steps which the Franchisee is otherwise obliged to take or which any competent train operator should be taking in relation to the operation of the Franchisee.
- 11.5. Approved CCIF Schemes shall be deemed to be, and treated for the purposes of this Agreement as, Committed Obligations.
- 11.5A. [Not used].
- 11.5B. [Not used].
- 11.6 Paragraph 11.8 will apply if:
- (a) the aggregate projected CCIF Scheme Shortfall in respect of all Approved CCIF Schemes for any CCIF Period is less than the aggregate of the CCIF Amount for each Franchisee Year in that CCIF Period; or
  - (b) subject to paragraph 11.7 in any CCIF Period, in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, the aggregate of the actual CCIF Scheme Shortfall incurred by the Franchisee during that CCIF Period upon Approved CCIF Schemes is less than the aggregate of the CCIF Amount for each Franchisee Year in that CCIF Period,
- in each case the underspend against the aggregate CCIF Amount being the **"CCIF Scheme Underspend"**.
- 11.7 If:
- (a) the amount of the CCIF Scheme Costs actually incurred by the Franchisee in relation to any Approved CCIF Scheme exceed the projected CCIF Scheme Costs notified to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 11.2 for such Approved CCIF Scheme, then the amount of the excess shall not amount to CCIF Scheme Cost; or
  - (b) in the Secretary of State's reasonable opinion, the amount of the CCIF Scheme Revenue actually earned by the Franchisee in relation to any Approved CCIF Scheme is less than the projected CCIF Scheme Revenue notified to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 11.2 for such Approved CCIF Scheme then, for the purposes of paragraph 11.6(b) the actual CCIF Scheme Revenue shall be deemed to be the projected CCIF Scheme Revenue.

- 11.8 Where this paragraph 11.8 applies the Secretary of State may require:
- (a) all or part of the CCIF Scheme Underspend to be added to the CCIF Amount for the first Franchisee Year in the subsequent CCIF Period;
  - (b) the Franchisee to propose further CCIF Schemes using all or part of the CCIF Scheme Underspend by such new deadline as the Secretary of State may specify;
  - (c) the Franchisee to spend all or part of the CCIF Scheme Underspend in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct; and/or
  - (d) the Franchisee to pay all or part of the CCIF Scheme Underspend to the Secretary of State,

provided that paragraph 11.8(d) shall automatically apply in respect of the last CCIF Period unless the Secretary of State specifies otherwise.

- 11.9 Any Franchise Asset arising as a result of an Approved CCIF Scheme shall be designated as a Primary Franchise Asset and shall not be de-designated as such. Any such Primary Franchise Asset which falls to be valued in accordance with the Supplemental Agreement shall be valued at nil.
- 11.10 The Franchisee shall deliver each Approved CCIF Scheme by the completion date approved by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 11.4 of this Schedule 7.2, or by such later date as may otherwise be agreed by the Secretary of State.

## 12. **Customer Service and Satisfaction Data**

- 12.1 As part of each Customer Report to be provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 10.1 of this Schedule 7.2, the Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) details of the Franchisee's:
- (a) level of adherence to scheduled ticket office opening hours at Stations (so that the Customer Report shows, as a percentage, the proportion of scheduled ticket office opening hours not delivered aggregated across all ticket offices at all Stations); and
  - (b) performance by reference to such benchmarks as may be agreed between the Franchisee and the ORR as part of an Accessible Travel Policy in respect of the Passenger Assistance service operated by the Franchisee,

in each case in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report with (from the third Customer Report onwards) a comparison with the relevant statistics or results (as applicable) provided for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Franchisee Year.

- 12.2 The Franchisee shall publish on its website (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require):
- (a) within twenty (20) Weekdays of the publication of each National Rail Passenger Survey carried out by the Passengers' Council during the Franchise, details of the scores achieved by the Franchisee in such National Rail Passenger Survey, including the scores achieved in respect of passengers' 'overall satisfaction'; and
  - (b) within twenty (20) Weekdays of the publication of the last National Rail Passenger Survey to be carried out by the Passengers' Council during any PBF Assessment Period, details of the scores achieved by the Franchisee in respect of each NRPS Measure applicable to each NRPS Service Group, as calculated in accordance with

paragraph 3.5 of Appendix 5 to Schedule 8.1B (*Performance Based Fee*) for such NRPS Service Group.

- 12.3 The Franchisee shall ensure that the scores achieved in relation to the NRPS Measures applicable to each NRPS Service Group, published by it pursuant to paragraph 12.2, are also recorded in the subsequent Customer Report which relates to the Reporting Periods during which the applicable scores were achieved, along with:
- (a) [Not used]
  - (b) details of any remedial work either:
    - (i) planned by the Franchisee to occur in the period in relation to which the next Customer Report will report to improve the Franchisee's performance in relation to achieving and exceeding the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels; or
    - (ii) undertaken by the Franchisee during the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report or, in the case of the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Customer Report, since the Start Date, for the purposes of improving the Franchisee's performance in relation to achieving and exceeding the NRPS Improvement Plan Levels; and
  - (c) details of any other initiatives planned to be implemented by the Franchisee to improve passenger experience.
- 12.4 If the Secretary of State instructs the Franchisee to re-commence the publication of Customer Reports in hard copy formats during the term of the ERMA, the Franchisee shall ensure that a summary of the then current Customer Report is made available at all staffed Stations (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) and that such summary includes instructions to enable passengers to locate and obtain a full copy of the applicable Customer Report.

### **13 Wavelength**

- 13.1 Unless otherwise directed by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall:
- (a) fully and effectively engage with the Wavelength Programme;
  - (b) subject to the relevant information being made available to the Franchisee via the Wavelength portal, provide to the Secretary of State by no later than seven (7) Weekdays following the end of each Reporting Period, a report setting out the results of the Wavelength Survey undertaken during that Reporting Period, such results to be presented in such aggregated or disaggregated format as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time; and
  - (c) subject to the relevant information being made available to the Franchisee via the Wavelength portal, provide to the Secretary of State by no later than 14 Weekdays following the end of each quarter, a report detailing:
    - (i) how the Franchisee has used the full range of Wavelength Programme insights (including the analysis of data received through the Wavelength Survey) to implement and/or invest in:
      - (A) customer-focused initiatives; and/or
      - (B) tangible benefits or improvements for customers; and



- (ii) whether such initiatives, benefits or improvements referred to in paragraph 13.1(c)(i) have:
  - (A) resulted in any improvement in the Wavelength Survey scores collected to date; and/or
  - (B) any other improvements or benefits to the Franchisee.

13.2 For the purpose of this paragraph 13:

- (a) **“Wavelength Programme”** means the programme of work being developed by the rail industry which involves collecting a wide range of information about the customer experience by tracking, amongst other things, the Franchisee’s performance against certain journey touchpoints (as specified in the Wavelength Survey) and certain key commitments based on core passenger priorities; and
- (b) **“Wavelength Survey”** means the weekly survey relating to the Passenger Services (in such form as may be agreed from time to time), which is undertaken as part of the Wavelength Programme to monitor, amongst other things, the Franchisee’s performance against certain journey touchpoints (as specified in the Wavelength Survey) and certain key commitments based on core passenger priorities.

#### 14. Incentive Regimes

14.1 The Franchisee shall, as required by the Secretary of State, fully and effectively co-operate with the Secretary of State to design, develop and (as applicable) implement and provide to the Secretary of State such data as the Secretary of State may require in relation to potential new incentive regimes (which may be replace existing provisions of the Franchise Agreement and/or be used in future contracts with Train Operators), including designing:

- (a) new models for assessing service quality;
- (b) new measures of Operational Performance;
- (c) alternative cost incentive mechanisms;
- (d) a regime for assessing service quality provided by the Franchisee; and/or
- (e) a regime for assessing the Franchisee’s performance in relation to deterring and preventing ticketless travel.

14.2 The Franchisee’s obligations pursuant to paragraph 14.1 above may include:

- (a) developing, reviewing and/or commenting on proposals in relation to such new incentive regimes;
- (b) providing advice on the feasibility, costs and other implications of any such proposals made by the Secretary of State;
- (c) new models for attending meetings to discuss such proposals and any related matters; and
- (d) supporting the Secretary of State in preparing to implement such new incentive mechanisms, including by collecting and providing relevant data to the Secretary of State in accordance with any requirements specified by the Secretary of State from time to time.



## Schedule 2

### Termination of the Franchise Agreement

#### 1 Definitions

1.1 In this Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*):

**“Applicable Rolling Stock Lease”** means a Rolling Stock Lease in respect of which the Lease Expiry Date applicable to that Rolling Stock Lease is later than 1.59 a.m. on the date specified in paragraph (a) of the definition of Expiry Date.

**“Bond”** means the Bond as defined under and provided pursuant to the Funding Deed.

**“DfT Funded Early Termination Amount”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 6.3.

**“Estimated Termination Sum”** means the Secretary of State’s estimate of the amount payable by the Franchisee as the Termination Sum as notified to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 3.2.

**“Final ERMA Balance Sheet”** means the Final ERMA Balance Sheet as agreed or determined by the Secretary of State, in accordance with Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the Franchise Agreement.

**“Final Settlement Date”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 7.6.

**“Forecast Net Assets Amount”** means, as set out in the Restated P2012 Balance Sheet, the aggregate amount of the Franchisee’s assets after deducting its liabilities and excluding any Available Cash Balances, any items included in paragraph 9.4A(d)(ii) of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the Franchise Agreement, any onerous contract provisions, and any balances relating to the Railway Pension Scheme other than those that relate to pension contributions.

<sup>18</sup>**“Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount”** has the meaning given to it in paragraph 7.3.

<sup>19</sup>**“Interim Net Assets Payment Amount”** means the Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount or the SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount as applicable.

**“Lease Expiry Date”** means the date on which an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease is stated therein to expire by effluxion of time.

**“Lease Termination Clawback Amount”** means any amount or proportion of the Lease Termination Sums payable by the Franchisee under an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease which the Franchisee is entitled to reclaim or receive (whether by way of rebate of rent or otherwise) from the Lessor under the Applicable Rolling Stock Lease where the Lessor sells or re-leases the rolling stock vehicles (previously leased pursuant to the Applicable Rolling Stock Lease) at any time during the period from the date on which the Applicable Rolling Stock Lease is terminated and ending on the Lease Expiry Date.

**“Lease Termination Sums”** means any sums that the Franchisee is required to pay to a Lessor in circumstances where the Applicable Rolling Stock Lease terminates prior to its Lease Expiry

---

<sup>18</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract insertion agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

<sup>19</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

Date excluding, for these purposes, any sums payable by the Franchisee to the Lessor in respect of any Rolling Stock Dilapidations Liability.

“**Lessor**” means a person from whom the Franchisee leases any rolling stock vehicles comprised in the Train Fleet pursuant to the terms of an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease.

“**Net Assets Reconciliation Amount**” means the aggregate amount of any assets received or liabilities settled by the Franchisee since the date of the Final ERMA Balance Sheet and which were not reflected in the value of the Updated Net Assets Amount.

“**Non-COVID Trajectory Model**” has the meaning given to it in Appendix 1.

“**Original Franchise Term**” has the meaning given to it in Appendix 1.

“**Outstanding Lease Termination Amount**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.2(r).

“**Rent**” means any rent or rental (or equivalent payment), including amounts paid in respect of a maintenance reserve or otherwise in connection with the maintenance of the applicable rolling stock, which the Franchisee is obliged to pay the Lessor for the leasing of the rolling stock, under the terms of an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease.

“**Rolling Stock Dilapidations Liability**” means any outstanding liability of the Franchisee on or following the end of the Franchise Agreement which is owed by the Franchisee to the Lessor in accordance with an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease and arising out of a failure by the Franchisee to redeliver the relevant rolling stock in the required condition as specified under such Applicable Rolling Stock Lease.

<sup>20</sup>“**SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 7.3A.

“**Termination Sum**” means the amount notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.5.

“**Termination Sum Acceptance Letter**” means the letter substantially in the form set out in Appendix 2 (*Termination Sum Acceptance Letter*).

“**Updated Net Assets Amount**” means the value of the Forecast Net Assets Amount updated to reflect the unwinding of assets and liabilities identified as a result of the process to produce the Final ERMA Balance Sheet.

“**Waiver Letters**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1.

## 2 Default termination

The Parties acknowledge and agree that the provisions of this Schedule 2 shall not apply in circumstances where, following service of a Termination Notice by the Secretary of State pursuant to schedule 10.2 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*) of the Franchise Agreement, the Franchise Agreement terminates earlier than the end of the Franchise Term and in those circumstances the consequences of termination shall be determined by reference to the applicable terms of the Franchise Agreement.

---

<sup>20</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract insertion agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

---

### 3 Calculation of the Termination Sum

3.1 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Estimated Termination Sum and the Termination Sum shall be determined using the Non-COVID Trajectory Model developed in accordance with Appendix 1 (*Termination Sum Principles*).

3.2 <sup>21</sup>As soon as reasonably practicable following the date of the amendment letter between the Secretary of State and the Franchisee dated 15 October 2020, the Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the Secretary of State's estimate of the amount payable as the Termination Sum determined using the Non-COVID Trajectory Model (the "Estimated Termination Sum").

3.3 <sup>22</sup>If and to the extent that the Franchisee reasonably considers the Estimated Termination Sum does not reasonably reflect the amount which should have been determined using the Non-COVID Trajectory Model, it shall no later than 10 November 2020, make written representations to the Secretary of State setting out any issues which it considers should be taken into consideration together with details of its reasoning and any supporting evidence ("Initial Representations").

3.3A <sup>23</sup>If, following review of the Non-COVID Trajectory Modelling Suite and any other information made available to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State on or after the date on which the Initial Representations were made, the Franchisee reasonably considers that:

- (a) the Estimated Termination Sum does not reasonably reflect the amount which should have been determined using the Non-COVID Trajectory Model;
- (b) there are any issues relevant to the determination of the matters set out in paragraph 7 (*Net Assets*) of this Schedule 2 which it reasonably considers should be taken into consideration (where the Non-COVID Trajectory Model shows that the Franchisee was forecast to breach its Financial Ratios and thereby trigger the right for the Secretary of State to notify the Franchisee that an Event of Default has occurred during the Original Franchise Term); or
- (c) there is any other impact on the Initial Representations,

it shall by no later than the expiry of fifteen (15) Weekdays from the date on which the Non-COVID Trajectory Modelling Suite is provided to the Franchisee or 14 December 2020 if later make written representations to the Secretary of State setting out any issues which it considers should be taken into consideration in this regard, together with details of its reasoning and any supporting evidence ("Final Representations"). The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Final Representations shall be limited to points arising out of the Franchisee's review of the Non-COVID Trajectory Modelling Suite and any other information made available to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State on or after the date on which the Initial Representations were made.

3.4 <sup>24</sup>The Secretary of State will take account of any Initial Representations and Final Representations made by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraphs 3.3 and 3.3A above.

---

<sup>21</sup> 15 October 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

<sup>22</sup> 18 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

<sup>23</sup> 18 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract insertion agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

<sup>24</sup> 18 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

**This shall not oblige the Secretary of State to adjust the Estimated Termination Sum or the Non- COVID Trajectory Model on account of any such representations.**

**3.5** <sup>25</sup> <sup>26</sup> **The Secretary of State shall, by no later than 19 March 2021, provide to the Franchisee the Secretary of State’s final determination of the Termination Sum.**

**3.6** By no later than the expiry of seven (7) Weekdays following the date of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph 3.5, in respect of the Termination Sum notified to it by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 3.5, the Franchisee shall either:

(m) confirm its acceptance of the Termination Sum by issuing a signed Termination Sum Acceptance Letter to the Secretary of State; or

(n) inform the Secretary of State in writing that it does not accept the Termination Sum.

**3.7** If the Franchisee fails to comply with paragraph 3.6 by the date which is 7 Weekdays following the date of receipt of the notice referred to in paragraph 3.5, the Franchisee shall be deemed to have rejected the Termination Sum.

**3.8** If the Franchisee has accepted the Termination Sum in accordance with paragraph 3.6(m), the Franchisee shall pay the Termination Sum to the Secretary of State no later than the last day of the Franchise Period in accordance with such payment instructions as the Secretary of State may notify to the Franchisee in writing.

#### **4 Rolling Stock**

**4.1** The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to deliver, by no later than 27 November 2020 (or such later date as the Secretary of State may determine), to the Secretary of State waiver letters (each substantively in the applicable forms set out in Appendix 4 (*Waiver Letters*) or such other form as may be agreed by the Franchisee and the Lessor and approved by the Secretary of State) signed by each relevant Lessor and the Franchisee (the “**Waiver Letters**”).

**4.2** Provided that the Franchisee:

(o) has complied with its obligations in paragraph 4.1; and

(p) complies with the terms of the applicable Waiver Letter and enforces its rights under that Waiver Letter at the direction of the Secretary of State,

the Secretary of State shall:

(q) pay as a Cost any Lease Termination Sums (taking into account, where applicable, any Lease Termination Clawback Amounts that are due or payable to the Franchisee under the Applicable Rolling Stock Lease) that the Franchisee reasonably and properly incurs, and excluding any costs incurred by the Franchisee which are inconsistent with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, where the Lessor terminates an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease on the occurrence of an event of default under such Applicable Rolling Stock Lease which has arisen solely as a result of the Franchisee entering into this ERMA; or

(r) be liable to pay any Lease Termination Sums (taking into account, where applicable, any Lease Termination Clawback Amounts that are due or payable to the Franchisee under the Applicable Rolling Stock Lease) that the Franchisee may properly and

---

<sup>25</sup> 18 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

<sup>26</sup> 20 January 2021 (Date of Contract Change Letter) Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee.

reasonably incur solely as a consequence of this Agreement expiring by effluxion of time prior to the applicable Lease Expiry Date (the “**Outstanding Lease Termination Amount**”).

- 4.3** The Secretary of State shall reimburse the Franchisee for any Outstanding Lease Termination Amount(s) paid by the Franchisee within twenty one (21) days of receipt of a notice from the Franchisee demonstrating to the Secretary of State’s satisfaction that such Outstanding Lease Termination Amount(s) were properly and reasonably incurred and paid by the Franchisee, provided that the Secretary of State may exercise the right to set-off the Secretary of State’s obligation to pay any Outstanding Lease Termination Amount against any right to receive payment of any Lease Termination Clawback Amounts and/or rebates of Rent from the Franchisee.
- 4.4** If following payment of any Lease Termination Sums by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph (q), the Franchisee subsequently becomes entitled under the terms of an Applicable Rolling Stock Lease to any Lease Termination Clawback Amounts (excluding Lease Termination Clawback Amounts taken into account in calculation of the Lease Termination Sums in accordance with paragraph 4.2), the Franchisee shall, within fourteen (14) days of the date on which the Franchisee becomes entitled to receipt of each such Lease Termination Clawback Amount, pay that amount to the Secretary of State.
- 4.5** If on or following the end of the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee is entitled to receive any rebate of Rent (which was paid in advance by the Franchisee in respect of the period from and including the date after the Franchise Agreement terminates but was not taken into account in the calculation of the Lease Termination Clawback Amount), the Franchisee shall within fourteen (14) days of the date on which the Franchisee becomes entitled to receive such rebate of Rent pay that amount to the Secretary of State.
- 4.6** The Franchisee shall:
- (a) immediately notify the Secretary of State as soon as the Franchisee becomes aware of any entitlement to a Lease Termination Clawback Amount or any amounts referred to in paragraph 4.5; and
  - (b) provide such supporting information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of verifying such amounts and/or the Franchisee’s entitlements to such amounts.

## **5 Network Rail**

- 5.1** <sup>27</sup>The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to deliver, by no later than 4 December 2020 (or such later date as the Secretary of State may determine), to the Secretary of State a signed waiver letter (substantively in the form set out as Appendix 3).

## **6 Third Party Contracts**

- 6.1** For the purpose of this paragraph 6, an “**Applicable Third Party Contract**” means a contract:
- (a) included in the notification from the Franchisee to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 2.2 of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the Franchise Agreement

---

<sup>27</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

and in respect of which the Franchisee has demonstrated to the Secretary of State's reasonable satisfaction that it would incur the relevant liability if it were to terminate such contract on the expiry of the Franchise Term;

- (b) in relation to which the Franchisee has taken all actions required or directed by the Secretary of State to mitigate or extinguish any potential liability arising on its termination or transfer; and
- (c) in relation to which the Franchisee has not taken any action to restrict or prevent the transfer of such contract or any rights or obligations under or in respect of it (by way of a Transfer Scheme or otherwise).

**6.2** The Secretary of State shall be entitled (in the Secretary of State's sole discretion) to direct how the rights and obligations of the Franchisee under each Applicable Third Party Contract shall be dealt with on the expiry of the Franchise Period (whether by inclusion in a Transfer Scheme, novation and/or other transfer or dealing, by termination or otherwise). The Franchisee shall comply with the Secretary of State's directions under this paragraph 6.2.

**6.3** Subject to compliance by the Franchisee with its obligations under paragraph 6.2, on the expiry but not earlier termination of the Franchise Term, the Secretary of State shall be liable to the Franchisee in respect of such costs and/or liabilities as the Franchisee incurs solely as a result of future obligations and liabilities of the Franchisee under an Applicable Third Party Contract (i.e. those arising in respect of the period following the expiry of the Franchise Term and excluding any accrued or arising before that date) not being transferred to a Successor Operator or other person or otherwise relieved or discharged, provided that the Secretary of State shall not be liable for any costs which:

- (a) are incurred as a result of the Franchisee's failure to mitigate;
- (b) arise as a result of the Franchisee's failure to act as a Good and Efficient Operator; and/or
- (c) which the Franchisee has failed to demonstrate to the Secretary of State's satisfaction were reasonably incurred and evidenced,

(a "**DfT Funded Early Termination Amount**").

**6.4** The Secretary of State shall reimburse the Franchisee for any DfT Funded Early Termination Amount(s) paid by the Franchisee within twenty one (21) days of receipt of a notice from the Franchisee demonstrating to the Secretary of State's satisfaction that such DfT Funded Early Termination Amount(s) were reasonably incurred and paid by the Franchisee.

## **7 Net Assets**

**7.1** This paragraph 7 shall only apply to the Franchisee in circumstances where the Non-COVID Trajectory Model shows that the Franchisee was forecast to breach its Financial Ratios and thereby trigger the right for the Secretary of State to notify the Franchisee that an Event of Default has occurred during the Original Franchise Term.

**7.2** The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Forecast Net Assets Amount shall be determined in accordance with the Restated P2012 Balance Sheet as agreed or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the Franchise Agreement.



- 7.3** <sup>28</sup>If the Forecast Net Assets Amount is a positive number, the Franchisee shall, no later than the last day of the ERMA Term or the Extended Term (as applicable) and in accordance with such payment instructions as the Secretary of State may notify to the Franchisee in writing at least 5 Weekdays in advance of the last date for payment, pay to the Secretary of State an amount equal to ninety per cent (90%) (or such lower percentage as the Secretary of State may, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion, direct) of the Forecast Net Assets Amount (the "Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount").
- 7.3A** <sup>29</sup>If the Forecast Net Assets Amount is a negative number, the Secretary of State shall, no later than the last day of the ERMA Term or the Extended Term (as applicable) and in accordance with such payment instructions as the Franchisee may notify to the Secretary of State in writing at least 5 Weekdays in advance of the last date for payment, pay to the Franchisee an amount equal to one hundred per cent (100%) of the Forecast Net Assets Amount (the "SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount").
- 7.4** <sup>30</sup>No later than ten (10) days following the date on which the Final ERMA Balance Sheet is agreed or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State of the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount and:
- (a) if a Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount was paid pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 7.3 and the Updated Net Assets Amount:
    - (i) is greater than the Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Franchisee shall, within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of such notice, pay to the Secretary of State an amount equal to the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount;
    - (ii) is less than the Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Secretary of State shall, within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of such notice, pay to the Franchisee an amount equal to the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the Franchisee Interim Net Assets Payment Amount;
  - (b) if an SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount was paid pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 7.3A and the Updated Net Assets Amount:
    - (i) is less than the SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Secretary of State shall, within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of such notice, pay to the Franchisee an amount equal to the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount;
    - (ii) is greater than the SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Franchisee shall, within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of such notice, pay to the Secretary of State an amount equal to the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the SoS Interim Net Assets Payment Amount,

---

<sup>28</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

<sup>29</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract insertion agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

<sup>30</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

and provided that in each case, any payment instructions are notified by the payee to the other Party at least 5 Weekdays in advance of the last date for the payment.

- 7.5** No later than ten (10) days following the date on which the Final ERMA Balance Sheet is agreed or determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State of the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount and where the Updated Net Assets Amount:
- (a) is greater than the amount of the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Franchisee shall, within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of such notice, pay to the Secretary of State an amount equal to the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount;
  - (b) is less than the amount of the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount, the Secretary of State shall, within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of such notice, pay to the Franchisee an amount equal to the difference between the Updated Net Assets Amount and the Interim Net Assets Payment Amount.
- 7.6** The Franchisee shall, on the Secretary of State's request and without prejudice to any other reporting obligations of the Franchisee, provide:
- (a) a progress update to the Secretary of State in respect of the process of the unwinding of the Final ERMA Balance Sheet in accordance with paragraph 9.4A(I) of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement; and
  - (b) such other related information as the Secretary of State may request.
- 7.7** The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State promptly following full and final recovery of all of the Franchisee's assets and settlement of all of the Franchisee's outstanding liabilities as at the date of the Final ERMA Balance Sheet (the "**Final Settlement Date**").
- 7.8** <sup>31</sup>Within thirty (30) days of the Final Settlement Date, the Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the Net Assets Reconciliation Amount and whether the Secretary of State or the Franchisee (as applicable) shall be liable to pay the Net Assets Reconciliation Amount.
- 7.9** <sup>32</sup>Within thirty-five (35) days of receipt of notice from the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 7.7 (or such later date as the Secretary of State may notify), the Franchisee or the Secretary of State (as applicable) shall pay the Net Assets Reconciliation Amount to the other Party, in accordance with such payment instructions as the Secretary of State or the Franchisee (as applicable) may notify the other Party in writing provided that any payment instructions are notified to the relevant Party at least 5 Weekdays in advance of the last date for the payment of the Net Assets Reconciliation Amount in accordance with this paragraph 7.8..
- 7.10** The Secretary of State shall have an unfettered discretion to make the determinations contemplated in this paragraph 7.

---

<sup>31</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

<sup>32</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)



**8 Miscellaneous**

- 8.1** Any notice, notification or other communication under or in connection with the matters specified in this Schedule 2 shall be served in accordance with clause 12 (*Notices*) of the Franchise Agreement.
- 8.2** In the event of conflict between the terms of this Schedule 2 and the other terms of the Franchise Agreement, subject to Clause 2.1.2 of this ERMA, the terms of this Schedule 2 shall prevail.
- 8.3** Notwithstanding any other provisions of Schedule 2, the Parties acknowledge and agree:
- (a) neither Party shall be entitled to recover more than once in respect of the same amount; and
  - (b) where the same amounts are taken account of more than once as part of any calculation in accordance with this Schedule 2 and/or the terms of the Franchise Agreement which would result in a Party being obliged to account for the same amount more than once, the Parties shall agree suitable adjustments to prevent any double recovery or where, the Parties are unable to agree such adjustments within a reasonable time, the Secretary of State may determine those adjustments in the Secretary of State's sole discretion.

## Appendix 1 to Schedule 2

### Termination Sum Principles

#### 1 Definitions and Interpretation

##### 1.1 Definitions

- (a) **“Available Cash Balances”** means the aggregate value of all cash held by the Franchisee as at 1 March 2020 after excluding:
- (iii) any amounts the Franchisee was required to retain by the Franchise Agreement and/or the Funding Deed in order to satisfy its Financial Ratios;
  - (iv) the value of the Season Ticket suspense account; and
  - (v) any other amounts of ringfenced cash which is not included within Modified Revenue or Forecast Modified Revenue as applicable;
- (b) **“Forecast Net Losses”** means the aggregate amount of all profits or losses (before tax) projected to be incurred by the Franchisee as determined using the Non-COVID Trajectory Model for the period from 1 March 2020 to expiry of the Original Franchise Term, as discounted at an annual equivalent rate of three point five per cent (3.5%) from the date of such profits or losses being incurred to the last day of the ERMA Term;
- (c) **“Non-COVID Trajectory”** means the Franchisee’s forecast financial performance during the Original Franchise Term assuming COVID-19 has not occurred;
- (d) **“Non-COVID Trajectory Model”** means a model in respect of the Non-COVID Trajectory, built by the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State’s advisers, on the basis of industry standard frameworks (including the Passenger Demand Forecasting Handbook and DfT Transport Analysis Guidance) and which takes account of, the most recent version of the Financial Model and Record of Assumptions placed in Escrow, the Franchisee’s original bid submissions and the Franchisee’s actual performance from the date of the Original Franchise Agreement to 1 February 2020, which:
- (i) takes account of all parent company support drawn down as at 1 March 2020; and
  - (ii) on the basis of certain fair, reasonable and objective assumptions (including as detailed in paragraph 3 below), forecasts any drawdown, or where applicable further drawdown, of parent company support on a period by period basis and, where applicable, the projected date on which the Franchisee would have breached its Financial Ratios triggering the right for the Secretary of State to notify the Franchisee that an Event of Default has occurred;
- (e) **“Original Franchise Agreement”** means the Franchise Agreement in the form existing immediately prior to 1 March 2020;
- (f) **“Original Franchise Term”** means the term of Franchise Agreement under the Original Franchise Agreement assuming that, provided the Franchisee would not have been in default at the relevant time, the Secretary of State exercised any unilateral option to extend the term in accordance with its terms;
- (g) **“PCS Facility”** has the meaning given to the term in the Funding Deed;

- (h) “**Undrawn PCS Amount**” means the difference between the original total value of the PCS Facility (as defined in the Funding Deed) and the amount advanced and which remain outstanding under that PCS Facility as at 1 March 2020.

## 1.2 Construction

- (a) In this Appendix 1, “reasonable” refers only to public law standards of reasonableness and any challenge to a decision of the Secretary of State by reference to such term may only be determined in accordance with principles of English public law.
- (b) If and insofar as there is found to exist any implied obligation of reasonableness in respect of the implementation of the terms of this Appendix 1, this must be construed only in accordance with that term in English public law.

## 2 Termination Sum

### 2.1 The Secretary of State shall determine the Termination Sum using the Non-COVID Trajectory Model so that:

- (a) where the Non-COVID Trajectory Model shows that the Franchisee has drawn down on the PCS Facility or a PCS Advance would have been made to the Franchisee in order to avoid the Franchisee breaching its Financial Ratios and thereby triggering the right for the Secretary of State to notify the Franchisee that an Event of Default has occurred during the Original Franchise Term, the Termination Sum shall be equal to the Forecast Net Losses provided that:
  - (i) this amount shall not exceed the aggregate of the Undrawn PCS Amount and Available Cash Balances; and
  - (ii) where the Forecast Net Losses (after discounting) result in a net profit, the Forecast Net Losses shall be deemed to be zero.
- (b) where the Non-COVID Trajectory Model shows that the Franchisee has drawn down on the PCS Facility or a PCS Advance would have been made to the Franchisee but that the Franchisee does not avoid breaching its Financial Ratios and thereby triggering the right for the Secretary of State to notify the Franchisee that an Event of Default has occurred during the Original Franchise Term, the Termination Sum shall, subject to paragraph 2.2, be the aggregate of the Undrawn PCS Amount and Available Cash Balances.

### 2.2 For the purposes of paragraph 2.1.2, the Undrawn PCS Amount shall be discounted at an annual equivalent rate of three point five per cent (3.5%) from the date of PCS Advance forecast by the Non-COVID Trajectory Model being incurred to the last day of the ERMA Term.

## 3 Modelling Assumptions

### 3.1 The Secretary of State shall generate a projection for the Franchisee’s financial performance (including revenue, cost and balance sheet forecasts) on a Non-COVID Trajectory during the Original Franchise Term based on a set of reasonable assumptions for quantifying relevant exogenous and endogenous factors, including in relation to:

- (a) projected exogenous and endogenous revenues of the Franchisee during the Original Franchise Term from farebox and non-farebox revenue sources (as applicable);
- (b) projected costs incurred by the Franchisee during the Original Franchise Term, including, amongst others, operating costs, capex and potential savings;

- (c) a reasonable estimate of the aggregate Franchise Payments during the Original Franchise Term including in relation to any claims between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State and where known, between the Franchisee and third parties, taking into account the likelihood of success of such claims; and
- (d) the scope for value creation and increased savings through implementation of new strategic initiatives which were not contemplated as part of the Franchisee's bid submission.

**Appendix 2 to Schedule 2****Termination Sum Acceptance Letter**

Secretary of State for Transport  
Department for Transport Department  
Great Minster House  
33 Horseferry Road  
London  
SW1P 4DR

[By Email]

[●] 2020

Dear Secretary of State

**Termination Sum  
Emergency Recovery Measures Agreement**

1. We refer to the Emergency Recovery Measures Agreement entered into between us (as “**Franchisee**”) and the Secretary of State for Transport (the “**Secretary of State**”) dated [●] 2020 (the “**ERMA**”).
2. We further refer to your notice dated [●] issued in accordance with paragraph 3.5 of Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) to the ERMA notifying us that the Termination Sum is [●] pounds (£[●]).
3. Unless otherwise stated, defined terms used in this letter shall have the meaning given to them in the ERMA.
4. The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that:
  - (a) the Termination Sum has been calculated on the basis of a fair and reasonable principles as further detailed in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*) to the ERMA; and
  - (b) it shall pay the Termination Sum in accordance with the terms of the ERMA.
5. The Franchisee hereby warrants to the Secretary of State that the information provided by it to the Secretary of State during the period between the date of the ERMA and the date of this letter is true, accurate and not misleading as at the date of this letter.
6. The Franchisee acknowledges that the decisions by the Secretary of State in relation to the calculation, and mechanics for payment, of the Termination Sum, including the policy and procedure adopted by the Secretary of State to reach and implement these decisions (together, the “**Decisions**”) are reasonable.
7. The Franchisee covenants that it will not, and will procure that none of its Related Parties will, make, maintain, support, assist or encourage any Claim of any kind against the Secretary of State or any other party in connection with or arising out of the Decisions.

Yours sincerely

---

Abellio East Anglia Limited

**Appendix 3 to Schedule 2****Form of Waiver Letter****[On DfT headed notepaper]**

Network Rail Infrastructure Limited  
1 Eversholt Street  
London  
NW1 2DN  
Email: notices@networkrail.co.uk

Dear Sir/Madam

Abellio East Anglia Limited

1. As you may be aware, in response to the COVID-19 pandemic the Secretary of State for Transport (“**SoS**”) and Abellio East Anglia Limited (the “**Franchisee**”) have entered into an Emergency Recovery Measures Agreement (“**ERMA**”). Pursuant to the terms of the ERMA, the SoS and the Franchisee have agreed that the franchise agreement dated 23 August 2016 between the SoS and the Franchisee (the “**Franchise Agreement**”) will terminate by effluxion of time at 01:59 on 19 September 2021 (the “**Revised Expiry Date**”).
2. Following the Revised Expiry Date, the services previously provided by the Franchisee under the Franchise Agreement will either:
  - (a) continue to be provided by the Franchisee under a directly awarded franchise agreement (a “**Direct Award**”); or
  - (b) be provided by [**Successor Operator**] (company registration number [*insert number*]), a wholly owned subsidiary of DfT OLR Holdings Limited (“**DOHL**”) in fulfilment of the SoS’s duty pursuant to section 30 of the Railways Act 1993. DOHL is a wholly owned subsidiary of the Secretary of State.
3. In circumstances where a Direct Award is made, it is intended that the Franchisee will continue to perform its obligations and take the benefit of its rights under each of the agreements listed in the Appendix to this letter.
4. In circumstances where the SoS is unable to agree the terms of a Direct Award with the Franchisee (or the Franchise Agreement terminates for whatever reason at any time prior to the Revised Expiry Date), then the Secretary of State intends to transfer, via a statutory transfer scheme to be made pursuant to the Railways Act 2005, the Franchisee’s future rights and liabilities under the Relevant Agreements to a Successor Operator who is appointed by the Secretary of State to exercise his duty under section 30 of the Railways Act 1993 to provide the passenger services currently provided under the Franchise Agreement.
5. The agreements listed in Part A of the Appendix to this letter (“**Category A Relevant Agreements**”) are expressed to trigger an event of default on a termination of the Franchise Agreement. Network Rail agrees that, in consideration of payment of £1.00 (receipt of which is hereby acknowledged by Network Rail), it will not exercise any right to terminate any of the Category A Relevant Agreements (or any other agreement between Network Rail and the Franchisee) where such right to terminate arises solely as a consequence of the termination or expiry of the Franchise Agreement.

- 6. The agreements listed in Part B of the Appendix to this letter (“**Category B Relevant Agreements**”) are expressed to terminate automatically upon a termination of the Franchise Agreement (the “**Automatic Termination Right**”). Network Rail agrees that, in consideration of payment of £1.00 (receipt of which is hereby acknowledged by Network Rail), the Automatic Termination Right in each of the Category B Relevant Agreements shall be deemed to be amended such that each of the Category B Relevant Agreements does not terminate solely as a consequence of the termination or expiry of the Franchise Agreement.
- 7. ***[Insert any bespoke arrangements for the relevant Franchise that are not covered by the paragraphs above.]***

Please sign and return the enclosed copy of this letter by way of your agreement to its terms.

Yours sincerely

.....  
 For and on behalf of  
 The Secretary of State for Transport

We acknowledge and agree to the terms of this letter.

.....  
 For and on behalf of  
 Abellio East Anglia Limited

.....  
 For and on behalf of  
 Network Rail Infrastructure Limited



## Appendix

### Part A: Category A Relevant Agreements

*[Details of each agreement between the Franchisee and Network Rail (e.g. access agreements, collateral agreements, connection agreements, shared facility agreements, works agreements) which include an event of default triggered by the termination of the Franchise Agreement to be inserted.]*

### Part B: Category B Relevant Agreements

*[Details of each agreement between the Franchisee and Network Rail (e.g. access agreements, collateral agreements, connection agreements, shared facility agreements, works agreements) which include an automatic termination right triggered by the termination of the Franchise Agreement to be inserted.]*

**Appendix 4 to Schedule 2**

[REDACTED<sup>33</sup>]

---

<sup>33</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

## Schedule 3 Early ERMA Termination

The provisions of this Schedule 3 shall only apply if the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's right to terminate this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2 of this ERMA.

### 1 Definitions

#### 1.1 In this Schedule 3:

**“Actual Expenditure Amount”** or **“AEA”** means, in relation to a Committed Obligation or a Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable), the total Costs and Capital Expenditure that were funded by the Secretary of State and which relate to costs that the Franchisee incurred in delivering the relevant Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) during the EMA-ERMA Period. For the purpose of this definition, the actual costs incurred shall be determined subject to paragraph 2.1.

**“Balancing Payment”** means, in relation to an Other Commitment, a balancing payment in accordance with paragraph 2.9.

**“EMA-ERMA Period”** means the period on and from 1 March 2020 to the Early ERMA Termination Date (inclusive).

**“Expenditure Commitments”** means the Franchisee’s obligations to incur a specified (or minimum) amount of expenditure towards such purpose or outcome (as applicable) as may be specified in the relevant Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation in accordance with part 1 to schedule 6.2 (*Committed Obligations*) or schedule 6.1 (*Franchise Specific Obligations*) to the Franchise Agreement respectively.

**“Modelled Expenditure Amount”** or **“MEA”** means, in relation to a Committed Obligation or a Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable), the total amount of Secretary of State funding included as a modelled cost in the calculation of Franchise Payments as calculated by the Financial Model and (as applicable) documented in the Record of Assumptions for the EMA-ERMA Period, assuming that such funding would have been included in Franchise Payments on a pro rata basis calculated by reference to the number of days in the relevant Reporting Periods and relevant Franchisee Years.

**“Other Commitments”** means the Franchisee’s obligations to deliver any Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation which does not constitute an Expenditure Commitment.

**“Recalculated Balancing Payment”** means, in relation to an Other Commitment, a Balancing Payment which has been recalculated on the basis of the Updated Values (as defined in paragraph 2.15.2).

**“Relevant Other Commitment”** means each Other Commitment in respect of which either the Total Actual Expenditure or the Total Modelled Expenditure, exceeds or has exceeded **[REDACTED<sup>34</sup>]**.

**“Total Actual Expenditure”** or **“TAE”** means, in relation to a Committed Obligation or a Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable):

---

<sup>34</sup> December 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- (a) where the relevant obligation has been fulfilled in full, the total cost of delivering the relevant Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) as substantiated by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State's reasonable satisfaction; or
- (b) otherwise, an estimate of the total cost expected to be incurred in delivering the relevant Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) which the Parties shall, use all reasonable endeavours to agree,

in each case, determined subject to paragraph 2.1.

**"Total Modelled Expenditure"** or **"TME"** means, in relation to a Committed Obligation or a Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable), the total cost which the Franchisee was projected to incur in delivering the relevant Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) during the Franchise Period, as determined by reference to the aggregate amount that the Record of Assumptions and/or the Financial Model (as applicable) assumed would be spent in relation to such Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable).

**"Updated TAE"** means, in relation to a Committed Obligation or a Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable), the total costs actually incurred during the Franchise Term in delivering such Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) as substantiated by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State's reasonable satisfaction. For the purpose of this definition, the actual costs incurred shall be determined subject to paragraph 2.1.

## 2 Committed Obligations and Franchise Specific Obligations

2.1 For the purposes of this paragraph 2 (and the definition of any expression used in this paragraph 2):

2.1.1 any costs incurred by the Franchisee in relation to delivering any Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation which were Disallowable Costs or Unreimbursed Disallowable Costs shall be disregarded;

2.1.2 any costs incurred by the Franchisee in relation to delivering any Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation:

- (i) in respect of the period prior to 1 March 2020, which were incurred otherwise than in accordance with its obligations under the Franchise Agreement (as in effect at the time the relevant costs were incurred);
- (ii) in respect of the period on and from 1 March 2020 to the ERMA Start Date, which were incurred otherwise than in accordance with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator (as defined under the EMA);
- (iii) in respect of the period on and from the ERMA Start Date until the Early ERMA Termination Date, which were incurred otherwise than in accordance with acting as a Good and Efficient Operator, and
- (iv) on and from the Early ERMA Termination Date, which were incurred otherwise than in accordance with its obligations under the Franchise Agreement (as in effect at the time the relevant costs were incurred),

shall be disregarded.

- 2.1.3** any references to the Record of Assumptions and/ or Financial Model (as applicable) means the latest version of the Record of Assumptions and/or Financial Model (as applicable) agreed under the Franchise Agreement;
- 2.1.4** the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to cooperate with the Secretary of State to agree the matters described in this paragraph 1 and shall respond to any requests for information, calculations or comments as the Secretary of State may reasonably make in connection with such matters; and
- 2.1.5** where, Parties are required to “use all reasonable endeavours to agree” a particular matter, they shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree that matter, provided that, if Parties fail to reach an agreement within the specified time period (or in the absence of a specified time period, a period of time which the Secretary of State considers reasonable), the Secretary of State shall have the right to reasonably determine the matter.
- 2.2** Neither Party shall have the right to receive nor the obligation to pay (or otherwise compensate) the other Party in respect of the same amount more than once.
- 2.3** No later than 28 February 2021 (or such later date as the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee), the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State:
- 2.3.1** an updated statement in respect of the matters set out in the Franchisee’s statement provided pursuant to and in accordance with paragraph 7A of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement (save that all references in that paragraph to 1 March 2020 shall be replaced with the Early ERMA Termination Date); and
- 2.3.2** any other information that the Secretary of State may reasonably request.
- 2.4** Without prejudice to the Secretary of State’s rights pursuant to paragraph 2.5 below, the Secretary of State may exercise its rights under paragraph 9.9 of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) of the Franchise Agreement to audit or otherwise investigate any of the matters described in paragraph 1.3.
- 2.5** Without prejudice to the Franchisee’s obligations under paragraph 2.4, the Secretary of State reserves the right to determine, in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion (acting reasonably), the position in respect of any of the matters described in paragraph 2.3 by reference to all the information available to the Secretary of State.
- 2.6** Having due regard to information available to them, including the statements provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 2.3 above and paragraph 7A of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement, and where applicable, the findings of any audit(s) conducted pursuant to paragraph 9.9 of Schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement, the Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree, in relation to each Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation:
- 2.6.1** the Modelled Expenditure Amount; and
- 2.6.2** the Actual Expenditure Amount.
- 2.7** In relation to each Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation which constitutes an Expenditure Commitment, the Parties acknowledge and agree that where the Actual Expenditure Amount is:

- 2.7.1** less than the Modelled Expenditure Amount, the Secretary of State shall be liable in respect of the difference to the Franchisee and the Secretary of State may discharge such liability (in the Secretary of State's sole discretion) by way of:
- (i) an adjustment to the Franchise Payments in the Franchisee's favour;
  - (ii) set-off against any amounts owed by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State; and/or
  - (iii) implementing an equivalent reduction in the value of the relevant Expenditure Commitment, or of any other Expenditure Commitment, under the Franchise Agreement (provided that the resulting value of the Expenditure Commitment shall not be lower than the amount the Franchisee has already spent, or cannot reasonably avoid spending, in respect of that Expenditure Commitment).
- 2.7.2** greater than the Modelled Expenditure Amount, the Franchisee shall be liable for the difference to the Secretary of State and shall, on the direction of the Secretary of State:
- (i) pay the relevant amount to the Secretary of State on the next Payment Date falling no fewer than seven days after receipt of a written notice from the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) apply such amounts towards such other alternative scheme or schemes as the Secretary of State may nominate in the Secretary of State's sole discretion; or
  - (iii) apply such amounts in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct, in the Secretary of State's sole discretion.
- 2.8** No later than 31 March 2021 (or such later date as the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee), the Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree a list of all Relevant Other Commitments.
- 2.9** As soon as reasonably practicable following agreement (or if applicable determination) as to which Committed Obligations or Franchise Specific Obligations constitute Relevant Other Commitments or such other time as the Parties may agree, the Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree a balancing payment in respect of the proportion of each Relevant Other Commitment delivered during the EMA-ERMA Period such that:
- 2.9.1** in circumstances where there is a difference between the Actual Expenditure Amount and the Modelled Expenditure Amount in respect of a Relevant Other Commitment:
- (i) the Secretary of State shall compensate the Franchisee for any underfunding; and
  - (ii) the Franchisee shall compensate the Secretary of State for any overfunding, during the EMA-ERMA Period, taking into account the proportion of such Relevant Other Commitment which: (a) was delivered before 1 March 2020, (b) was delivered during the EMA-ERMA Period through the Franchise Payments, (c) is assumed in the Financial Model and/or Record of Assumptions to be delivered during the EMA-ERMA Period; and (d) remains to be delivered after the EMA-ERMA Period, in each case, in accordance with paragraph 2.13 below; and

**2.9.2** in circumstances where there is a difference between the Total Actual Expenditure and the Total Modelled Expenditure in respect of a Relevant Other Commitment, any overspend or underspend (as applicable) shall be apportioned to each Party in accordance with the proportion of the Total Actual Expenditure in relation to such Relevant Other Commitment incurred or expected to be incurred during the period when such Party was or is on cost risk,

(a “**Balancing Payment**”).

**2.10** The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Balancing Payment in respect of each Relevant Other Commitment shall, subject to any such adjustment as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine is necessary to take into account any actions already taken to compensate either of the Parties in respect of the matters described in paragraph 2.9 (in accordance with the principle described in paragraph 2.2), be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$\text{Balancing Payment} = \text{MEA} - \text{AEA} + X$$

where X represents the Secretary of State’s share of any overspend or underspend, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.11.

**2.11** For the purposes of paragraph 2.10, X shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$X = \frac{\text{AEA}}{\text{TAE}} * (\text{TAE} - \text{TME})$$

**2.12** If the Parties agree or the Secretary of State reasonably determines that the results of applying the formulae set out in paragraphs 2.10 and 2.11 give rise to an outcome which is inconsistent with the principles set out in paragraphs 2.2 and 2.9 above, the Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree an alternative formula or approach to calculating the Balancing Payments.

**2.13** In relation to each Relevant Other Commitment, where the Balancing Payment is:

**2.13.1** a positive number, the Secretary of State shall be liable to pay the Franchisee such Balancing Payment and the Secretary of State may discharge such liability (in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion) by way of:

- (i) an adjustment to the Franchise Payments in the Franchisee’s favour; and/or
- (ii) set-off against any amounts owed by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State;

**2.13.2** a negative number, the Franchisee shall be liable to pay the Secretary of State such Balancing Payment and shall, on the direction of the Secretary of State:

- (i) pay the relevant amount to the Secretary of State on the next Payment Date falling no fewer than seven days after a written notice from the Secretary of State;
- (ii) apply such amounts towards such other alternative scheme or schemes as the Secretary of State may nominate in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion; or
- (iii) apply such amounts in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct, in the Secretary of State’s sole discretion.

- 2.14** When the Total Actual Expenditure is determined based on an estimate of the total cost expected to be incurred in delivering a Committed Obligation or a Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable), the Franchisee shall, on delivering such Committed Obligation or Franchise Specific Obligation (as applicable) in full, provide to the Secretary of State a reconciliation between the Total Actual Expenditure and the Updated TAE.
- 2.15** In relation to any Other Commitment, following: (i) the provision of a reconciliation pursuant to paragraph 2.14 above; or (ii) a Run of the Financial Model in relation to any Change:
- 2.15.1** the Secretary of State may, at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, determine whether the Balancing Payment should be calculated or recalculated in respect of such Other Commitment;
- 2.15.2** where the Secretary of State so determines pursuant to paragraph 2.15.1, the Parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree the updated values of TAE, MEA and/ or TME (as applicable) (the "Updated Value(s)"); and
- 2.15.3** the Balancing Payment shall be calculated or recalculated (as applicable) using the Updated Value(s).
- 2.16** If the Secretary of State has elected to recalculate a Balancing Payment in respect of any Other Commitment, pursuant to paragraph 2.15, the Parties acknowledge and agree that where the Recalculated Balancing Payment is:
- 2.16.1** greater than the sum of the Balancing Payment and any previous Recalculated Balancing Payment(s), the Secretary of State shall be liable in respect of the difference to the Franchisee; or
- 2.16.2** less than the sum of the Balancing Payment and any previous Recalculated Balancing Payment(s), the Franchisee shall be liable in respect of the difference to the Secretary of State,
- and, in each case, the relevant Party shall discharge its liability in accordance with paragraph 2.13.1 or 2.13.2 (as applicable).
- 2.17** In respect of a Balancing Payment calculated pursuant to paragraph 2.15 (which is not a Recalculated Balancing Payment), the Parties acknowledge and agree that where the Balancing Payment is:
- 2.17.1** a positive number, the Secretary of State shall be liable in respect of the difference to the Franchisee; or
- 2.17.2** a negative number, the Franchisee shall be liable in respect of the difference to the Secretary of State,
- and, in each case, the relevant Party shall discharge its liability in accordance with paragraph 2.13.1 or 2.13.2 (as applicable).

### **3 RV Assets**

- 3.1** No later than 28 February 2021 (or such later date as the Secretary of State may notify the Franchisee), the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State such information as is required by the Secretary of State, and in the detail needed to demonstrate and evidence the degree to which any RV Asset listed in Column 1 of the table set out in the Appendix (*List of the RV Assets*) to schedule 14.6 (*Residual Value Mechanism*) to the Franchisee



Agreement has been progressed and the actual capital cost incurred in relation to each such RV Asset during the EMA-ERMA Period.

- 3.2** The Secretary of State may, in assessing the status and condition of the relevant RV Asset, exercise its rights under paragraph 6 (*Right to Inspect*) of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement.
- 3.3** The Parties acknowledge that during the EMA-ERMA Period, the Secretary of State has, subject to the terms of the ERMA, funded the cost of delivering the RV Assets listed in Column 1 of the table set out in the Appendix (*List of the RV Assets*) to schedule 14.6 (*Residual Value Mechanism*) and, in order to reflect this, the Parties agree that, in respect of each relevant RV Asset:
- 3.3.1** the Secretary of State shall adjust the capital cost amount specified in Column 5 of the table in the Appendix to schedule 14.6 (*List of the RV Assets*) to the Franchise Agreement to reduce it by the amount of the capital expenditure which was funded by the Secretary of State during the EMA-ERMA Period (and excluding any funding of depreciation costs by the Secretary of State);
- 3.3.2** the Secretary of State shall adjust the RV Asset Transfer Value applicable to such RV Asset by using the same principles as were specified in the Financial Model and Record of Assumptions for the calculation of the initial RV Asset Transfer Value except that the capital cost (as adjusted pursuant to paragraph 3.3.1 above) shall replace the capital cost specified for such RV Asset in Column 5 of the table in the Appendix (*List of the RV Assets*) to schedule 14.6 (*List of the RV Assets*) to the Franchise Agreement in order to calculate the revised RV Asset Transfer Value; and
- 3.3.3** Column 2 of the table the Appendix (*List of the RV Assets*) to schedule 14.6 (*List of the RV Assets*) to the Franchise Agreement shall be restated using the amounts of the revised RV Asset Transfer Value pursuant to paragraph 3.3.2.
- 3.4** The adjustments and restatement set out in paragraph 3.3 shall be deemed to take effect from the Early ERMA Termination Date. The provisions of paragraph 3.3 shall be without prejudice to any other further adjustments which may be made to the RV Asset Transfer Value pursuant to Schedule 14.6 (*List of the RV Assets*).

## **4 Survival**

- 4.1** The following provisions and any other provisions of this ERMA and/or the Franchise Agreement as amended by the terms of this ERMA (as applicable) reasonably required for the purpose of giving full effect to such provisions or for any other purpose shall survive the termination of this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2 and shall continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms unless and until the Secretary of State instructs otherwise, and the continued operation of such provisions following the termination of this ERMA pursuant to Clause 3.2 shall not constitute a Change for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement:
- 4.1.1** Clauses 12.2 and 12.6;
- 4.1.2** Clause 13.1 (*Early ERMA Termination*);
- 4.1.3** the amendments to schedule 2.2 (*Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;

- 4.1.4 the amendments to schedule 4 (*Accessibility and Inclusivity*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.5 the amendments to schedule 5.9 (*Smart Ticketing*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.6 schedule 5.10 (*Fares, Ticketing and Retail Reform*) to the Franchise Agreement, as inserted by Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.7 [Not used]
- 4.1.8 paragraphs 1 (*Development, Design and Implementation of Future Initiatives*) to 5 (*Integrated Control Centres Initiative*) of part 1 (*Co-Operation*) of schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA except to the extent such provisions contain obligations on the Franchisee to implement any initiatives, schemes or other projects pursuant to such terms, and in all circumstances paragraphs 5A (*Operational Performance*) to 13 (*TD Academy*) of part 1 (*Co-Operation*) of schedule 6.3 (*ERMA Specific Obligations*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.9 the amendments to schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*) to the Franchise Agreement as set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA to the extent necessary to evaluate the Franchisee's operational performance during the term of the ERMA, provided that nothing in this paragraph 5.1.9 shall prevent the provisions of schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*) to the Franchise Agreement that prevailed immediately prior to the EMA Start Date (save as amended pursuant to any Variation agreed between the Parties during the period from the EMA Start Date until the Early ERMA Termination Date other than the Variation constituted by the EMA or this ERMA) from applying from the Early ERMA Termination Date, subject to paragraph 6 (*Performance benchmarks and enforcement*) below;
- 4.1.10 paragraphs 2.5, 2.6, 3 (*NRPS Targets and NRPS Improvement Plan Levels*), 4 (*Performance Review*) and 5 (*NRPS Improvement Proposals*) of schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*), to the extent the Secretary of State has instructed that such paragraphs shall apply prior to the Early ERMA Termination Date and to the extent necessary to evaluate the Franchisee's performance during the term of the ERMA, provided that nothing in this paragraph 5.1.10 shall prevent the provisions of schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*) to the Franchise Agreement that prevailed immediately prior to the EMA Start Date (save as amended pursuant to any Variation agreed between the Parties during the period from the EMA Start Date until the Early ERMA Termination Date other than the Variation constituted by the EMA or this ERMA) from applying from the Early ERMA Termination Date, subject to paragraph 6 (*Performance benchmarks and enforcement*) below;
- 4.1.11 paragraphs 8 (*Consultations*) and 12.1(b) of schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*);

- 4.1.12 paragraph 13 (*Wavelength*) of schedule 7.2 (*Customer Experience and Engagement*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.13 the amendment to paragraph 1.1(a) of schedule 9.3 (*Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.14 the amendments to schedule 10.1 (*Procedure for Remediating a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement*), paragraph 1.17 of schedule 10.2 (*Events of Default and Termination Events*) and paragraph 3.3 of schedule 10.3 (*Force Majeure and Business Continuity*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.15 paragraphs 7A (*Information relating to Committed Obligations and Franchise Specific Obligations*), 9.9 (*Access to financial information*), 15.1A (*Data Sharing*) and 15.3 (*Air Quality Monitoring and Improvement*) of schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA;
- 4.1.16 without prejudice to the provisions of sub-paragraph 5.1.15 above, schedule 11.2 (*Management Information*) to the Franchise Agreement as effected pursuant to Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA to the extent such provisions relate to the Franchisee's reporting of information in relation to the period covering the term of the ERMA, and the amendments to schedule 15.4 (*Provisions Applying on and After Termination*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*);
- 4.1.17 paragraphs 8 (*Franchisee obligations to participate in any Investigation and reform*) and paragraph 9 (*Information Powers*) of schedule 16 (*Pensions*) to the Franchise Agreement set out in Schedule 1 (*Amendments to the Franchise Agreement*) to this ERMA; and
- 4.1.18 this Schedule 3.

## 5 Performance benchmarks and enforcement

For the duration of the period from the Early ERMA Termination Date until 01:59 on 1 April 2021 (the "Interim Period"), unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, the provisions of clauses 19 to 22 of schedule 7.1 (*Performance Benchmarks*) to the Franchise Agreement shall not apply.

- 5.1 For the duration of the Interim Period, unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, the provisions of schedule 7.1 (*Performance Benchmarks*) to the Franchise Agreement that prevailed immediately before the Parties entered into the EMA (except clauses 19 to 22 of schedule 7.1 (*Performance Benchmarks*)) shall apply, subject to any Variations that have been or may be effected in accordance with schedule 9 (*Changes and Variations*) of the Franchise Agreement.
- 5.2 From 02:00 on 1 April 2021, the provisions of schedule 7.1 (*Operational Performance*), schedule 7.2 (*National Rail Passenger Surveys, Customer Report and CCIF Scheme*) and schedule 7.3 (*Customer Experience Performance*) to the Franchise Agreement that prevailed immediately before the Parties entered into the EMA shall apply, subject to any

Variations that have been or may be effected in accordance with schedule 9 (*Changes and Variations*) of the Franchise Agreement.

## 6 Fixed Fee and Performance Based Fee

6.1 The Secretary of State shall pay to the Franchisee the amount of the Fixed Fee in relation to each Reporting Period that falls between the ERMA Start Date and the Early ERMA Termination Date, calculated in accordance with the terms of schedule 8.1A (*Franchise Payments*) to the Franchise Agreement that prevailed during the term of the ERMA.

6.2 The Franchisee shall not be entitled to payment of any Performance Based Fee in relation to each Reporting Period that falls between the ERMA Start Date and the Early ERMA Termination Date.

## 7 Adjustments

7.1 In respect of all Franchise Payments that relate to the Interim Period or any period thereafter, unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, the provisions of:

7.1.1 schedule 8.1 (*Franchise Payments*);

7.1.2 schedule 8.2 (*Profit Share Mechanism*); and

7.1.3 schedule 8.4 (*GDP & CLE Adjustment Payments*),

to the Franchise Agreement that prevailed immediately before the Parties entered into the ERMA (subject to any Variations that have been or may be effected in accordance with schedule 9 (*Changes and Variations*) to the Franchise Agreement) shall apply pursuant to the terms of this ERMA, provided that for such duration of the Interim Period, each of:

7.1.4 the First Profit Share Threshold Amount, the Second Profit Share Threshold Amount and the Third Profit Share Threshold Amount (as applicable) in respect of the year from 1 April 2020 to 31 March 2021, as set out in appendix 1 to schedule 8.2 (*Profit Share Mechanism*); and

7.1.5  $DfT_{GDP\text{RW}}$  and  $DfT_{CLE\text{RW}}$  (each as defined in to schedule 8.4 (*GDP & CLE Adjustment Payments*)) in respect of the year from 1 April 2020 to 31 March 2021,

shall each be amended so that such amounts shall be adjusted on a pro-rata basis by being multiplied by the Pro-Rata Amount.

7.2 For the purposes of this paragraph 5, the "**Pro-Rata Amount**" shall be a number calculated as:

$$Pro - Rata Amount = \frac{N}{365}$$

where 'N' is the number of days in the Interim Period or, in the event that the Franchise Agreement is terminated before 1 April 2021, the number of days from the Early ERMA Termination Date until such date the Franchise Agreement is terminated.

7.3 The Secretary of State may, at the Secretary of State's sole discretion, direct any further adjustments to any of the calculations or components set out in each of schedule 8.1 (*Franchise Payments*), schedule 8.2 (*Profit Share Mechanism*) or schedule 8.4 (*GDP & CLE Adjustment Payments*) to the Franchise Agreement as is reasonably necessary to disregard the term of the ERMA and the term of this ERMA from any such calculations or components.

## Schedule 4 Funding Deed, Bond and Performance Bond

Terms used but not otherwise defined in this Schedule 4 shall have the meanings given to them in the Funding Deed, the Franchise Agreement and the ERMA (as applicable).

### 1 General

- 1.1** Subject to the provisions of this Schedule 4, the Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that all of the Funding Deed and Performance Bonds shall continue in full force and effect upon entry into the ERMA.
- 1.2** The Secretary of State acknowledges that following payment by the Franchisee of all outstanding liabilities, including any ERMA Costs and Claims Amount, which the Franchisee owes the Secretary of State following termination of the Franchise Agreement, the Secretary of State shall relinquish any further rights it may have to make any further calls under the Performance Bond.
- 1.3** The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that the provisions of this Schedule 4 shall, insofar as they relate to the Secretary of State's rights in respect of any ERMA Costs and Claims Amounts, survive termination of the ERMA on the Early ERMA Termination Date.
- 1.4** The Franchisee shall, on the Secretary of State's request and without prejudice to any other reporting obligations of the Franchisee, provide a progress update to the Secretary of State in respect of its engagement with its counterparties under the Funding Deed and the Performance Bond and Bond Providers with respect to agreeing the amendments to each of the Funding Deed, Performance Bond and Bond as set out in this Schedule 4.
- 1.5** The Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with copies of the proposed amendments to the Funding Deed, Performance Bond and Bond in draft form no later than 13 November 2020 and shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree suitable amendments to address any comments the Secretary of State may provide on such documents.
- 1.6** For the purposes of this Schedule 4, "**ERMA Costs and Claims Amount**" means the Aggregated Costs and Revenue Liabilities (as defined in Schedule 8.1A to the Franchise Agreement) which have not been offset by the Fixed Fee and, where applicable, the Performance Based Fee in the relevant Franchisee Year.

### 2 Funding Deed

- 2.1** <sup>35</sup>**No later than 7 December 2020 or such later date as the Secretary of State may agree, the Franchisee shall procure the following amendments to the Funding Deed to satisfy the requirements of this paragraph 2.1 in a form satisfactory to the Secretary of State which shall:**
- 2.1.1** ensure the Secretary of State is able to serve notice on each Guarantor during the Facility Term requiring it to pay to the Secretary of State by no later than the Advance Date an amount specified in the notice in respect of any Termination Sum amount or ERMA Costs and Claims Amount, provided that each Guarantor's liability under the Funding Deed shall not exceed the amount of each Guarantor's Respective Share;

---

<sup>35</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

- 2.1.2 ensure that the Secretary of State has the right to call the Bonds in respect of any portion of the ERMA Costs and Claims Amount which is outstanding after its due date in circumstances where the Guarantor has failed to comply with a demand notice contemplated in paragraph 2.1.1 above, provided that the each Bond provider's liability shall be limited to the total amount of the relevant Bond;
- 2.1.3 ensure that the Guarantors acknowledge and agree that each of their rights to receive repayment of PCS Advances and interest payments accruing on any loans under the Funding Deed are subordinated to the Franchisee's obligations to settle any other outstanding liabilities until the Final Settlement Date (as defined in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*)); and
- 2.1.4 in respect to provisions which relate to or are otherwise linked to the period which is 6 months following the expiry of the Franchise Period, amendments to extend the such period until the Final Settlement Date (as defined in Schedule 2 (*Termination of the Franchise Agreement*)).

### 3 Bonds

<sup>36</sup>No later than 7 December 2020 or such later date as the Secretary of State may agree, the Franchisee shall procure amendments to the Bonds in a form satisfactory to the Secretary of State which shall ensure that the Secretary of State has the right to call the Bonds in respect of any portion of the ERMA Costs and Claims Amount in circumstances where the Guarantor has failed to comply with a demand notice contemplated in clause 2.1.1 above, provided that the each Bond provider's liability shall be limited to the total amount of the relevant Bond.

### 4 Performance Bonds

<sup>37</sup>No later than 7 December 2020 or such later date as the Secretary of State may agree, the Franchisee shall procure amendments to the Performance Bonds in a form satisfactory to the Secretary of State which shall ensure that the Secretary of State has the right to call the Performance Bonds in in respect of any ERMA Costs and Claims Amounts, provided that each Bond Provider's liability shall be limited to the total amount of the relevant Performance Bond.

---

<sup>36</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)

<sup>37</sup> 26 November 2020 (Date of Contract Change Letter) – Contract variation agreed by the Secretary of State and Franchisee. [Contract Change Letter unsigned by the Franchisee and under review.](#)